

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

FIRST RUSSIAN BOOK. A Practical Manual of Russian Declensions. The case-endings and vocabularies with phonetic transcription, and numerous easy and useful phrases. 2s. 6d. net.

SECOND RUSSIAN BOOK. A Practical Manual of Russian Verbs. The most important verbs with full phonetic transcription, giving both aspects, and numerous examples of their use. 3s. 6d. net.

THIRD RUSSIAN BOOK. Extracts from AKSÁKOV, GRIGORÓVICH, HÉRZEN, and SALTÝKÓV, with accents marked throughout, copious notes, and complete vocabulary. 2s. 6d. net.

FOURTH RUSSIAN BOOK. Russian and English Exercises, &c., specially designed for use with the above volumes, including examples of Russian correspondence. *[In preparation.]*

THE BALKANS: A History of Bulgaria, Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Turkey. By NEVILL FORBES, A. J. TOYNBEE, D. MITRANY, D. G. HOGARTH. Crown 8vo, with three maps. 5s. net.

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR

BY

NEVILL FORBES, M.A., PH.D.

READER IN RUSSIAN AND THE OTHER SLAVONIC
LANGUAGES IN THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

SECOND EDITION

OXFORD
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1917

9762

OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

LONDON EDINBURGH GLASGOW NEW YORK

TORONTO MELBOURNE CAPE TOWN BOMBAY

HUMPHREY MILFORD

PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY

9762

V

77

PREFACE

THE accompanying volume is a practical rather than a scientific grammar. It is intended for the use of those students who are working under a teacher able to explain the difficulties of the language to them, and also for the use of those who are working at the language by themselves with the object of being able to read it; but it does not profess to be an adequate means of teaching any one working alone how to speak Russian.

As it is an elementary book, philological references and comparisons and etymological explanations have been avoided, in order not to discourage the beginner.

The most important points of the syntax that could be included in a book of this size have been mentioned, not in a part by themselves, but incorporated in the morphology.

I wish to thank Dr. Henry Bradley and Mr. Daniel Jones for the help which they have kindly given me with regard to one or two points of detail, particularly in those parts dealing with pronunciation. Syntactical examples have been gathered from the works of Púshkin, Gógol, Goncharóv, L. Tolstói, Dostoyévski, and Gárshin.

NEVILL FORBES.

OXFORD, *June, 1914.*

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

BESIDES being thoroughly revised, the grammar has been enlarged by several sections of a practical character; also an index of Russian words and phrases and an English subject-index have been added, which, it is thought, will be found useful.

N. F.

OXFORD, *July, 1916.*

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Bibliography	6-8
§ 1. Introduction: The Russians and the Russian Language	9
§ 2. The Alphabet: Its History	10, 11
Printed and Italic Alphabets	12, 13
Russian as written	14-18
§ 3. Pronunciation: The Vowels	19
§ 4. Hard Vowels: а	19, 20
§ 5. э	20
§ 6. ы	21
§ 7. о	21
§ 8. у	21
§ 9. ь	22
§ 10. Soft Vowels: я	23
§ 11. е ъ (ѣ)	23, 24
§ 12. и (и, i, v)	26
§ 13. ю	28
§ 14. ь	28
§ 15. The Consonants: б	31
§ 16. в	31
§ 17. г	32
§ 18. д	33
§ 19. ж	34
§ 20. з	34
§ 21. к	35
§ 22. л	35
§ 23. м	36
§ 24. н	36
§ 25. п	37
§ 26. р	37
§ 27. с	38

CONTENTS

		3
		PAGE
§ 28.	т	38
§ 29.	ф	39
§ 30.	х	39
§ 31.	ц	39
§ 32.	ч	40
§ 33.	ш	40
§ 34.	щ	40
§ 35.	ѳ	41
§ 36.	Phonetic transcription of sounds	41
§ 37.	The Accent	43
§ 38.	Declension of Substantives	44
§ 39.	Masculine Nouns in -ъ, -ь, -ѣ	45
§ 40.	Feminine „ in -а, -я	49
§ 41.	Neuter „ in -о, -е	51
§ 42.	Feminine „ in -ѣ	53
§ 43.	Neuter „ in -я	54
§ 44.	Note on terminations of Substantives	55
§ 45.	Diminutives	56
§ 46.	Declension of Pronouns	58
	Personal „	58
§ 47.	Possessive „	60
§ 48.	Demonstrative „	62
§ 49.	Relative and Interrogative Pronouns	64
§ 50.	Definitive Pronouns	67
§ 51.	Indefinite „	68
§ 52.	Declension of Adjectives	71
§ 53.	Hard „	72
§ 54.	Soft „	77
§ 55.	Possessive „	80
§ 56.	Note on terminations of Adjectives	82
§ 57.	Comparison of Adjectives	83
	The Predicative Comparative	83
§ 58.	The Attributive „	86
§ 59.	The Superlative	87
§ 60.	The Numerals	88
	Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals	88
§ 61.	Declension and use of the Numerals	89
§ 62.	Cardinal Numbers in Composition	94
§ 63.	Ordinal Numbers	94

	PAGE
§ 64. Distributive Numerals	95
§ 65. Multiplicative Numerals	95
§ 66. Collective Numerals	96
§ 67. Fractions	97
§ 68. Expression of Time	98
§ 69. Expression of Money-Values.	103
§ 70. The Adverb	104
§ 71. Adverbs of Place	106
§ 72. „ Time	108
§ 73. „ Manner.	109
§ 74. „ Degree and Quantity	111
Note on the comparison of Adverbs	114
§ 75. Particles and Conjunctions	115
§ 76. Questions and Answers	116
§ 77. Negations	117
§ 78. Subordinative Conjunctions	118
The Prepositions and the Use of the Cases with and without Prepositions	118
§ 79. Alphabetical list of Prepositions	118
§ 80. The Nominative	120
§ 81. The Genitive	120
§ 82. The Dative	123
§ 83. The Accusative	132
§ 84. The Instrumental	133
§ 85. The Locative	143
§ 86. The Verb	146
§ 87. The Present	147
§ 88. Present Regular Verbs, Classes I and II	150
§ 89. Present Irregular Verbs	161
§ 90. The Past	162
§ 91. The Future	167
§ 92. The Conditional	167
§ 93. The Imperative	168
§ 94. The Infinitive	170
§ 95. The Gerund	170
§ 96. The Participles: Present Participle Active	172
§ 97. „ Past	172
§ 98. „ Present „ Passive.	172
§ 99. „ Past „ „	173

CONTENTS

5

	PAGE
§ 100. The Reflexive Verb	175
§ 101. The uses of the Verb	176
The Aspects	
§ 102. Use of the Present	179
§ 103. " Past	182
§ 104. " Future	186
§ 105. " Conditional	189
§ 106. " Imperative	192
§ 107. " Infinitive	195
§ 108. " Gerund	199
§ 109. " Participles	200
§ 110. " Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive	202
§ 111. Impersonal Verbs	204
§ 112. How to express the verb <i>to be</i>	206
§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs	209
§ 114. Perfective Simple Verbs	217
§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs	219
§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms	221
§ 117. Anomalous Verbs	223
§ 118. Prepositions in composition with verbs, nouns, &c.	231
§ 119. Interjections	245
§ 120. Relationships	246
§ 121. Measures and Weights	247
§ 122. Russian Abbreviations	248
ADDENDA TO §§ 44, 48, 53, 55, 71, 72, 73, 74, 78, 106, 109, 112, 117	249-252
INDEX OF RUSSIAN WORDS AND PHRASES	253
SUBJECT-INDEX	273

BIBLIOGRAPHY

A. ACCENTED TEXTS

- Third Russian Book.* Extracts from AKSÁKOV, GRIGORÓVICH, HERZEN, and SALTÝKÓV, furnished with accents throughout, copious notes and complete vocabulary, by Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1917.
- A Word-for-Word Russian Story Book.* With interlinear phonetic transcription and translation, and annotated, for beginners, By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, B. H. Blackwell, 1916.
- A First Russian Reader,* from L. N. Tolstóy, with English notes and a vocabulary, by Percy Dearmer and V. A. Tananevich. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915.
- Russian Reader,* from L. N. Tolstóy, with very full notes and vocabulary, by Boyer and Speranski, English edition by S. N. Harper and E. H. Minns. University of Chicago Press, 1906; sold in England by the Cambridge University Press.
- Sevastópol,* by L. N. Tolstóy, edited, with notes and vocabulary, by A. P. Goudy and E. Bullough. Cambridge: at the University Press, 1916 (other volumes are in preparation by the same editors).
- Bondar's Russian Readers,* with vocabulary on each page, and notes:
No. 1, *Pikovaya Dáma (the Queen of Spades)*, by Púshkin.
No. 2, *Razskázy (Short Stories)*, by Chékhov.
London, Effingham Wilson, 1915-16.
- Russian Reader:* Selections from Turgéniev's *Poetry in Prose*, accented and annotated by B. A. Rudzinsky. Alva, R. Cunningham.

B. DICTIONARIES, ETC.

- A New Pocket Dictionary of the English and Russian Languages.* By J. H. Freese. Part I, Russian-English (Part II, English-Russian, in preparation). London, Kegan Paul, 1916.
- Complete English-Russian and Complete Russian-English Dictionary.* Two vols. By A. Alexandrow. Published by the General Staff Office, Petrograd, 1904.
- Russian Dictionary* (in Russian) of the Imperial Academy of Sciences, Petrograd (not yet completed).
- Толковый словарь Живого великорусскаго языка (Explanatory Dictionary of the Living Great-Russian Language).* By Dal. Four vols. 3rd edition, edited by Baudouin de Courtenay. Petrograd, Wolff and Co., 1903-9.

- Полный англо-русский словарь* (*Complete English-Russian Dictionary*). By S. G. Zaimónski. Moscow, 'Mir' Publishing Company, 1915 (Russian-English part to follow).
- Dictionnaire russe-français complet*. Par N. P. Makároff, 18th edition, published at Petrograd, by the author, 1916.
- Этимологический словарь русского языка* (*Etymological Russian Dictionary*). By A. Preobrazhénski. Moscow, Lissner and Sobko, 1910-14 (still in course of publication).
- Les racines de la langue russe*. By Léger and Bardonnaut. Paris, J. Maisonneuve, 1894.
- Русский Глаголь* (*Das russische Zeitwort—The Russian Verb*). An alphabetical list of a large number of Russian verbs, giving their imperfective and perfective aspects, accented. By Garbell, Körner, and Pervov. Published separately as part of the *Methode Toussaint-Langenscheidt*, by Langenscheidt, in Berlin, and by Wolff and Co., in Petrograd and Moscow.
- Dictionnaire des verbes russes, suivis de leurs aspects, modes et temps* (en préparation). Paris, Librairie russe et française L. Rodstein.

C. GRAMMARS, ETC.

- First Russian Book*. (The case-endings and vocabularies with phonetic transcription, and numerous easy and useful phrases.) By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1915.
- Second Russian Book*. (The most important verbs explained and given in both imperfective and perfective aspects, with full phonetic transcription, and numerous examples of their use.) By Nevill Forbes. Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1916.
- Notes on the Russian Verbs*. By S. G. Stafford. London, Kegan Paul, 1915.
- Morphologie des aspects du verbe russe*. By A. Mazon. Paris, Librairie Honoré Champion. 1908.
- Emplois des aspects du verbe russe*. By A. Mazon. Paris, Librairie Honoré Champion, 1914.
- L'accent tonique dans la langue russe*. By Gaston Pérot. Travaux et Mémoires de l'Université de Lille, tome IX, mémoire No. 26. Lille, 1900.
- De l'accentuation du verbe russe*. By Paul Boyer. (Centenaire de l'École des langues orientales vivantes. Recueil de mémoires publié par les professeurs de l'école.) Paris, Imprimerie Nationale, 1895.

Общій курсъ русской грамматики (*General course of Russian Grammar*). By V. A. Bogoródtiski. Kazan, University Press, 1904.

• *Курсъ грамматики русскаго языка. I: Фонетика* (*Course of Grammar of the Russian Language. I: Phonetics*). By V. A. Bogoródtiski. Warsaw, 1887.

Полная этимологія русскаго языка (*Complete etymology of the Russian Language: an ordinary elementary Russian grammar, but giving a full account of the formation of words and valuable rules for their accentuation*). By I. M. Dadýkin. Moscow, V. V. Dumnov, 1908.

Грамматика русскаго языка (*Grammar of the Russian Language*). By D. N. Ovsyániko-Kulikóvski. Moscow, Sýtin and Co., 1908.

Руководство къ изученію синтаксиса русскаго языка (*Manual for learning the syntax of the Russian Language*). By D. N. Ovsyániko-Kulikóvski. Moscow, Sýtin and Co., 1909.

Элемѣнты языковѣдѣнія и исторіи русскаго языка (*Elements of Philology and of the History of the Russian Language*). By V. Porzezinski. Moscow, Kushnérev and Co., 1910.

Историческая русская грамматика (*Historical Russian Grammar*). By Buslájev. Two vols., 4th edition. Moscow, 1875.

Филологическія Разысканія (*Philological Researches, containing much valuable and interesting matter, including a chapter on accentuation*). By Y. Grot. 4th edition, edited by K. Grot. Petrograd, 1899.

Русское Правописаніе (*Russian Orthography*). By Y. Grot. 21st edition. Petrograd.

Лекціи по исторіи русскаго языка (*Lectures on the History of the Russian Language*). By A. I. Sobolévski. 4th edition. Moscow, University Typography, 1907.

The Russians and their Language. By Mme N. Jarintsov. Oxford, B. H. Blackwell.

INTRODUCTION

§ 1. The Russians and the Russian Language.

RUSSIAN, like most of the other languages of Europe, belongs to the great Indo-European family of languages. Within this family it is one of the group of Slavonic languages, as German is one of the Germanic group of languages. The Slavonic group of languages includes Polish, Bohemian (or Czech), Slovak (in Northern Hungary), and Lusatian-Wendish (still spoken in the valley of the Spree), which form its Western, Slovene, Serbo-Croatian and Bulgarian, which form its Southern, and Russian, comprising Great, Little, and White Russian, which forms its Eastern and largest branch. The phonetics of the Slavonic languages have become differentiated from those of other European languages in such a way that their affinity with these latter is not always directly apparent. But one has only to look at such primitive words as сестра́ (sestrá), братъ (brat), сынъ (syn), дочь (doch'), бровь (brov'), борода́ (borodá), молоко́ (molokó), гусь (gus'), искá- (iská-) to see their close connexion with our *sister, brother, son, daughter, brow, beard, milk, goose, ask*. Other words, such as мать (mat'), домъ (dom), вѣра (vera), око́ (oko), видѣ- (vide-), immediately recall cognate words in Greek and Latin. Many, like вдова́ (vdová), *widow*, have equivalents closely similar in most of the Indo-European languages. The population of the Russian Empire numbers about 175,000,000, and of these fully two-thirds, about 117,000,000, are Russians. Of these again about two-thirds, nearly 80,000,000, are Russians properly so called, or Great Russians, who occupy the whole of Northern, Central (as far west as Smolensk), Eastern and South-Eastern Russia, and Siberia; it is their language which is the vastly predominating one, which is also the official and the literary language, and is generally called Russian, though to distinguish it from Little and White Russian it is

termed Great Russian. Little Russian, a dialect of Russian so strongly differentiated as almost to justify its being called a separate language, is spoken by about thirty million people in Southern and South-Western Russia and in Eastern Galicia, where it is called Ruthenian. The White Russian dialect is spoken by about eight millions in Western Russia, the centre of which may be regarded as Mogilev (Могилѣвъ); it is not so different from Great Russian as is Little Russian.

§ 2.

The Alphabet.

The alphabet used by the Russians and by the other Slavs of the orthodox confession, Serbians and Bulgarians, for the rendering of the sounds of their language is that known as the Cyrillic (кириллица). It is so called because its composition is attributed to St. Cyril (826-869), a Greek of Salonika, whose secular name was Constantine, who with his brother Methodius was commissioned by the Emperor Michael II to effect the conversion of Moravia, the Prince of Moravia having expressed a wish to see Christianity introduced into his country. Confronted with the problem how to communicate the Truth to the savages of Pannonia, he with great ingenuity elaborated an alphabet which with scientific accuracy represented the sounds of the Slavonic vernacular, so different from those of Greek. His work was facilitated by his knowledge of the Slavonic dialects current at that time in Macedonia, indeed it was on this account that he had been chosen to accomplish the task. The Slavonic language, for the transcription of whose sounds he composed his alphabet, is now generally considered to have been Old Bulgarian, which was, however, quite possibly intelligible to the inhabitants of Moravia at a time when the several Slavonic languages were without doubt very far from being so divergent from one another as they are to-day. Whether it was of the alphabet now called Cyrillic that St. Cyril was the author, or of the cognate alphabet called Glagolitic, still used in remote parts of Dalmatia, is uncertain, but it is probable that of the two, the latter, the Glagolitic, which has been proved to be older than the Cyrillic and was founded on the Greek minuscule script of the ninth century, was that actually compiled by him, and was later owing to the complexity of its character almost everywhere supplanted by the alphabet now known as the Cyrillic, which, founded on the Greek majuscule

script, was much clearer than the Glagolitic. The Cyrillic is the only alphabet the use of which the Russians have ever known, and it is not unnatural that its origin should have been attributed to the man who was the first to put down any Slavonic dialect in black on white, and has ever since been regarded as the fountain of their enlightenment by all Slavs of the Eastern faith. The art of writing was introduced into Russia simultaneously with Christianity in the tenth century, and the Cyrillic alphabet was imposed upon the country with as much vigour as the new religion, but with far less regard for local conditions. The alphabet had been an admirable instrument for rendering Old Bulgarian, but the phonology of that language was then already very different from that of Russian. Old Bulgarian (called in Russian 'Church-Slavonic'), however, immediately established itself as the language of the church, a position it still holds with quite inconsiderable modifications to-day; it became the only approved medium of expression for all literary work, and, though it could not remain altogether free from the influences of the vernacular Russian, especially in works of a secular character, yet the alphabet itself took such firm root, that no attempts to alter it have been successful. Of the influence of Old Bulgarian, or Church-Slavonic, on the grammatical forms and vocabulary of Russian, mention will be made later. Here it is only necessary to remind the student that the discrepancies between Russian as it is written and Russian as it is spoken, the illogicalness of Russian orthography, which owes its quaint charm to a sense of historical tradition and recalls that of our own language, and consequently much of the difficulty experienced in mastering Russian, are all due to the fact that the Cyrillic alphabet was not originally made for that language. It is necessary in every language to submit to certain conventions, and it is doubtful whether those which regulate the orthography of the Western Slavonic languages, e.g. Polish and Czech, which use a distorted Latin alphabet, are more rational and less formidable than those which govern Russian. Besides Sanskrit, the only language which has a really scientific alphabet, in which every letter corresponds exactly and without help of accents to the sound it is intended to represent, is Serbian, where there was no historical tradition strong enough to obstruct reform. The Cyrillic alphabet is based on that

of the Greek majuscule script but contains important additional signs, the origin of which is not known, representing sounds which never existed in Greek. Its directly Greek origin is apparent in the quite unnecessary incorporation in it of η τα (η), ι ωτα (ι), and υ ψιλόν (υ), which all had exactly the same value in Greek as it was spoken in the ninth century, viz. *i*, and in the necessity of inventing a separate sign for *b* (Б б), because the Greek β was in the ninth century only pronounced as *v*, except after *m*, e.g. λαμβάνω, while in Old Bulgarian *b* never followed on a nasal consonant. The Cyrillic characters, which were originally very plain, but had by the eighteenth century assumed somewhat complicated and unwieldy shapes, were by Peter the Great simplified for the requirements of modern printing and at the present time have the following appearance:

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
А а	<i>А а</i>	<i>a</i>	а
Б б	<i>Б б</i>	<i>b</i>	бе
В в	<i>В в</i>	<i>v</i>	ве
Г г	<i>Г г</i>	<i>g</i>	ге
Д д	<i>Д д</i>	<i>d</i>	де
Е е	<i>Е е</i>	<i>e</i> ¹	е
Ж ж	<i>Ж ж</i>	<i>zh</i>	же
З з	<i>З з</i>	<i>z</i>	зе
И и	<i>И и</i>	<i>i</i> ²	и
І і	<i>І і</i>		{ і съ точкой (= <i>i</i> with a dot) й съ краткой (= <i>i</i> with a short quantity)
Й й ³	<i>Й й</i>		
К к	<i>К к</i>	<i>k</i>	ка
Л л	<i>Л л</i>	<i>l</i>	эль

¹ After vowels, also after Ъ and Ь, both *e* and *ѣ* are transliterated *ye*.

² The very common adjectival terminations -ий and -ій are transliterated by the one letter *y* and *i* respectively.

³ These four letters, й ѣ ы ъ, are never initial.

PRINTED	ITALIC	TRANSLITERATED	NAME
М м	<i>М м</i>	<i>m</i>	эмъ
Н н	<i>Н н</i>	<i>n</i>	энъ
О о	<i>О о</i>	<i>o</i>	о
П п	<i>П п</i>	<i>p</i>	пе
Р р	<i>Р р</i>	<i>r</i>	эръ
С с	<i>С с</i>	<i>s</i>	эсъ
Т т	<i>Т т</i>	<i>t</i>	те
У у	<i>У у</i>	<i>u</i>	у
Ф ф	<i>Ф ф</i>	<i>f</i>	эфъ
Х х	<i>Х х</i>	<i>kh</i> ¹	ха
Ц ц	<i>Ц ц</i>	<i>ts</i>	це
Ч ч	<i>Ч ч</i>	<i>ch</i>	че
Ш ш	<i>Ш ш</i>	<i>sh</i>	ша
Щ щ	<i>Щ щ</i>	<i>shch</i>	ща
Ъ ъ ²	<i>Ъ ъ</i>	[omitted in transliteration, cf. § 9]	ерь ⁴
Ы ы ²	<i>Ы ы</i>	<i>y</i>	еры
Ь ь ²	<i>Ь ь</i>	[usually omitted in transliteration, cf. § 14]	ерь ⁵
Ѣ ѣ	<i>Ѣ ѣ</i>	<i>e</i> ³	ятъ
Ѥ ѥ	<i>Ѥ ѥ</i>	<i>e</i>	ѥ оборотное (= turned round)
Ю ю	<i>Ю ю</i>	<i>yu</i>	ю
Я я	<i>Я я</i>	<i>ya</i>	я
Ѧ ѧ	<i>Ѧ ѧ</i>	<i>f</i>	ѧѧѧ
Ѩ ѩ	<i>Ѩ ѩ</i>	<i>i</i>	ѩѩѩ

The place of English *x* is taken in Russian by *кс* or *кз*.

¹ Initial *x* is transliterated *h*.

² See note 3 on p. 12.

³ See note 1 on p. 12.

⁴ Also called *твёрдый знакъ* = *hard sign*.

⁵ Also called *мягкий знакъ* = *soft sign*.

The Written Alphabet

А а
 Б б
 В в
 Г г
 Д д
 Е е
 Ж ж
 З з
 И и
 Й й
 К к
 Л л
 М м
 Н н
 О о
 П п
 Р р

С с
 Т т
 У у
 Ф ф
 Х х
 Ц ц
 Ч ч
 Ш ш
 Щ щ
 — ъ
 — ы
 — ъ
 Ъ Ѣ
 Ї ї
 Ю ю
 Я я
 Ѧ ѧ

How letters are addressed in Russian

Москва

Арбатъ д. 30 кв. 15

Е. В. Б. (Его Высокоблагородію)

Николаю Михайловичу Сергееву

Орловская губ.

г. Мценскъ

с. Благодатное

Его Превосходительству

Андрею Петровичу Стоякину

для передачи Е. В. Б.

Борису Павловичу Смирновскому

Петроградъ

Главная Почта - до востребования

Ея Сіятельству Княгини

Анны Ильиничны Бюломорской

RUSSIAN TRANSCRIPTION

Москва

Арбатъ д. (= домъ) 30 кв. (= кварта́ра) 15
Е.В.Б. (Её Высокоблагородію)
Николаю Михайловичу Сергіеву.

Орловская губ. (= губе́рніа)

г. (= городъ) Ми́ценскъ

с. (= село) Благода́тное

Её Превосходите́льству

Андре́ю Петро́вичу Стою́нину

для пере́дачи Е.В.Б.

Борису Па́вловичу Смирно́вскому.

Петроградъ

Главная По́чта, до востре́бованія

Её Слѣдѣ́телю Кня́зю

Аннѣ Ильи́ничнѣ Бело́морской.

ENGLISH TRANSLATION

Moscow

Arbat (House) No. 30 (Flat) No. 15

(genitive) His (dative) Highwellbornness

(dative) Nicholas Mikhaïlovich Sergéyev.

Government (= Province) of Orél (Орѣлъ)
 town Mtsensk

village Blagodátnoye

(genitive) His (dative) Excellency

(dative) Andrew Petróvich Stoyúnin

for handing-over¹ to His Highwellbornness

(dative) Boris Pávlovich Smirnóvski.

Petrograd

General Post Office, till called for (= *Poste Restante*)

(genitive) Her (dative) Serenity Princess

(dative) Anne Ilinichna (cf. p. 81) Belomórskaya.

¹ = B. P. Smirnóvski, c/o A. P. Stoyúnin.

A letter in Russian

Многочуважаемый Господинъ С.!

Благодарю Васъ за Ваше письмо
отъ 1^{го} числа с.м., которое я полу-
чилъ сегодня. Я очень радъ, что Вы
добрѣхали благополучно до Москвы, и
надѣюсь скоро съ Вами познако-
миться. Я буду Васъ ждать
у себя завтра въ 11 ч. утра;
если же это Вамъ неудобно, то
я постараюсь прийти къ Вамъ
въ день и въ часъ, которые Вы
сами назначите. Въ при-
ятномъ ожиданіи скоро съ
Вами повидаться, и желаю
Вамъ всего хорошаго, остаюсь
преданный Вамъ

А. Б.

RUSSIAN TRANSCRIPTION

Многоуважаемый Господи́н С.!

Благодарю Васъ за Ваше письмо отъ 1го (= перваго) числа с. м. (= сего мѣсяца), которое я получилъ сегодня. Я очень радъ, что Вы добрались благополучно до Москвы, и надѣюсь скоро съ Вами познакомиться. Я буду Васъ ждать у себя завтра въ 11 ч. (= часовъ) утра; если же это Вамъ неудобно, то я постараюсь прійти къ Вамъ въ день и въ часъ, которые Вы сами назначите. Въ пріятномъ ожиданіи скоро съ Вами свидѣться, и желая Вамъ всего хорошаго, остаюсь

преданный Вамъ

A. B.

ENGLISH TRANSLATION

MUCH-RESPECTED MR. S.,

Thank you for your letter of the 1st inst. (lit. date of this month), which I received to-day. I am very glad that you have reached Moscow safely, and hope soon to make your acquaintance. I shall expect you at my house to-morrow at 11 a.m.; but if this is inconvenient for you, then I will try and come to (see) you on a day and at an hour which you shall yourself fix. In the pleasant expectation of soon meeting you, and wishing you every good, I remain,

devoted to you,

A. B.

(N. B.—People with whom one is already acquainted are always addressed by the Christian name and the patronymic. *Dear Sir* (Милостивый Государь = Merciful Sovereign) is used in very formal or business letters, usually with the name added. *Dear* (дорогой, милый) is only used to relations or intimate friends; a more formal ending is глубокоуважающий Васъ, cf. p. 201. An intermediate opening is любезный = *amiable*.)

PRONUNCIATION

§ 3.

The Vowels.

There are ten vowels in Russian, five hard and, corresponding to these, five soft or palatalized, and two so-called mute vowels, one hard and one soft. A soft or palatalized vowel means a hard vowel preceded by the sound of the English letter *y* in such a way as to make a monophthong; e.g. the sound contained in the English words *you* or *yew* is really a palatalized *u*. This process of turning a hard into a soft vowel is called palatalization and plays a very important part in Russian. Whenever a soft or palatal vowel is preceded immediately by a consonant, the latter is affected by the *y*-sound of the palatal vowel and coalesces with it, the result being a softened or palatalized consonant. A consonant followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced differently from one followed by a hard vowel, though the effect of the palatal vowel is much greater on some consonants than on others, while the effect of certain palatal vowels is greater than that of others.

Further, a palatal vowel sometimes affects the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, though here again certain palatal vowels particularly affect certain hard vowels.

The pronunciation of the vowels is further influenced by the position of the accent. The Russian is a stress accent and is mobile, i.e. it can fall on any syllable. There are certain rules for the placing of the accent, but as they are positively riddled with exceptions, it is far more difficult to learn them from a book than by ear or by reading accented texts; they have therefore been omitted in this grammar, the accent itself, however, of course being marked in the case of each word mentioned.

§ 4.

Hard Vowels.

The five hard vowels are

а э и о у

and the mute vowel ъ.

A a = a

when accented and not followed by a palatal vowel (sc. with an intermediate consonant) is pronounced somewhat as in *father* but is more like the *a* in the French *ma* = *my* (f.), or in the German *das Land*, e.g. да = *yes*, рано = *early*, мало = *little* (adverb). When not accented (and not followed by a palatal vowel) it is of the same quality as accented *a* only much shorter, e.g. работа = *work*. If, however, it precedes the accent by more than one syllable, or if, following the accent, it is itself followed by a hard vowel, then it is pronounced like the obscure vowel in English, i.e. like the first *a* in *paternal* or like *er* in *order*, e.g. тараканъ = *cockroach*, облако = *cloud*. Accented and unaccented *a*, when followed in a subsequent syllable by a palatal vowel, is pronounced much sharper, more like *a* in the French word *Espagne*, e.g. in such words as Италия = *Italy* (pronounced as Italians pronounce *Italia*), далеко = *far*, даю = *I give*. For the pronunciation of accented *a* when followed by the soft mute vowel *ь*, cf. § 14. Initial *a* is very rare in Russian.

§ 5.**Ә ә = e**

(called in Russian э оборóтное = *turned round*) occurs only in two or three genuinely Russian words (in which it is always accented) as a demonstrative prefix, but is common in words of foreign origin. Its pronunciation depends on whether it is followed in the next syllable by a hard or a soft (palatalized) vowel. If the vowel in the following syllable is hard, e.g. in the word это = *this* (N.), э is pronounced very open and has the value of *e*, *ai*, or *a* as they are pronounced respectively in the English words *ere*, *air*, or *fare* in the South of England. If the vowel in the following syllable is soft (e.g. и = *i*) э is pronounced like *a* in the Northern English *hate*, e.g. эти = *these* (M.F.N.), but with the lips still closer together. In foreign words э has the value of *e* in the English word *end*, e.g. эрмитажъ = *the hermitage*, экземпляръ = *copy, specimen*, Эдуардъ = *Edward*, when unaccented; if accented, it is liable to the same changes as the demonstrative pronominal prefix mentioned above, e.g. поэтъ = *poet*, but поэтъ = *poet* (locative case); in the first case э is pronounced open, as in это, in the second more closed, as in эти.

§ 6.

Ы ы = y

This is the vowel the pronunciation of which causes most difficulty to foreigners, but less to Britons than to Germans or Frenchmen, because a sound very much like it exists in English. Its approximately correct pronunciation is best attained by saying with clenched teeth the syllables containing *y i* in the following English words: *Whitby, till, mill, rill, sill, sandy*. Russian words with similar syllables are, e. g. *былъ* = *he was*, *ты* = *thou*, *мы* = *we*, *рыль* = *he dug*, *сынъ* = *son*, *дымъ* = *smoke*. The pronunciation of *ы* is comparatively little affected by being unaccented or by subsequent soft vowels. The *ы* in e. g. *была*, *she was*, scarcely differs at all from that in *былъ*. The *ы* in e. g. *были* = *they were* (where it is followed by the soft vowel *и*) is pronounced not quite so thickly, but is not affected in the same way as is *э* (§ 5). It is important not to confuse the vowel *y* now adopted to transliterate *ы* in English with the semi-vowel *y* which denotes palatalization. *ы* is never initial, and cannot stand after *к, г, х, ж, ч, ш, or щ*, after which letters its place is always taken by *и*. It is important to notice, however, that after *ж* and *ш* the vowel *и* is pronounced like *ы*.

§ 7.

О о = o

has the value, when accented, of the Italian *o* in *Roma*, much opener than the English *o* in *shove*, and more like the *aw* in *saw*. Examples: *онъ* = *he*, *дома* = *at home*. When unaccented the quality of *o* is entirely changed, and it is pronounced like unaccented *a* (cf. § 4), i. e. like the obscure vowel in English, i. e. like the first *a* in *paternal*, or like the *er* in *order*, e. g. in the words *пора* = *time*, *хорошо* = *all right*, *дорого* = *dear* (adv.), in all of which it sounds much more like an *a* than an *o*. This peculiarity of Russian as spoken in Moscow and to the west and south of that city explains the old English rendering of *Москва* (*Moscow*) by *Muscovy*. The effect of a soft vowel on *o* in a preceding syllable is very marked; the palatalization is anticipated and *o* is pronounced almost like *oi* in English *oil*, e. g. in *боли* = *pains*.

§ 8.

У у = u

when accented is pronounced like English *oo* in *boot*, e. g. *утка* = *duck*, *морý* = *I can*, *умный* = *clever*; when unaccented it is

shorter, like English *oo* in *book*, e. g. *могутъ* = *they can*, *чугунъ* = *cast-iron*. It is not affected by a subsequent soft vowel as much as are *a*, *э*, and *o*, though slight anticipation of the palatal also takes place. The reason why Russian *u* is written *у* is that the sound could only be represented in Greek by *ου*, which was incorporated in the Cyrillic alphabet as *oy* and for long written thus; these were later made into a compound letter *ѣ*, which in its turn became gradually assimilated to the Western European *y*, but with a different value.

§ 9.

Ъ ъ

called in Russian *еръ* (pronounced *yare*, the *a* having the value of *a* in the English words *ware*, *fare*, and the *r* being rolled) or *твёрдый знакъ* = *the hard sign*, is the hard mute vowel. This letter, at the time the alphabet was made for the Old Bulgarian language in the ninth century, had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *u*, probably like the *u* in the English word *bulb*, which value it still retains in modern Bulgarian. The letter was adopted by the Russians together with all the rest of the alphabet at the time of their conversion in the tenth century, but there is nothing to prove that there was a sound corresponding to this letter in the Russian as spoken then, though it is probable that at some earlier period the sound had existed also in Russian. In Russian as we know it this letter has never been anything more than a cipher. Its function is a purely negative one, viz. to show that the preceding consonant is not palatalized (softened) but pronounced hard, a fact which the total omission of this letter would indicate equally clearly. In the advertisement columns of the press, in some newspapers, and by people who either make a point of being up-to-date or wish to save time and space, it is frequently omitted, but in all printed books, in the majority of newspapers, and by most people it is still used owing to the authority of tradition and convention. *ъ* is commonest as a terminal, it is never initial, and the convention for the use of medial *ъ* is that in those words which begin with a soft vowel and are compounded with a preposition ending in a hard consonant, the preposition retains the *ъ*, e. g. *объясненіе* = *explanation* is written *объясненіе*.

§ 10.

Soft Vowels.

The five corresponding soft or palatal vowels are

я е (ѣ) и (ѣ i v) [ѣ] ю

and the mute vowel ъ.

Я я = ya

is palatalized а and when accented is pronounced like it, e.g. Ялта = *Yalta*. When it is preceded by a consonant it coalesces with it and forms a palatalized consonant, e.g. няня = *nurse*, where н has the value of *gn* in the French word *Espagne*, дядя = *uncle*, where д is like *dy* in *Rudyard*.

In the syllable immediately preceding or following the accent я retains its quality but is much shorter. When preceding the accent by more than one syllable its quality changes and it is pronounced like a short *i* or *e*, e.g. рядъ = *rank*, row, is pronounced *ryád*, nom. pl. ряды = *the ranks* : *ryady* (cf. § 6), but рядовой = *a private*, *ryadovói* or *ryedavói*.

я never occurs after ж, ц, ч, ш, or щ.

§ 11.

Е е and Ъ ъ (or Ь ь)

е and ѣ in Old Bulgarian represented two distinct sounds, е : *ě* and ѣ : *ě*, but they are both pronounced exactly alike in Russian, where the quantitative differences between *ě* and *ě* have been lost. The letter ѣ (called ять), which has two forms ѣ and ѣ (ѣ and ѣ), is only retained thanks to historical tradition. Like ѣ it has been abandoned in the Government telegraph service, and the words in which its use is etymologically essential have with immense difficulty to be memorized. Unaccented е and ѣ are always pronounced *ye* as in *yet*, e.g. Екатерина = *Catherine*, pron. *Yekatyerína* (*i* = Italian *i*); Бѣлградъ = *Belgrade*, pron. *Byelgrád*; ѣда = *food*, pron. *yedá*. Accented, the pronunciation of е and ѣ is affected like that of э (cf. § 5) by the character of the vowel in the following syllable. If followed by a hard vowel in the following syllable, by a hard terminal consonant, or if terminal themselves, they are pronounced like *e* in similar case, only preceded by the *y* semi-vowel, i.e. very open, as in English *air*, *fare*, e.g. газета = *newspaper*, pron. *gazyéta*; уже = *already*, pron. *uzhé*; їду = *I am riding*, pron. *yédu*; мнѣ = *to me*, pron. *mnyé*; їмъ = *I eat*, pron. *yém*.

If followed by a soft (or palatalized) vowel accented *e* and *ě* are pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, or like the English word *yea*, but with the lips still closer together, e.g. *razérĕ* = *newspaper* (dat. sing.), *если* = *if*, *ѣдетъ* = *he is riding*, *ей* = *to her*, *здѣсь* = *here*. The consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *e* (*ě*), so that when preceded by them *e* sounds like *э*, e.g. *женá* = *wife*, pron. *zhená*; *человѣкъ* = *human being*, pron. *chelavyék*; *шея* = *neck*, pron. *shéya*; *щека* = *cheek*, pron. *shcheká*, though when *ч* and *щ* (which are palatal consonants) are followed by accented *e* (*ě*), the *y*-sound is still audible unless the words are spoken very rapidly, e.g. *чѣмъ* (inst. sing. of *что* = *what*) = *than*, pron. *chym*; *чѣрезъ* = *over, through, across*, pron. *chyéryez*; *щель* = *chink, crack*, pron. *shchyl'* (*l'* = palatalized *l*).

[Ě ě = *yo*]

It is a peculiarity of Russian that accented *e* before a hard consonant or when terminal, although in certain categories of words pronounced as stated above, yet in the majority of cases changes its quality and is pronounced like a Russian *o* (cf. § 7) preceded by *y* semi-vowel. This vowel which is really a palatalized *o* corresponding to hard *o* is not counted as a separate vowel and is therefore here placed in brackets. At one time it was the custom in writing and printing to differentiate this *ě* by placing a diaeresis over it, but as Russians know instinctively when to pronounce *e* as *yo*, such an aid was felt to be unnecessary and is now seldom used. In this book the pronunciation of *e* as *yo* is indicated throughout. As only accented *e* is pronounced *yo*, the accent is in these cases omitted and replaced by the diaeresis. Examples: *селó* = *village*, pron. *syeló*; but *сѣла* = *villages*, pron. *syóla*; *если* = *if* (*и* is a soft vowel and softens or palatalizes the preceding consonant, therefore *e* retains its original value), but *ѣлка* = *spruce-tree*, pron. *yólka* (*a* is a hard vowel); *вѣсело* = *cheerful* (adv.), pron. *vyésyelo* (*e* is a soft vowel and palatalizes the *c*, therefore the first *e* retains its original value), but *весѣлая* = *cheerful* (nom. sing. F.), pron. *vyesyólaya* (because although *я* is soft, yet the vowel which immediately follows accented *e* is hard). Accented *e* followed by a consonant + *ъ* is also pronounced *yo* as *ъ* has the value of a hard vowel, e.g. *вѣлъ* = *he led*, pron. *vyól*; *нѣсъ* = *he brought*, pron. *nyós*; *ѣжъ* = *hedgehog*, pron. *yósh* (cf. § 19).

Terminal accented *e* is always pronounced *yo* except in the one word *уѣ́* mentioned above, e. g. *еѣ́* = *her* (acc. sing. from *онѧ́*), pron. *yeyó*; *моѣ́* = *my* (nom. acc. sing. N.), pron. *mǎyó*. Just as *e*, although followed by a hard consonant and vowel, is nevertheless in many cases not pronounced *yo* (cf. p. 23), so conversely it is pronounced *yo* in many cases where it is not to be expected, i. e. although followed by a soft or palatalized consonant and vowel; such cases are entirely due to analogical influence; e. g. *ведѣ́мъ* = *we are leading*, pron. *vyedyóm*, has by its analogy caused *ведѣ́те* = *you are leading*, to be pronounced *vyedyótye*, although the accented *e* is followed by palatalized consonant and soft vowel *e*; *телѣ́нокъ* = *calf*, pron. *tyelyónak*, and *телѣ́нкъ* = *calf* (loc. sing.), pron. *tyelyónkye*, influenced by the *e* in the nom. and in all the other cases, although followed by the soft vowel *ѣ́*; *горѣ́ю* = *hill*, pron. *garóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -а), has influenced *землѣ́ю* = *earth*, pron. *zyemlyóyu* (instr. sing. of F. decl. in -я) although followed by the soft vowel *ю* = *yu*. In cases where there is no analogical influence, accented *e* before a soft vowel or palatalized consonant is pronounced *ye*, as would be expected, e. g. *Шеремѣ́тевъ* = *Sheryemyétiev*, *моѣ́й* = instr. sing. F. from *моѣ́* = *my*, pron. *mayéi*.

The consonants *ж*, *ч*, *ш*, *щ* absorb the *y*-sound inherent in *ѣ́*, so that when preceded by them *ѣ́* sounds just like *o*, e. g. *жѣ́нь* (= gen. pl. from *женѧ́* = *wife*), pron. *zhon*; *чѣ́мъ* (loc. sing. from *что́* = *what*), pron. *chom*; *шѣ́лъ* (= past tense of *идти́* = *to go*), pron. *shol*; *ещѣ́* = *more*, pron. *yeshchó*, colloquially often *ishchó*.

On the analogy of accented *e* followed by a hard consonant and vowel being pronounced *yo*, accented *ѣ́* followed by a hard consonant and vowel is also in certain cases pronounced *yo*, a result of the two letters being pronounced identically. *ѣ́* is thus pronounced in the following words: *сѣ́дла* = *saddles* (nom. sing. *сѣ́дло*), *гнѣ́зда* = *nests* (nom. sing. *гнѣ́здо*), *звѣ́зды* = *stars* (nom. sing. *звѣ́зда*), *приобрѣ́лъ* = *obtained* (past tense from *приобрѣ́сти*), *цвѣ́лъ* = *blossomed* (past tense from *цвѣ́сти*), *надѣ́ванъ* = *put on* (part. pass. from *надѣ́вать*), and *запечатлѣ́нь* = *marked* (part. pass. from *запечатлѣ́ть*). Even accented *я́* is in three cases pronounced *yo*, owing again to the confusion caused by the similarity in the pronunciation of unaccented *e*, *ѣ́*, and *я́*; the three words in question are: *тря́съ* = *shook* (past tense from *трясѣ́ти*), *запрѣ́гъ* = *harnessed* (past tense from *запрѣ́чь*), and *еѧ́* = *of her* (gen. sing. from *онѧ́*). In

all these cases unaccented *e*, *ѣ*, and *я* are short vowels of very uncertain quality; they vary from *ă* to *ĕ* and *ĭ*, hence the confusion in the pronunciation of certain words where they bear the accent.

§ 12.

И (ĭ i v, cf. § 1)

These four letters represent only one sound, which is that of the Italian *i*, and the reasons for their existence and for the continuance of their use are purely conventional and traditional.

и (sometimes called и простое = *simple i*)

is by far the most common of the four; it is used (i) at the beginning of words, if followed by a consonant; (ii) in the middle of words, if preceded and followed by a consonant; (iii) in the middle of words, if it is preceded by a vowel but at the same time begins a fresh syllable itself; and (iv) at the end of words if it stands as a single vowel, or if, preceded by another vowel, it forms a fresh syllable itself.

ѣ,

called и съ краткой (= *i with a short quantity*), is only used after another vowel when it forms one syllable (i.e. a diphthong) with it, therefore never at the beginning of words.

і,

called и съ точкой (= *i with a dot*), is only used before another vowel when it does not form one syllable with it, therefore never at the end of words.

ѵ,

called ижица (= *little yoke*, dim. of *ѹго* = *yoke*), is a transcription of the Greek *υ* (upsilon), which in late Greek acquired the value of short *i*. In modern Russian it is only used in a few ecclesiastical words of Greek origin, and its place even in these is often taken by и.

и being a palatal (or soft) vowel always affects the pronunciation of a preceding consonant, though the y-sound which comes between it and a preceding consonant is not always so clearly audible as it is in the case of *e*. The influence of и also extends further back than the consonant immediately preceding it, and affects the pronunciation of the vowel in the preceding syllable (cf. examples of the pronunciation of hard vowels when followed by и in the next syllable, §§ 5, 7). The consonants most

noticeably affected by a subsequent *и* are *т* (*t*) and *д* (*d*), *и* (*n*) and *л* (*l*), cf. the pronunciation of *эти* = *these*, § 5, and of *дитя* = *child*, which is pronounced *dyitya*, the first syllable like *d'ye* in the phrase *how d'ye do*, *они* = *they*, pron. *anyí*; *молѣтва*, pron. *malyítva*. The difficulty which Russians have in pronouncing a clean *i*-sound after *t* and *d* is often to be noticed in their pronunciation of certain French words, such as *dites*, *bottines*, or indeed in that of any foreign words where *t* and *d* are followed by *i*, in which cases they are inclined to insert a *y*-sound between the consonant and the vowel.

It is to be noticed that *и* after the consonants *ж* and *ш* is pronounced like *ы*, i.e. it becomes hard and loses its palatal quality, e.g. *жиръ* = *fat*, *grease*, pron. *zhyr*, *жизнь* = *life*, pron. *zhyn'* (*n'* = palatalized *n*), *широкий* = *broad* (nom. sing. masc.), pron. *shyróki*, *шире* = *broad*, pron. *shýrye*. After *ч* and *щ* on the other hand *и* is always palatal.

Curiously enough initial *и* in Russian has lost its preiotization; in Russian words beginning with *и*, the *и* is pronounced *i* and not *yi* as one would expect, e.g. *ива* = *willow* is pronounced *iva* (*i* = Italian *i*) and not *yiva*. The only exceptions to this are certain cases of the personal pronoun *онъ* = *he*, in which initial *и* is pronounced *yi*: *имъ* = *by him* (pron. *yim*), *ихъ* = *of them* (*yikh*), *ими* = *by them* (*yími*). These contain the original stem of the personal pronoun, *yí*, whose defective nominative was supplied by those of the demonstrative pronoun *онъ*.

In the syllables *-ый*, *-ий*, *-ой*, in which the nom. sing. masc. of all Russian adjectives and of very many Russian family names (which are mostly adjectival in form) end, *-й* is merely the second half of a diphthong and is pronounced like *y* in the English word *boy*. It is to be noticed that in diphthongs such as *ай* and *ой* occurring in other words the *й* is often barely audible, e.g. *пойди* = *go!* or *come!* sounds like *padyí*, *Миха́йло* = *Michael*, like *Mikhálo*.

The effect on the pronunciation of *и* of the absence or the presence of the accent on it is inappreciable; its pronunciation alters merely quantitatively, not qualitatively. Similarly, *и* being a palatal vowel, its pronunciation is not affected by the presence of another palatal vowel in any subsequent syllable.

The form of the letter *и* is derived from the Greek *η* (*ἦτα*); it is curious to note that while the Greek *η* has become *и* in Russian, the Greek *ν* appears in Russian as *н* (cf. § 24).

For *ѣ* cf. § 11.

§ 13.

Ю ю = *yu*

is pronounced like the English word *you*, i.e. the Italian *u* preceded by the semi-vowel *y*, e.g. *люблю* (*lyublyú*) = *I love, I like*. The letter itself is a combination of *ι* (*ῑῶτα*) and *ο* (*ὀ μικρόν*). Its pronunciation is not affected by the presence or absence of the accent. *ю* is also used to represent French *u* and German *ü* in transliteration, e.g. Брюссель *Bruxelles*, Нюрнберг *Nürnberg*.

§ 14.

Ь ь¹

called in Russian *еръ* or *мягкій знакъ* = *the soft sign*, is the soft mute vowel. It is a word which is difficult both to transcribe adequately and to pronounce in English, but may be approximately rendered by *yér*, pronouncing the *e* like the *ai* in the English word *waist* and the final *rr* with the tip of the tongue, softening or palatalizing them by adding to them the sound of the semi-vowel *y*, without, however, allowing the additional sound to form an additional syllable. Like *ъ*, the hard mute vowel, it once had the value of a full vowel, and was pronounced like a very short *і*, but in course of time its quality changed, it lost its power of forming a syllable, and became merely the sign of palatalization of a preceding consonant. Unlike *ъ*, however, it still plays an important part in Russian orthography and pronunciation, and could not easily be dispensed with. It is the only visible indication there is of the softening or palatalization of a preceding consonant. As already mentioned, this softening or palatalization is difficult to explain in the terms of a language, such as English, in which this particular process is comparatively rare; the general effect is to add to the preceding consonant a *y*-sound without allowing the sound thus added to form an additional syllable. The actual sound of a palatalized consonant of course occurs frequently enough in many other languages, e.g. *d* is palatalized

¹ In transliteration *ъ* is popularly omitted, but in this book and for all scientific and bibliographical purposes its presence is indicated by an apostrophe, e.g. *царь* = *tsar'*.

in the English word *educate*, *n* in the Italian word *ogni*, *l* in the Spanish word *llama*, but the difficulty in Russian is that these palatalized consonants occur as often as not at the end of words, and it is in these cases that their pronunciation is a stumbling-block to foreigners. A further difficulty is caused by the fact that the consonant palatalized by *ь*, or rather *ь* itself, influences the pronunciation of a hard vowel in the preceding syllable, causing a throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, in German called the *i-Vorschlag*.

Examples of the similar effect of *я* on a hard vowel in a preceding syllable have already been given (cf. §§ 5, 7). A good instance of that produced by *ь* is the name of the Russian town Хárьковъ, the *а* of which is pronounced like the *ai* in the word *Cairo*; the first syllable Харъ- is pronounced almost like the English word *hire*, rolling the *r*. Another word in which the effect of *ь* on a preceding hard vowel is very marked is царь = *tsar*', in which the *а* is pronounced almost like the *ai* of *Cairo*; another is the name of the Siberian river Обь, commonly written in English *Obi*, but really a monosyllabic word, the pronunciation of which is approximately *Oip* (cf. § 15), *oi* having the value of *oi* in the English *coin*. This throwing-back of the *i*-sound is far more marked in the case of *а* and *о* than in that of the other hard vowels *ы* and *у*, while after *э* the soft mute vowel never occurs. The effect of the soft mute vowel, itself a palatal, on a preceding soft or palatal vowel is most marked in the case of *я* and *е* (ѣ), and scarcely noticeable in that of *и* and *ю*; in the only case where it occurs after *ѣ*, i.e. in the 2nd sing. of the present of some verbs, it is, like *ь*, not pronounced at all. An example of *ь* after *я* is the word пять = *five*; in this case the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not so marked as in that of the corresponding hard vowel *а*, but is nevertheless noticeable, while the final *т* is softened and pronounced, e.g. like the *Thi*- in the French name *Thiers*, i. e. it is palatalized, *but does not form a syllable*. The difference between *я* followed by *ь* and *я* followed by a hard vowel is very noticeable in the two words пять = *five* and нáто = *heel*; in the latter *я* has the value of *ya* in the English words *yard*, *yarn*, while in the former it is nearly as thin as the *ya* in *Yat*, though not quite. *Е* or *ѣ* followed by *ь* is pronounced like *ya* in the word *Yale*, but with lips still closer together, e. g. есть = *there is*, is pronounced

approximately like *yaist*, i. e. like the English *waist*, with a palatalized *t*. The pronunciation of these consonants followed by *ь* is one of the greatest difficulties for Englishmen talking Russian, and the very name of this letter—*ерь*—is one of the hardest words in the language to pronounce correctly.

It is to be noticed that in the 2nd pers. sing. of the present of all verbs, which without exception ends in *-шь*, the *ь* has no effect at all, and the *ш* is pronounced hard, as if it were *штъ*, e. g. *идёшь* = *thou goest*, pron. *idyósh*; *видишь* = *thou seest*, pron. *vidyish*.

ь may occur in the middle as well as at the end of words, though it cannot stand at the beginning of a word. Its function is always the same, viz. to palatalize or soften a preceding consonant. Etymologically it always represents the last remains of a lost *ъ* when it occurs in Russian words, and it is also used frequently in the transcription of foreign words. The word *возьмý* = *I shall take*, is pronounced approximately *vaizmú* or *voizmú* (*ai* as in *Cairo*, *oi* as in *coin*), and is of only two, not three syllables; *семья* = *family*, is pronounced *syemyá*; *бью* = *I hit*, is pronounced *byú* (of course as one syllable); *чья* = *whose* (N., interrog. pron.), *chyó* (as one syllable), and so on. In a number of neuter nouns ending in *-е*, either *і* or *ь* may be used, and the pronunciation is the same, e. g. *имѣніе* or *имѣнье* = *property* (pronounced *imyénye*—usually as three, but sometimes as four syllables). *ь* is used in the transcription of foreign words such as *пьяніно* = *an upright piano*, pronounced *pianino*, as in Italian, and always after *l* in foreign words before consonants or at the end, to show that the *l* is to be pronounced as single *l* in French and not like the Russian deep *l*, e. g. *Ольденбургъ* = *Oldenburg*, *Брюссель* = *Brussels*. It may be added that the effect of *ь* on terminal dentals, nasals, and liquid consonants is far more marked than on labials, palatals, and sibilants. *ь* does not occur after gutturals, which become palatals before it, and is never initial.

The Consonants.

§ 15.

Б б = b

is pronounced as in English, except medial б before a voiceless consonant and final б (sc. бъ or бь), when it becomes voiceless, i. e. *p*, e. g. лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*; голубъ = *pigeon*, pron. *golup*; голубчикъ = *little pigeon*, 'my dear', pron. *galúpchik*.¹

Before a palatal vowel *b* is palatalized (softened), though it is not as much affected by palatalization as are some other consonants; indeed in rapid speech, *when unaccented*, the palatalization is sometimes scarcely noticeable, e. g. безъ = *without*, pron. *byez* (one syllable), but in rapid conversation *bez*, though it is of course never wrong to bring out the palatalization. It is always better to over-palatalize than to under-palatalize. Before an accented palatal vowel *b* is of course always palatalized, e. g. побѣда = *victory*, pron. *pabyéda* (three syllables), бью = *I hit*, pron. *byu* (one syllable).

Before the palatal vowel *и*, however, even when this is accented, the palatalization of б is not expressed, owing to the physical inconvenience involved in doing so, e. g. любить = *he loves*, pron. *lyúbit*; убійца = *murderer*, pron. *ubítsa*, though it is very important to remember that the *i* here is pronounced like the English *ee* in e. g. *beet*, never like *i* in the words *bit*, *bill*. As Greek β was pronounced *v* at the time the Cyrillic alphabet was made, a new sign, viz. б, had to be invented to represent *b*.

§ 16.

В в = v

is pronounced as in English, except medial в before a voiceless consonant and final в (sc. въ or вь), when it becomes voiceless, i. e. *f*, e. g. ровъ = *ditch*, pron. *rof*; любовь = *love*, pron. *lyubóif* (two syllables, cf. § 14); ковшъ = *ladle*, pron. *kofsh*.

Before a palatal vowel *v* is palatalized (softened), following б in this respect (q. v.). As in the case of б, the extent to which the palatalization is noticeable depends very much on whether the palatal vowel is accented or not, while before the palatal vowel *и*

¹ It is worth remarking that the word рубль = *rouble*, is pronounced *rup*, as if it ended in бь.

it is not expressed at all, even when this is accented, e.g. весна́ = *spring (of the year)*, pron. *vyesná*, which in rapid conversation may often sound like *vesná*, but вера́ = *faith*, always *vyéra*, the *yer* of which is pronounced like *ierre* in the French *Pierre*; вѣю = *I wind*, pron. *vyu*, like the English *view*; вино́ = *wine*, pron. *vinó* (*i* = Italian *i*).

In the transliteration of foreign words beginning with *eu-* and *auto-* the Greek *υ* is in Russian represented by *в*, e.g. Еврени́й = *Eugen*, pron. *Yevgyéni*, автомоби́ль = *motor-car*, pron. *astamabíl'*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 17.

Г г = g

is pronounced in various ways. Initial *г* is always hard, like *g* in the English *go*, when followed by a vowel or by the consonants *в*, *л*, *п*, *н*, *ж*, *з*. In the word где́ = *where*, *г* is usually pronounced like a voiced *kh*, and may be transcribed *gh—ghdyé*, though sometimes here also as hard *g* or even as *k*. Г is also pronounced *gh* in the vocative of Господь = *Lord*: Господи́, pron. *ghóspodyi*.

Medial *г* before a voiceless consonant is pronounced *kh*, like *ch* in the Scotch *loch*, e.g. ко́гти = *claws*, pron. *kókhnyi*; before a voiced consonant it is pronounced usually *gh*, but also sometimes *g* or *k*, e.g. ко́гда = *when*, pron. *kaghdá*, but also *kakdá* and *kagdá*.

Medial *г* before a vowel is hard, e.g. мно́го = *much*, pron. *mnóga*, but is as often as not pronounced *gh*, *mnógha*, мо́рю = *I am able*, is pronounced *magú*, but as frequently *maghú*. In the oblique cases of the word Бо́гъ = *God*, *г* is always pronounced *gh*, e.g. Бо́гу = *to God*, *bóghu*. In the genitive singular masculine and neuter of all adjectives (in which connexion it is important to remember that most Russian family names are adjectives) and declinable pronouns, -аго, -его, -ого, and -яго, *г* is pronounced *v*, e.g. е́го = *of him*, pron. *yevó*; Толсто́го = *of Tolstói*, pron. *Talstóva*. The reason for this is that the Old Bulgarian orthography adopted by the Russians was never altered by the latter to correspond to Russian pronunciation, which in this case differed from that of Old Bulgarian. It is a good instance to quote when Russians accuse English of being written one way and spoken another. It is important to remember that the word мно́го = *much* (quoted above) is not a genitive but an indeclinable pronoun, and is therefore not affected by this rule; likewise the negative немно́го = *little*.

Final *ɾ* (sc. *ɾʲ*) is always voiceless, i.e. *k*, except in the word *Богъ* = *God*, when it is pronounced *kh* as in Scotch *loch*, e.g. *моръ* = *I was able*, pron. *mok*, but *Богъ* always *bokh*.

ɾ cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ѣ*; *ɾ* followed by a palatal vowel is pronounced hard, but with a *y*-sound immediately afterwards, e.g. *по Во́лгѣ* (= dat. of *Волга*) = *along the Volga* (pron. *Vólgye*), *географ́ия* = *geography*, pron. *gyeográfia*, but in rapid speech the *y* is scarcely noticeable. In the transliteration of foreign names and words *ɾ* is always used to represent *h*, a quaint convention established by Peter the Great; *x* would have been in most cases more rational. The resulting phenomena are often bizarre, e.g. *В. Гюго* = *V. Hugo*, *Гару́йчъ-Гукъ-фанъ-Голландъ* = *Harwich—Hook of Holland*, *Гуль* = *Hull* (N.B. *not*, as might be thought, *Goole*); *гидроф́обия* = *hydrophobia*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 18.

Д *d* = *d*

The pronunciation of the dental consonants in particular is affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *д* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *д + в, л, м, н, р* is very frequently, i.e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth. The sound produced is more like the Irish *d̪*, rather than the ordinary English *d*, which is of course not inter-dental, but cerebral, i.e. the tongue while forming the sound touches not the teeth but the roof of the mouth. On the other hand, no aspirate is audible in the Russian *д* before a hard vowel. In the pronunciation of some Russians the inter-dental quality of the *д* before a hard vowel is not so noticeable, but as a general rule it is strictly inter-dental as opposed to our purely cerebral *d̪*. It may be remarked that it is physically easier to give the full value to the hard vowels *а, о, ы, у* after an inter-dental than after a cerebral *d̪*, and therefore the inter-dental pronunciation for a foreigner is doubly important.

Initial and medial *д* before a palatal (soft) vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental but strongly palatalized, i.e. pronounced like *dy* in, e.g. the English *d'you* (*think*), e.g. *дѣ́дя* = *uncle*, pron. *dýdya* (only two syllables), *дѣ́ло* = *matter*, pron. *dýélo*, *Одѣ́сса*

— *Odessa*, pron. *Adyessa*, дитя́ = *child*, pron. *dyityá*. This explains how it is that Russians, although such good linguists, sometimes mispronounce foreign words, e.g. *Dickens*, often pronounced *Dyickens*, *Divonne* = *Dyivonne*, &c. Medial *д* followed by the palatal vowel *ь* + another consonant is difficult for foreigners to pronounce, e.g. седьмо́й = *seventh*, is only a disyllable, pron. *suedymói*, in which *dy* has the same quality as the *d'y* in *d'you*; it is important to remember that it is neither English *d* nor English *j*. In the imperatives бѣдѣте = *be* (2nd pl.) and сядѣте = *be seated* (2nd pl.) the *дѣ* becomes as it were lost in the *т*, which is strongly emphasized as if it were *тт*, so that these words (both very common) are pronounced *búttye* (*u* of course as in Italian), *syáttye*.

Final *д* (sc. *дѣ*) becomes voiceless, i. e. *t*, but as *ѣ* is a hard vowel *д* still remains inter-dental, i. e. with the tip of the tongue touching both rows of teeth, e.g. годѣ = *year*, pron. *got*. Final *д* (sc. *дѣ*) is pronounced like palatalized *t*, e.g. like *t y* in *let you*, e.g. будѣ = *be* (2nd sing.), pron. *búty*, which is of course a monosyllable, the *y* here only representing palatalization. In the transliteration of foreign names *дж* is used to represent *j*, e.g. Джемзѣ = *James*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 19.

Ж ж = zh

is pronounced like *s* in the English word *measure*, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, sc. *жѣ* or *жѣ*, when it becomes voiceless itself, i. e. *sh*. The effect of a palatal vowel on medial *ж* is to make it slightly thinner (the *y*-sound is scarcely noticeable), something between *z* and *zh*, though nearer to *zh* than to *z*. Examples: женá = *wife*, pron. *zhená*, жа́жда = *thirst*, pron. *zházhdá*, мужи́ки = *peasants*, pron. *muzhyki*, мужѣ = *husband*, pron. *mush*, ло́жка = *spoon*, pron. *lòshka*. For the pronunciation of *и*, *е*, and *ѣ* after *ж* cf. §§ 11, 12. *ы* cannot stand after *ж*, which turns it into *и*. *ь* after final *ж* has not the effect on preceding vowels described in § 14. *ж* is always used to represent French *j*, e.g. журна́ль = *magazine* (from French *journal*), and with *д* (*дж*) to represent English *j* (cf. § 18). The form of this letter is of unknown origin.

§ 20.

З з = z

is pronounced as in English, except when medial before a voiceless consonant and final, i. e. *зѣ* or *зѣ*, when it becomes voiceless

itself, i. e. *s*, as in *sun*. The effect of a palatal vowel on *s* when medial is merely to soften it by adding to it a *y*-sound, but in an unaccented syllable this is scarcely noticeable. Examples: злой *malicious*, pron. *zloi*, зеркало = *mirror*, pron. *zyérkala*, зима = *winter*, pron. *zimá*, указъ = *decree*, pron. *ukas* (*u* = Italian *u*). In words where *s* is followed by *ж* (q.v.) the latter absorbs the former, e.g. ѣзжу = *I ride*, pron. *yézhju*, with emphasis on the *zh*. Whenever the prepositions раз- (= *dis*-), воз- (= *up*), and низ- (= *down*), which are only used in composition, are compounded with a word beginning with a voiceless consonant (except *c*), the *s* is pronounced *and* written as *c*; e.g. расколъ = *dissent*, pron. *raskól*, восходъ = *ascent*, pron. *vaskhót*, but рассказъ = *tale*, pron. *raskás*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 21.

К к = k

is pronounced as in English, except before *к*, *г*, and *т*, when it is usually pronounced *kh* (i. e. like *ch* in Scotch *loch*). Examples: какъ = *how*, pron. *kak*; къмъ = *by whom*, pron. *kyem* (one syllable), but къ кому = *to whom*, pron. *khkamú* (two syllables); кто = *who*, pron. *khto*. *к* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ь*.

§ 22.

Л л = l

is pronounced in two very distinct ways, according to whether it is followed by a hard or a soft (palatal) vowel. Before a hard vowel, or before a consonant followed by a hard vowel, it is pronounced as in Yorkshire or Scotland, i. e. with the tip of the tongue curling upwards, leaving a space between the tongue and the roof of the mouth. This is often called guttural *l*, but it is really rather cerebral than guttural. Some Russians pronounce it without touching, or barely touching, the palate with the tip of the tongue, so that it sounds like *w*. The Polish deep *l*, written in Polish *ł*, is almost always thus pronounced. Those Englishmen who find it difficult to pronounce the deep Russian *l* as *l*, can solve the difficulty at the imminent risk of being mistaken for West Russians, by fearlessly pronouncing *л* before hard vowels like English *w*, e.g. лампа = *lamp*, pron. *lámpa*, *wámpa* (*a* of course as in Italian); луна = *moon*, pron. *luná*, *wuná*; лобъ = *forehead*, pron. *lop*, *wop*; лось = *reindeer*, pron. *lois*, *wois*; ёлка = *Christmas-tree*,

pron. *yólka*, *yóčka*; *лгунъ* = *liar*, pron. *lgun*, *wgun*; *быль* = *he was*, pron. *byl*, very much like the English word *bill*, or *byw*, *biwio*; *была* = *she was*, pron. *bylá*, or *bywá* (*y* here having the sound of *y* in *hymn*). It is also like the second *l* in *little*.

Before a soft (palatal) vowel, on the other hand, *л* is pronounced like Italian *gl* in e.g. *degli*, or like Spanish *ll* in e.g. *llama*, i. e. it is palatal, formed by pressing the whole front part of the tongue against the palate. E. g. *лѣдъ* = *ice*, pron. *lyot*; *лѣна* = *lime-tree*, pron. *lytpa*; *лѣю* = *I pour*, pron. *lyu*; *лѣди* = *people*, pron. *lyúdyi*. Final *лъ* is rather difficult for Englishmen to pronounce, but the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, contained in the *ь*, on to the preceding vowel is very marked and makes it easier, e.g. *боль* = *pain*, pron. very much like *boil*, but giving the *л* the value of Italian *gl*. *Лъ* followed by other consonants is still more difficult to pronounce, but it is made easier by running the preceding syllable right into it, e.g. *на лѣдѣ* = *on the ice*, is pronounced approximately *naíldú*, *ai* having the value of *ai* in *Cairo*, *нелѣзя* = *it is impossible*, pron. *nyalezýá* in two syllables, *-yale* like the American *Yale*, and *л* having the value of Italian *gl*. *Л* followed by a consonant and a palatal vowel is also pronounced like Italian *gl*, e.g. *лже-прорѣкъ* = *false prophet*, pron. *lzheprarók*. Foreign names ending in *l* are written in Russian with final *лъ*, e.g. *Брюссель* = *Brussels*, but foreign words which are regarded as having become Russian are written with *ль*, e.g. *капиталь* = *capital* (sc. money).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 23.

М м = m

is pronounced as in English. Final *мъ* is difficult to pronounce; it is of course softened, just as *m* in the English word *mew*, but in rapid conversation this is scarcely noticeable. It is easier for foreigners to express palatalization by emphasizing the throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e.g. *семь* = *seven*, pron. *syame*, *syaim*, like the English words *same*, *aim*; *восемь* = *eight*, pron. *vóisyame*, which in rapid conversation becomes *vóisim* or *vóisyem*. In the syllable *ми* the *y*-sound is very difficult to express after *м*, even for Russians, and is therefore inaudible, e.g. *мимо* = *past* (prep.), pron. *mima*.

§ 24.

Н н = n

is pronounced as in English. The same applies to final *нъ* as to final *мъ*; the sound *нъ* is, however, more familiar to Englishmen as

it is exactly the same as French and Italian *gn*, e. g. *Boulogne* is written in Russian Будонъ. In Russian words ending in нь the palatalization is if anything more marked than in those with final мь, and the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is equally marked, e. g. конь = *steed*, is pronounced *koigne*, like *Boulogne*, though in rapid conversation it sounds like the English word *coin* pronounced very short, just as *Boulogne* spoken by many Englishmen sounds like *boo-loin*. In the syllable нн the *y*-sound must always be expressed, though it is difficult for Englishmen to do so, e. g. съ ними = *with them*, is pronounced *snymī*, -*yi*- having the sound of the English word *ye*.

The Russian Н is derived from the Greek Ν. The reason why it is in Russian written Н is that while the middle stroke of our *N* has remained sloping, the middle stroke of the same letter in Russian has become horizontal; in Old Bulgarian the letter was written **Н** and in Russian it has become Н.

§ 25.

П п = *p*

is pronounced as in English. Palatalized п, i. e. п before a palatal vowel, is pronounced simply *py*-, as in English *piano*, except in the syllable пн, where it is almost impossible to express the *y*-sound, e. g. перо = *pen*, pron. like the French word *Pierrot*, but пиль = *he drank*, pron. like the English word *peel*. Final нь is very rare; it is difficult for an Englishman to express the *ɤ*, but its effect on the preceding vowel is obvious, e. g. цѣнь = *chain*, pron. *tsyape* (one syllable), -*ape* as in English *tape*, but цѣнь = *flail*, pron. *tsyep*, as in English *tepid*.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 26.

Р р = *r*

is pronounced as in Scotland; it is always rolled with the tip of the tongue, and never under any circumstances pronounced as in English or German. Exactly the same applies to palatalized *p* and to *пн* as to palatalized *п* and *пн*, e. g. Рязань = *Ryazan*, pron. *Ryazagne* (-*gne* as in French); but Рига = *Riga*, *ri*- as in English *reel*, but rolling the *r*. Medial and final *р* is difficult to pronounce, but is made easier by the marked throwing-back of the *i*-sound, e. g. царь = *tsar*', pron. *tsair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in Cairo), Харьковъ = *Harkov*, pron. *Hairkaf* (*ai* again as in Cairo), ерь = the name of the letter *ɤ*, pron. *yair*, rolling the *r* (*ai* as in the English word *aim*),

but *еръ* = the name of the letter *ѣ*, pron. *yare*, rolling the *r* (like the English word *fare*).

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 27.

С с = s

is pronounced *always* like English voiceless *s* in e.g. *second*. Palatalized *c* is simply *s* + the *y*-sound, which latter is, however, inaudible in the syllable *си*, e.g. *сѣмя* = *seed*, pron. *syémya*, but *сила* = *strength*, pron. *síla* or *síva*; *сиджу́* = *I sit*, pron. *sizhú*. The same applies to medial and final *съ* as to *ръ* and *пъ*, e.g. *мо́ська* = *pug*, pron. *móiska*, *oi* as in the English word *moist*, though the throwing-back of the *i*-sound is not always so easy, e.g. *Русь* = the old name of Russia, pron. *Rúis*, in one syllable, *u* as *oo* in English, with a slight *i*-sound between the *u* and *s*, which gives the *s* a somewhat minced or affected character. After a palatal vowel the effect of final *ь* is only noticeable in the attenuation of the *s*, e.g. *бо́юсь* = *I fear* (where *-сь* is the reflexive pronoun), pron. *bayús*; *мо́юсь* = *I wash myself*, pron. *móyus*; in these cases the *y*-sound after the final *c* is distinctly audible, but very difficult for foreigners to reproduce.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek.

§ 28.

Т т = t

The pronunciation of *т*, as of *д* (q. v.), is particularly affected by the quality of the subsequent vowel. Initial and medial *т* before a hard vowel, also initial and medial *т* + *в*, *к*, *л*, *м*, *н*, *п*, also final *-тъ*, is very frequently, i. e. in the pronunciation of many people, strictly *inter-dental*, i. e. the tongue while forming the sound touches both the upper and lower teeth, or at any rate it is dental, i. e. the tongue touches the tops of the upper teeth, and not cerebral as in English. As in the case of *д*, most foreigners will find that it is easier to give their full value to the hard vowels after a dental, than after a cerebral *т*; it is also far easier to roll the *r* after dental than after cerebral *д* and *т*, e.g. *три* = *three*, must on no account be pronounced like the English word *tree*, but like our *three* without *h* and rolling the *r*.

Initial and medial *т* before a palatal vowel is, on the other hand, not inter-dental or dental, but strongly palatalized, i. e. pronounced like *ty* in e.g. *let you*, e.g. *тѣло* = *body*, pron. *tyélo* or *tyévo*; *ити́* = *to go* (on foot), pron. *ityí*; *тебѣ́* = *to thee*, pron. *tyebyé*; *тѣ́мно* = *dark*, (adv.), pron. *tyómna*.

Initial or medial *т* followed by *ь* + a consonant is difficult to pronounce, e. g. *тьма* = *darkness*, is only one syllable, pron. *tynd*. Final *ть* is pronounced in the same way and is if anything more difficult for most beginners; it is of very common occurrence, as it is the ordinary infinitival ending, e. g. *говорить* = *to speak*, pron. *gavarity*, in three syllables, the *y* of course not forming a syllable, but merely palatalizing the *т*. This is very important, as mispronunciation alters the meaning of the word, e. g. *говорить* (hard) = *he speaks* (3rd sing.), pron. *gavaritt*.

The pronunciation of final *дъ* and *ть* is made more difficult by the fact that there is not with them, except when accented, any throwing-back of the *i*-sound on to the preceding vowel, e. g. *дѣлать* = *to do*, must *not* be pronounced *dyélait* but *dyélaty* (in two syllables with palatalized *t*); but, N. B., *мать* = *mother*, pron. *maity* in one syllable with palatalized *t*. For Englishmen in particular it is important to remember that final *ть* is neither *t* nor *ts* nor *ch*, but palatalized, just as it is in the English word *actual*; the difficulty is to pronounce the palatalized *t* at the end of a word with no vowel following and without letting it form an extra syllable.

The form of this letter is derived from the Greek; the italic form *т* (and that of the written capital) is the result of the gradual lengthening downwards of the two ends of the bar across the top of the letter *т* *т*.

§ 29.

Ф ф = *f*

is pronounced as in English, and occurs only in words of foreign origin, e. g. *фотографъ* = *photographer*, pron. *fatógraf*.

This letter is derived directly from the Greek.

§ 30.

X x = *kh*

is pronounced like *ch* in Scotch or German *loch* by some, but by others more like the English aspirate *h*. *X* cannot be followed by *ы* (which it turns into *и*) nor by *ь*. It is always used to render the Greek *χ* (from which it is derived), e. g. *археологія* = *archaeology*.

§ 31.

Ц ц = *ts*

is pronounced as in English *lots*, e. g. *Царьцынь* (lit. *Tsaritsa's* or *Empress's*), a town on the Volga, pron. *Tsaritsyn*; *Царское Село*

(lit. *Tsar's* or *Emperor's village*), a town near Petrograd, pron. *Tsárskoye Syeló*. It is also used to render the Latin *c* before *e*, *i*, and *ae*, e. g. Ціцэронъ = *Cicero*, Цэзаръ = *Caesar*.

The form of the letter is of unknown origin.

§ 32.

Ч ч = *ch*

is pronounced as in English *church*, except that it is a palatal consonant, whereas ours is not. The result of this is that there is a tendency to pronounce even the hard vowels when they follow ч as if they were palatal, though orthography forbids the use of я and ю after ч; in practice this palatal pronunciation of the hard vowels is only noticeable when the latter are accented, e. g. чѣдо = *wonder, miracle*, is pronounced almost as if it were чюдо, but in the plural чудеса the *y*-sound is not audible. ы cannot stand after ч, and it is important to remember that ь after ч is pronounced like the *ee* in *cheese*, not like the *i* in *chill*, e. g. in the word чісто = *clean* (N., sing. and adverb). ё (ѣ) after ч is pronounced *ye* if accented, e. g. Чéховъ (the dramatic author), pron. *Chyék'hof*, but when unaccented the *y*-sound is scarcely audible (cf. § 11). Ъ after final ч has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 33.

Ш ш = *sh*

is pronounced as in the word *English*. ы cannot stand after ш, which turns it into ь. For the pronunciation of *e*, *и*, and *ё* after ш cf. §§ 11, 12. Ъ after final ш has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14, but it is important to remember that the 2nd sing. of the presents of all verbs which without exception ends in -шь is always pronounced as if it were written -шьь.

The form of this letter is of Semitic origin.

§ 34.

Щ щ = *shch*

is broadly speaking pronounced as in *Ashchurch*, but it is to be noticed that it is pronounced in various ways by various people. By many it is pronounced *shch* as described, but by many others like a very emphatic *sh* with a palatal quality; thus the word щъ = *cabbage-soup* (a national dish) is by some pronounced *shchi* (*i* as in *cheese*), by others *shyi* (in one syllable, the *i* as in *cheese*).

Being a compound of *м* and *ч* it is made palatal by the palatal quality inherent in *ч*, and thus all vowels are pronounced after it as they are after *ч*, cf. § 32. *н* cannot stand after *м*, which turns it into *к*. *ь* after final *м* has the effect on preceding vowels already described in § 14.

The form of this letter in Old Bulgarian was *Ѡ*, that is to say a *м* superimposed on a *т*, and in that language it had the value of *шт*, which it still retains in Modern Bulgarian.

§ 35.

Θ θ = f

is the Greek *θ* and is called in Russian *Ѡтá* (pron. *fitá*). It is only used in words and names of Greek origin, e.g. *Θομά* = *Thomas*, pron. *Famá*; *Θεοδόσια* = *Theodosia* (a town in the Crimea, pron. *Feodósia*).

The Greek *ξ* is represented in Russian by *кс*, e.g. *Александръ* = *Alexander*, *аксіома* = *axiom*. The Latin *x* by *кс*, e.g. *экзаменъ* = *examination* (educational), or *кс*, e.g. *эксплоатація* = *exploitation*.

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

§ 36. In the foregoing, §§ 4-35, the ordinary English letters only have been used to render the pronunciation of the Russian vowels and consonants. This has been done for the sake of general utility, but it must be understood that such a method of transcription is not only unscientific but also only approximately accurate. Appended is a list of the Russian sounds already enumerated and described together with their approximate equivalents in the signs currently used for phonetic spelling in England for the benefit of those students who are acquainted with the latter; needless to say that in a work of this size neither the list of Russian sounds nor that of their equivalents can pretend to include all the variations of pronunciation which occur, variations which are largely conditioned by the varying rates of spoken speech.

Russian
letter.

Phonetic
transcription.

<i>a</i>	{ followed by hard vowel or final }	<i>a</i>
"	{ followed by a palatal vowel or by <i>ь</i> }	<i>a</i>

PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

*Russian
letter.**Phonetic
transcription.*

а	{ when pronounced like the obscure vowel in English }	ə
э	followed by a hard vowel	ɛ
е	followed by a palatal vowel	e
ы		ɨ
о	when accented	ɔ
о	when unaccented	ə
у		u
я		ja or ja
е (ѣ)		je or je
и		i or ji
ѐ		jɔ (after ж, ч, ш, щ = ɔ)
ю		ju
ь		,
б		b
в		v
г		g
д		d
ж		ʒ
з		z
к		k
л		l
м		m
н		n
п		p
р		r
с		s
т		t
ф		f
х		x
ц		ts
ч		tʃ
ш		ʃ
щ		ʃ'tʃ or ʃ'tʃ or ʃ
ѐ		f

THE ACCENT

§ 37. As has already been remarked, the accent in Russian is mobile, i. e. it may fall on any syllable. There are certain rules which govern it in certain cases, but their value is discounted by the existence of numerous exceptions. Correct accentuation is one of the greatest difficulties that Russian presents to the foreigner, as a misplaced accent may lead to disconcerting errors; at the best a foreigner who puts the accent on the wrong syllable will merely not be understood at all. The difficulty is increased by the fact that neither in writing nor in print is the accent marked, and in addition by the fact that in many cases words, though spelt identically, have quite different meanings according to where the accent is placed, e. g. мука́ = *flour*, but му́ка = *torment*; плачу́ = *I pay*, but пла́чу = *I weep*; воды́ = *waters* (nom. pl.), but водѣ́ = *some water* (gen. sing.), and many others.

Although the Russians talk much more musically than the English, the Russian accent is not a musical, but a stress accent. The accented syllable is always very strongly emphasized (in contrast to French), and the unaccented syllables consequently lose in some cases the full value of their vowels, e. g. unaccented *o* is always pronounced *a* (like our *u* in *but*), e. g. доро́га = *road*, pron. *daróga*; unaccented *я* like *i* or *e*, e. g. пятьдеся́тъ = *fifty* (lit. *cinq dizaines*), pron. *pidyesyát*. It should be mentioned that in a number of cases the same word is often accented differently by different but equally well educated Russians, e. g. тѣ́мно and те́мно = *dark* (adv.), и́наче and ина́че = *otherwise*, во́рота and ворота́ = *gateway*, and also that the accent is often withdrawn altogether from the noun by a preposition governing it, e. g. за́ руку = *by the hand* (ру́ку = acc. sing. of рука́ = *hand*), на́ голову = *on the head* (sc. *on to*; го́лову = acc. sing. of голова́ = *head*), во-вре́мя = *in good time* (the hyphen is used to distinguish it from во вре́мя + gen. = *during* . . .), and sometimes from the past tense of a verb by the negative particle, e. g. не́ былъ, не́ было = *was not*, не́ далъ = *did not give*, though such cases both as regards nouns and verbs are the exception rather than the rule.

Failing the help *viva voce* of a competent teacher, beginners are recommended to read only accented texts, of which many have been published, in order to get used to the accent and also to read poetry, where the position of the accent is always indicated by the metre.

A list of accented texts published is given in the bibliography at the beginning of this book. By observing carefully the accents on the most commonly used cases and parts of the most commonly used nouns, verbs, &c., the student will learn where to place the accent far more quickly than by learning rules and exceptions which always contain forms that are rarely used. The accent is invariably marked in all dictionaries, even in those Russian dictionaries printed in Russia for the exclusive use of Russians, but in Russian grammars printed in Russia it is usually omitted.

THE DECLENSION OF THE SUBSTANTIVES

§ 38. There are three genders in Russian—Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; and two numbers—Singular and Plural, though traces of the Dual are numerous in the declensions.

There is no definite or indefinite article in Russian corresponding to our *the, a, an*. The context is usually sufficient to indicate which is meant, whether *the* or *a*; otherwise recourse must be had to the demonstrative or indefinite pronouns. The demonstrative pronoun is sometimes used as a definite article after the noun which it qualifies, though only in the colloquial language (cf. § 48).

There are six cases in Russian, viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental, and Locative*. This last is sometimes called the *Prepositional*, because it is never used except after one of the five prepositions: *о* = *concerning*, *въ* = *in*, *на* = *on*, *при* = *in the presence of*, *по* = *after*. The *Instrumental* can be used without a preposition, when it denotes the instrument or agent by means of which anything is done. It is also used after certain prepositions, and then loses the meaning which the name implies. For the remains of the *Vocative* in modern Russian cf. § 39, Obs. 9.

§ 39. Masculine Nouns having the Nom. Sing. in -ъ, -ь, -й.

Almost all masculines end in -ъ, -ь, or -й. All nouns which end in -ъ and -й are masculine.

All nouns which end in -ъ are called *hard*, those ending in -ь or -й *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel, begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

A peculiarity of the masculine nouns is that in the case of animate things the acc. sing. is the same as the gen. sing., while in the case of inanimate things it is the same as the nom. sing.; this rule applies also to the plural.

Examples: (hard) столъ = *table*; народъ = *people, nation*; (soft) царь = *tsar*; олень = *deer*; сарай = *coach-house*.

Singular.

N.	столъ	народъ	царь	олень
G.	стола	народа	царя	оленья
D.	столу	народу	царю	оленью
A.	столъ	народъ	царя	оленья
I.	столомъ	народомъ	царёмъ	олёнёмъ
L.	столъ	народъ	царь	олень

Plural.

N.	столы	народы	цари	олени
G.	столовъ	народовъ	царей	оленей
D.	столамъ	народамъ	царямъ	олёниямъ
A.	столы	народы	царей	оленей
I.	столами	народами	царями	олёниями
L.	столахъ	нородахъ	царяхъ	олёняхъ

Singular.

N.	сарай
G.	сарая
D.	сараяу
A.	сарай
I.	сараемъ
L.	сарайъ

Plural.

сарай
сараетъ
сараямъ
сарай
сараями
сараяхъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. sing. and plur. of all masculine nouns is the same as the nom. sing. and plur. in the case of inanimate, and the same as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate things: thus the acc. sing. of *столъ* is *столъ*, but of *царь*—*царя*.

2. The masc. nouns in *-ъ* have borrowed the ending of the gen. plur. *-ей* (e. g. *царѣй*) from another declension.

3. The nom. acc. pl. of all masc. nouns in *-къ, -гъ, -хъ, -чъ, -щъ, -жъ, -шъ*, end in *-ки, -ги, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши* (i. e. take *-и* instead of *-ы*), because *ы* cannot stand after a guttural or after *ч, щ, ж, or ш*, e. g. *малычикъ* = *boy*, nom. pl. *малычики*; *ножъ* = *knife*, nom. pl. *ножи*; *ключъ* = *key*, nom. pl. *ключи*.

4. The inst. sing. and gen. plur. of all masc. nouns in *-жъ, -чъ, -шъ, -щъ*, end respectively in *-емъ* (*-ѣмъ* if accented) and *-ей*, e. g. *товарищъ*, = *companion*, inst. sing. *товарищемъ*, gen. pl. *товарищей*; *ножъ* = *knife*, inst. sing. *ножомъ* (pron. *nazhóm*), gen. pl. *ножѣй*; *ключъ* = *key*, inst. sing. *ключѣмъ*, gen. pl. *ключѣй*; *экипажъ* = *carriage*, inst. sing. *экипажемъ*, gen. pl. *экипажей*. All these nouns were originally soft and have only latterly become hard. In the same way the nouns ending in *-цъ* were originally soft; of these, those which have the last syllable accented have become hard throughout, e. g. *отецъ* = *father*, makes inst. sing. *отцѣмъ* and gen. plur. *отцовъ*, but those which are not accented on the last syllable still make their inst. sing. in *-емъ*, and their gen. plur. in *-евъ*, e. g. *мѣсяцъ* = *moon* or *month*, inst. sing. *мѣсяцемъ* and gen. plur. *мѣсяцевъ*.

5. A large number of words which contain *e* or *o* in the last syllable of the nom. sing. lose this vowel in the oblique cases when, while on the *e* or *o* in the nom., the accent afterwards passes to the case-ending, and sometimes also when the accent throughout is on the first syllable; the emphasis on the accented syllable is so strong that the weak vowel of the unaccented syllable disappears, e. g. *отецъ* = *father*, gen. sing. *отца*, dat. sing. *отцу*, nom. pl. *отцы*; *замокъ* = *castle*, *за́мка*; *дворецъ* = *palace*, gen. sing. *дворца*; *песокъ* = *sand*, *песка́*; *кусокъ* = *piece*, *куска́*; *день* = *day*, gen. sing. *дня*. In *левъ* = *lion*, *лѣдъ* = *ice*, and *лѣнь* = *flax*, *e* becomes *ь* to show that the *л* remains soft, e. g. *лѣдъ* = *ice*, gen. sing. *льда*, but *лобъ* = *fore-head*, gen. sing. *лоба*, with hard *л*. The *e* is retained in cases where

its omission would cause an excessive accumulation of consonants, e. g. мертвѣць = *corpse* makes gen. sing. мертвеца́. A few words in -ѣй make gen. sing. in -ья, dat. in -ю, nom. pl. -и, &c.; e. g. ручѣй = *stream*, gen. sing. ручья́, also воробѣй = *sparrow*, муравѣй = *ant*, and соловѣй = *nightingale*, nom. pl. соловьи́, &c.

Words in -ѣмъ make their gen. sing. in -йма, dat. sing. -йму, &c.; e. g. заѣмъ = *loan*, gen. займа́. Боецъ = *fighter*, gen. бойца́, and зѣяцъ = *hare*, by analogy, makes зѣйца́.

In other cases where the same process apparently occurs the e and o have merely been inserted in the nom. sing. to make pronunciation easier, e. g. вѣтеръ = *wind*, gen. sing. вѣтра́; огонь = *fire*, огня́; уголъ = *corner*, угла́, уголь = *coal*, угля́.

6. Masculine nouns denoting divisible matter have a gen. sing. in -у (-ю) when the gen. is used in a partitive sense, e. g. фунтъ чаю́ = *a pound of tea*, from чай = *tea*; мало народу́ = *few people* (lit. *little of people*), but мнѣніе народа́ = *the opinion of the people*, though this gen. has become usual in a number of cases where there is no idea of partition, e. g. съ виду́ = *by sight*, безъ толку́ = *without sense*, съ низу́ = *from below*, съ верху́ = *from above*, отъ роду́ = *from one's birth*, изъ дому́ = *out of the house* (or *home*).

7. Several nouns have a loc. sing. in -ѣ, always accented, which is used after the prepositions въ = *in* and на = *on*, e. g. въ саду́ = *in the garden*, на мосту́ = *on the bridge*, въ . . . году́ = *in the year . . .*, въ лѣсу́ = *in the forest*, на берегу́ = *on the bank* (or *shore*), на лугу́ = *in the meadow*, на краю́ = *on the edge* (from край), въ углу́ = *in the corner* (nom. уголъ), на полу́ = *on the floor*, and others. Cf. § 68.

N.B. After the prepositions о (объ) = *about* and при = *near* the loc. in -ѣ is used.

8. Several nouns have a nom. pl. in -а, -я, which is always accented. This is really the old nom. dual, but its use has extended from the dual to the plural; e. g. глазъ = *eye*, nom. pl. глаза́; берегъ = *bank*, nom. pl. берега́ = *the two banks of a river*, but also = *the shores of the ocean*; рогъ = *horn*, nom. pl. рога́; бокъ = *side*, nom. pl. бока́; also вечеръ = *evening* has nom. pl. вечера́; домъ = *house*, дома́; го́лосъ = *voice*, голоса́; ко́локолъ = *bell*, колокола́; го́родъ = *town* makes города́; до́кторъ = *doctor*, докторá; профе́ссоръ = *professor*, профессорá; учи́тель = *teacher*, учителя́; вѣ́къ = *age, century*, годъ = *year*, and край = *country* have both вѣ́ки and вѣ́ка, го́ды and го́да, кра́и and кра́я. A few have two forms of the

nom. pl. with different meanings : волосъ = *hair*, has волоса = *hairs*, and волосы = *hair* (coll.), *a head of hair*; образъ = *form, species, manner*, has образа = *holy images*, and образы = *forms*; хлѣбъ = *bread*, has хлѣба = *the crops*, and хлѣбы = *loaves*; цвѣтъ = *colour*, has цвѣта = *colours* and цвѣты = *flowers* (for the sing. the diminutive form цвѣточъ is used, in the sense of a *single flower or blossom*); мѣхъ = (1) *bellows*, has nom. pl. мѣхи, = (2) *fur*, has мѣха = *furs*. Several masculine nouns have a nom. pl. in -ья, which is really a feminine collective sing. in form, though used as a masculine nom. pl. Thus братъ = *brother* makes nom. pl. братья; стулъ = *chair*, nom. pl. стулья; листь = *leaf or sheet of paper* makes листья = *leaves, leafage* (but regularly листы = *sheets of paper*); другъ = *friend*, nom. pl. друзья; мужъ = *husband*, мужья; зять = *brother-in-law or son-in-law*, зятья; князь = *prince*, князя. The last four make their gen. pl. in -ей, like царь, e.g. друзей, while братья makes gen. pl. братьевъ, стулъ—стульевъ, as do some other less common nom. plurals in -ья; all, however, from the dat. pl. onwards go alike, e.g. друзьямъ, inst. pl. друзьями, loc. pl. друзьяхъ.

Сынъ = *son* has nom. pl. сыновья, gen. pl. сыновей, dat. pl. сыновьямъ, &c. Сосѣдъ = *neighbour* and чѣръ = *devil* make their plural like царь throughout, nom. pl. сосѣди, gen. pl. сосѣдей, &c.

A number of masculine nouns in -инъ, denoting individuals, make nom. pl. in -е and in the gen. pl. have no ending: гражданинъ = *citizen* makes nom. pl. граждане, gen. pl. гражданъ, from the dat. pl. onwards being regular, viz. гражданамъ, &c.; англичанинъ = *Englishman*, nom. pl. англичане, gen. pl. англичанъ. Thus also татаринъ = *Tartar*, nom. pl. татары; болгаринъ = *Bulgarian*, болгары; датчанинъ = *Dane*, датчане (also accented датчанинъ, датчане); москвитининъ = *citizen of Moscow*, москвитяне; римлянинъ = *Roman*, римляне; славянинъ = *Slav*, славяне; дворянинъ = *nobleman*, дворяне; крестьянинъ = *peasant*, крестьяне, and (not to be confused with the last, though of identical derivation) христианинъ = *Christian*, nom. pl. христиане.

Господинъ = *Mr.*, makes nom. pl. господа = *Messieurs, 'Gentlemen!'* (also '*Ladies and Gentlemen!*'), gen. pl. господъ, dat. pl. господамъ, &c. Хозяинъ = *host, householder*, makes nom. pl. хозяева = (1) *hosts* and (2) *host and hostess*, gen. pl. хозяевъ, dat. pl. хозяевамъ, &c. Several regular masculine nom. plurals make

their gen. pl. without any ending, as the above; this is really the old gen. pl. of this declension, while the form termed 'regular' in -овъ, -евъ was borrowed from another declension. Thus волосы = *hair* (collective) makes gen. pl. волосъ; разъ = *time, stroke, once*, gen. pl. разъ; солдатъ = *soldier*, gen. pl. солдатъ; глазъ = *eye*, gen. pl. глазъ; футъ = *foot* (measure), gen. pl. футъ, or футовъ; аршинъ = *yard* (measure), gen. pl. аршинъ.

The gen. pl. of человекъ = *human being*, the only case of the plural of this word which is used, is человекъ, and it is only used after numerals, e. g. сто человекъ = *a hundred people*.

9. Богъ = *God* has a voc. sing. Боже, otherwise it is declined regularly, like столъ, viz. Бóга, &c. Господъ = *Lord*, has a voc. sing. Господи, and though soft in the nom., is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Господа, &c. Христосъ = *Christ*, is from the gen. sing. onwards declined like столъ, viz. Христа, &c. The old voc. of отецъ = *father* occurs in the phrase Отче нашъ = *Pater noster*.

§ 40. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -а, -я.

Almost all nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine. All those which end in -а are called *hard*, those ending in -я *soft*; those case-endings of a hard noun which begin with a hard vowel begin with a soft vowel if the noun is soft, otherwise they are similar for both hard and soft nouns.

As regards the accusative case, the acc. sing. of all nouns in -а, -я is quite different from the nom. sing., whether the thing be animate or inanimate. The acc. pl. of feminine nouns in -а, -я is the same as the nom. pl. in the case of inanimate, the same as the gen. pl. in the case of animate things. This is no doubt due to the influence of the masculine declension.

Examples: (hard) женщина = *woman*, сестра = *sister*.

(soft) земля = *land*, армия = *army*.

Singular.

N. женщина	сестра	земля	армия
G. женщины	сестры	земли	армии
D. женщинъ	сестръ	землѣ	арміи
A. женщину	сестру	землю	армію
I. женщиной	сестрою	землѣю	арміею
L. женщинъ	сестръ	землѣ	арміи

Plural.

N. жѣнщины	сѣстры	зѣмли	ѣрміи
G. жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрь	земель	ѣрмій
D. жѣнщинамъ	сестра́мъ	земля́мъ	ѣрмія́мъ
A. жѣнщинѣ	сестѣрь	зѣмли	ѣрміи
I. жѣнщинами	сестра́ми	земля́ми	ѣрмія́ми
L. жѣнщинахъ	сестра́хъ	земля́хъ	ѣрмія́хъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The inst. sing. of fem. nouns in -а, -я has two forms, the short -ѣй, -ей and the long -юу, -ею. The latter is the older and is still often used in poetry when an additional syllable is required, but in the colloquial language the shorter form is almost always used.

2. The gen. pl. of all fem. nouns ending in a vowel + я, which case would end in ѣ if the last letter of the stem were a consonant, is always written with an ѣ and is a diphthong, e. g. шея = *neck* makes gen. pl. шей, ѣрмія = *army* makes ѣрмій.

The gen. pl. of fem. nouns ending in -ѣ ends in -ѣй; e. g. статья = *newspaper article*, gen. pl. статей. Дѣдя = *uncle* also has gen. pl. дѣдей, and судѣя = *judge*, gen. pl. судей (судѣя is otherwise declined just like земля, viz. gen. sing. судѣй, nom. pl. судѣи, &c.).

3. The dat. and loc. sing. of fem. nouns ending in -ія ends in -іи, e. g. ѣрмія = *army*, dat. and loc. sing. ѣрміи; религія = *religion*, религіи; Россія = *Russia*, Россіи; Англія = *England*, Англіи.

Many fem. Christian names are spelt in two ways in the nom. sing., either -ія or -ѣя; if spelt in the former way, the dat. and loc. sing. ends in -іи; if in the latter, then in -ѣѣ: e. g. Сѣфія = *Sophia*, dat. and loc. sing. Сѣфіи, but Сѣфѣя, dat. and loc. sing. Сѣфѣѣ; the former spelling is preferable.

4. The gen. sing. and nom. acc. pl. of all fem. nouns in -ка, -га, -ха, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша end in -ки, -ти, -хи, -чи, -щи, -жи, -ши because ы cannot stand after a guttural or after ч, ш, ж, or ш.

5. The inst. sing. of all fem. nouns ending in -ца, -ча, -ща, -жа, -ша ends in -ѣй (sometimes written -ѣѣ) if the accent falls on the ending, and in -ей if the accent falls on the root, e. g. Царѣца = *Tsaritsa* has inst. sing. царѣцей, but душа = *soul* has inst. sing. душѣй.

6. A number of words whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation; e.g. сестра = *sister* has gen. pl. сестёръ; кошка = *cat*—кошекъ; земля = *land*—земель; деревня = *village*—деревень; барышня = *young lady*—барышень. A few such soft nouns become hard in the gen. pl., e.g. пѣсня = *song*, gen. pl. пѣсень; басня = *fable*—басень; башня = *tower*—башень. Nouns with ѣ in the stem lengthen this to е in the gen. pl., e.g. судьба = *fate*, gen. pl. судѣбъ; those with й in the stem likewise, e.g. копейка = *kopek* (the coin), gen. pl. копѣекъ (also spelt копѣйка, копѣекъ).

7. It is to be noted that there are a few masculine nouns and a number of names (mostly diminutives) ending in -а and -я and declined like feminine nouns: слуга = *male servant*,¹ юноша = *youth*, дядя = *uncle*, судья = *judge*, убійца = *murderer*, пьяница = *drunkard*.

Алёша = diminutive of Алексѣй = *Alexis*; Ваня = dim. of Иванъ = *John*; Володя = dim. of Владиміръ = *Vladimir*; Коля = dim. of Николайъ = *Nicholas*; Миша = dim. of Михайлъ = *Michael*; Пѣтя = dim. of Пётръ = *Peter*; Саша = dim. of Александръ = *Alexander*; Серёжа = dim. of Сергійъ = *Sergius*, and many others; notice also the name Ильѣ = *Elias*.

§ 41. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -о, -е.

Almost all neuter nouns end in -о or -е. All nouns which end in -о or -е are neuter.

All nouns which end in -о are called *hard*, those ending in -е *soft*.

Examples: (hard) село = *village*.

(soft) { море = *sea*.
имѣніе = *property* (sc. *land*).

Singular.

N. село	море	имѣніе
G. села	морѣ	имѣнія
D. селѹ	морю	имѣнію
A. село	море	имѣніе
I. селомъ	моремъ	имѣніемъ
L. селѣ	морѣ	имѣніи

¹ N.B. прислуга = *a male or female servant* is feminine.

	<i>Plural.</i>		
N. сѣла	моря	имѣнія	
G. сѣлъ	морей	имѣній	
D. сѣламъ	морямъ	имѣніямъ	
A. сѣла	моря	имѣнія	
I. сѣлами	морями	имѣніями	
L. сѣлахъ	моряхъ	имѣніяхъ	

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The neuter nouns in -e have borrowed the ending of the gen. pl. -ей (e. g. морей) from another declension.

Nouns in -ье as a rule make their gen. pl. in -ей, e. g. ружьё = *gun*, gen. pl. ружей, but платье = *dress or suit*, makes платьевъ, and кушанье = *dish* (sc. *the food*)—кушаньевъ.

Abstract nouns in -іе can also be spelt -ье, e. g. желаніе or желанье = *wish*; in the former case they are declined like имѣніе and in the latter like море.

2. Neuter nouns in -че, -ще, -же, -ше, -це follow the hard declension, but make their inst. sing. in -емъ, e. g. училище = *school*, inst. sing. училищемъ, but gen. sing. училища, gen. pl. училищъ.

3. A number of hard neuter nouns whose stems end in two consonants insert a vowel between these two consonants in the gen. pl. in order to facilitate their pronunciation, e. g. окно = *window*, gen. pl. оконъ; письмо = *letter*—писемъ.

Яйцо = *egg* makes gen. pl. яицъ, = two syllables, while the nom. pl. is яйца.

4. A number of neuter nouns have unexpected forms in the pl., thus яблоко = *apple*, nom. pl. яблоки, gen. pl. яблокъ; плечо = *shoulder*, nom. pl. плечи, gen. pl. плечъ; колѣно = *knee*, nom. pl. колѣни, gen. pl. колѣней; ухо = *ear* makes уши, ушей, око = *eye* (poetic)—очи, очей; in the dat., inst., and loc. pl. these all follow сѣло, e. g. inst. pl. яблоками, ушами, плечами (the endings in -и are relics of the old neuter dual, the eyes, ears, and shoulders being naturally mentioned in the dual oftener than in the plural). Небо = *heaven* makes nom. pl. небеса, gen. pl. небесъ; чудо = *miracle*—чудеса, чудесъ, dat. pl. небесамъ, чудесамъ, &c. Облако = *cloud* has nom. pl. облака, gen. pl. облаковъ; очки = *spectacles* has gen. pl. очковъ; судно = *vessel* has nom. pl. суда, gen. pl. судовъ.

Дѣрево = *tree* makes nom. pl. дѣрѣвья, gen. pl. дѣрѣвьевъ, dat. pl. дѣрѣвьямъ, &c.; перо = *feather*, пера—перья,—перьевъ, &c.; крыло = *wing*—крылья, &c. There is a whole category of words which are neuter in the pl. and masculine in the sing.; these are all names of young living things, e.g. ребята = *children*, (gen. pl. ребятъ), ребѣнокъ = *child*; щенята = *puppies*, sing. щенокъ; цыплята = *young fowls*, sing. цыплѣнокъ; жеребята = *foals*, sing. жеребѣнокъ; телята = *calves*, sing. телѣнокъ; поросята = *sucking-pigs*, sing. поросѣнокъ; котята = *kittens*, sing. котѣнокъ; all these words in the sing. come under obs. 5, § 39, i.e. gen. acc. sing. ребѣнка, &c.

§ 42. Feminine Nouns having the nom. sing. in -ѣ.

A number of fem. nouns, especially abstract nouns derived from adjectives, such as радость = *joy*, from радъ = *glad*, end in -ѣ in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *i*-declension.

Example: лошадь = *horse*.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	лошадь	лошади
G.	лошади	лошадей
D.	лошади	лошадѣмъ
A.	лошадь	лошадей
I.	лошадью	лошадѣмъ
L.	лошади	лошадѣхъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The acc. pl. of names of animate things is the same as the gen. pl.; e.g. nom. pl. лошади = *horses*, gen. and acc. pl. лошадей; nom. pl. люди = *people, men and women* (which is used as the plural of человекъ, cf. p. 49; the singular of люди is людъ, a hard masculine noun, and means *a people*), gen. and acc. pl. людѣй, but кость = *bone*, gen. pl. костей, acc. pl. кости. The gen. pl. -ей of this declension is that borrowed by soft masc. and neuter nouns, cf. pp. 46, 52.

2. The regular inst. pl. of this declension, -ѣми, has become replaced by that in -ями, borrowed from the soft fem. declension, in all words except the following: лошадь = *horse*, inst. pl. лошадымъ, люди = *people*—людьмъ; кость = *bone*—костьмъ; дверь = *door*—дверьмъ; дѣти = *children*—дѣтьмъ; but радость = *joy*—радостѣми; скорость = *speed*—скоростѣми; страсть = *passion*—страстѣми; сани (pl. only) = *sledge*—санѣми; часть = *part*—частѣми.

3. Those nouns which end in -чь, -щъ, -жь, and -шь, and цѣрковь = *church* (cf. the following paragraph) have the dat. pl. in -амъ, the inst. pl. in -ами, and the loc. pl. in -ахъ; e. g. ночь = *night*—ночѣмъ, ночѣми, ночѣхъ; вещь = *thing*—вещѣмъ, вещѣми, вещѣхъ; цѣрковь—цѣрквѣмъ, цѣрквѣми, цѣрквѣхъ.

4. The five nouns цѣрковь = *church*, любѣвь = *love*, рожь = *rye*, ложь = *lie*, and вошь = *louse* lose the o in all the oblique cases except in the inst. sing. Thus, gen. sing. цѣркви, любви, ржи, &c., but inst. sing. цѣрковью, любѣвью. When, however, Любѣвь is used as a Christian name, = *Love*, then it retains the o; gen. sing. Любѣви, &c.

5. There is only one masc. noun in this declension: путь = *way*, (= *road* and *means*); it is declined exactly like лошадь except that the inst. sing. is путѣмъ and the inst. pl. путѣми.

6. The noun сажень = *seven feet* (measure) has gen. dat. sing. сажени and gen. pl. сажень.

7. The two nouns мать = *mother*, and дочь = *daughter* are declined as follows:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. мать	матери
G. матери	матерей
D. матери	матерямъ
A. мать	матерей
I. матерью	матерями
L. матери	матеряхъ

The inst. pl. матерями, дочерями are also used. In the colloquial language the use of мать and дочь is often replaced by that of the diminutives мѣтушка (or мамаша) and дѣчка, which follow the ordinary fem. declension.

8. It is important to remember that the very common plurals люди = *people* and дѣти = *children*, are declined like the plural of лошадь.

§ 43. Neuter Nouns having the nom. sing. in -я.

A few neuter nouns end in -я in the nom. and acc. sing. and form a distinct class, sometimes called the *n*-declension.

Example: время = *time*.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. время	времена
G. времени	временъ
D. времени	временамъ
A. время	времена
I. временемъ	временамъ
L. времени	временахъ

Other common words in this declension are: имя = (*Christian*) *name*, племя = *tribe*, пламя = *flame*, бремя = *burden*, and семя = *seed* (which has an irregular gen. pl. семянъ), знамя = *standard*, стремя = *stirrup* (gen. pl. стремянъ).

The word дитя, which is neuter, is declined in the singular as follows:

N. дитя
G. дитяти
D. дитяти
A. дитя
I. дитятей
L. дитяти

The plural дѣти goes like лошади q. v.; in the colloquial language the alternative word for *child*, ребѣнокъ (cf. p. 53), is more commonly used for the singular, *child*, and дѣти more commonly for the plural, *children*.

The oblique cases of дитя are very seldom used except in literature, and the plural of ребѣнокъ, ребята, is specially used in the meaning *comrades, boys*, e. g. among soldiers, though also commonly used for *children* by the peasants.

§ 44. Note on the Terminations of Substantives.

All nouns ending in -ъ, -й are masculine.

„ „ „ -о, -е are neuter.

Nouns „ „ -я are either masculine or feminine, e. g. царь = *tsar*', masc., but осень = *autumn*, fem.

Most nouns ending in -а, -я are feminine, but a few are masculine and neuter, e. g. слуга = (*man*-) *servant*, судья = *judge*, masc., имя = (*Christian*) *name*, neut.

Common terminations denoting male and female agents are: masc. -икъ, -ель, -ецъ, -инъ, -унъ; fem. -ица, -иха, -ка, -унья, and others, e. g.:

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
прикащикъ <i>salesman</i>	прикащица
ученикъ <i>pupil</i>	ученица
учитель <i>teacher</i>	учительница
пѣвецъ <i>singer</i>	пѣвица
самецъ <i>male (sc. beast)</i>	самка <i>female (sc. beast)</i>
купецъ <i>merchant</i>	купчиха (<i>his wife</i>)
генералъ <i>general</i>	генеральна (<i>his wife</i>)
господинъ <i>Mr., gentleman</i>	госпожа <i>Mrs., lady</i>
гражданинъ <i>citizen</i>	гражданка (<i>fem.</i>)
врунь <i>liar</i>	врунья
государь <i>sir, sovereign</i>	государыня <i>lady, sovereign</i>
баринъ <i>sir, master</i>	барыня <i>lady, mistress</i>

Notice that молодой = *clever chap, brave fellow* (a very common word of praise), умница = *clever-boots*, другъ = *friend*, and человекъ = *person*, can be used of either males or females. The feminine of врачъ = *doctor* is женщина врачъ = *woman doctor*.

Cf. also англичанка = *Englishwoman* (for masc. v. p. 48), нѣмецъ, нѣмка = *German* (pl. нѣмцы, fem. нѣмки). Similarly американецъ = *American*, венгерецъ = *Hungarian*, голландецъ = *Dutchman*, испанецъ = *Spaniard*, итальянецъ = *Italian*, норвежецъ = *Norwegian*, швейцарецъ = *Swiss*, ирландецъ = *Irishman*, and шотландецъ = *Scot*, all turn -ецъ into -ка for the fem. and -цы, -ки for the pl., gen. pl. = -цевъ, -окъ; португалецъ makes португалька, -льцы = *Portuguese*; австриецъ, австрийка, -йцы = *Austrian*; бельгиецъ, -йка, -йцы = *Belgian*; шведъ, шведка, шведы = *Swede*; грекъ, гречанка, греки = *Greek*; сербъ, сербиянка, сербы = *Servian*; турокъ, турчанка, турки = *Turk*; полякъ, полька, поляки = *Pole*; чехъ, чепка, чехи = *Bohemian*, and французъ, французенка, французы = *French*.

§ 45.

Diminutive Endings.

The extensive use of diminutives is one of the first things that strikes the beginner. Some words are only used in their diminutive forms, e. g. мальчикъ = *boy*, from which a further diminutive has had to be formed, viz. мальчишка = *little boy*. In many cases the diminutives are really meant to imply smallness, but very frequently they are used merely as a means of expressing affection, politeness, or good humour, and in such they are difficult, if not

impossible to translate in English. E.g. the conductor in a train always asks to see your билѣтики = *little tickets*; this does not imply that the tickets are small, but merely that the conductor would not refuse a drink.

The commonest diminutive endings are :

Masculine.

-икъ,	e. g. мальчикъ	= boy
-ишка,	„ мальчишка	= little boy
-екъ,	„ внучекъ	= grandson
-ёкъ,	„ звѣрёкъ	= animal
-окъ,	„ дружокъ	= friend
-ецъ	„ братецъ	= brother
-ёнокъ,	„ котёнокъ	= kitten (cf. § 41, obs. 4)
-ичъ,	„ Петровичъ	= son of Peter ¹

Feminine.

-ка,	„ дѣвочка	= girl (till puberty)
-на,	„ Петровна	= daughter of Peter ¹
-ца,	„ частица	= part

Neuter.

-ко,	„ облачко	= cloud
-цо,	„ писемцѣ	= letter
-це,	„ окѣнце	= window

As an example of the varieties of diminutives that can be formed from one word, take the word дѣва = *virgin* (only used in such expressions as the 'Maid of Orleans', or старая дѣва = *an old maid*):

дѣвица = *spinster*.

дѣвка = *girl* (sc. common girl, wench, a very derogatory term).

дѣвочка = *girl* (up to 12).

дѣвушка = *girl* (from 12 till marriage, or till about 30).

дѣвчѣна = *little girl*.

¹ Literally = *Peter's little one*; Петровъ (masc.) and Петрова (fem.) are possessive adjectives formed from the word Пётръ = *Peter*, and to the stem Петров- are added -ичъ for the son and -на for the daughter. All other patronymics are formed analogously. Patronymics are often contracted in rapid conversation, e.g. Иванычъ for Ивановичъ, &c.; Марія Ивановна sounds like Марійина.

The following terminations imply good humour or affection specifically:

-ушка, -юшка, -ышко, -енька, -енка.

The following terminations are considered to imply depreciation:

-ишка, -ишко, -ёнка, -онка and sometimes -ушка.

The following are called augmentatives, as they usually imply largeness:

-ища, -ище, -ища.

THE DECLENSION OF THE PRONOUNS

§ 46. The inflexions of these are for the most part different from those of the substantives, though there are a few points of similarity, e.g. the dat. pl. always ends in -мъ and the inst. pl. always in -ми.

Personal Pronouns.

Я = *I*, ты = *thou*, онъ = *he*, она = *she*, оно = *it*, мы = *we*, вы = *you*, они, онѣ = *they*.

Singular.

N.	я	ты	онъ (neut. оно)	она
G.	меня	тебя	его	ея
D.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ему	ей
A.	меня	тебя	его	ея
I.	мною	тобой	имъ	ей
L.	мною	тобой	(п)ѣмъ	(п)ей

Plural.

N.	мы	вы	они (masc. and neut.), онѣ (fem.)
G.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
D.	намъ	вамъ	имъ
A.	насъ	васъ	ихъ
I.	нами	вами	ими
L.	насъ	васъ	(п)ихъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. There is a reflexive personal pronoun, себя, which has no nominative, and is declined alike in the sing. and pl.:

- G. себя
D. себя
A. себя
I. собою
L. себя

i. e. just like тебя.

The peculiarity of its use is that it can be applied to any of the three persons; e.g. я люблю себя = *I love myself*, ты любишь себя = *thou lovest thyself*; онъ or она любить себя = *he or she loves him- or herself*. It also occurs in a few very common idioms; e.g. такъ себя = *fairly, averagely* (lit. = *thus to itself*); само собою разумѣется = *that is understood* (lit. = *itself understands itself by itself*); она хороша собою = *she is a good-looking woman* (lit. *she [is] nice with herself*); онъ живётъ себя тамъ... = *he goes on living there* (here the себя implies that he goes on living in his own way, paying little attention to others, but not necessarily that he is a recluse; онъ сломалъ себя голову = *he has cracked his head*, the Russian equivalent for *he has broken his neck*).

When joined to an ordinary transitive verb (making it reflexive) себя is contracted to -ся or -сь; e.g. разумѣется = *of course* (lit. = *it understands itself*), это не дѣлается = *that is not done*; нахожусь = *I find myself*. But the addition of the reflexive pronoun by no means always makes the word passive; Russian has many reflexive verbs which are middle in meaning, e.g. бояться = *to fear*; боюсь = *I fear*; нравится = *it pleases*, мнѣ нравится = *it pleases me, I like*. Cf. §§ 100, 110.

2. The nominatives онъ, она, оно, онѣ, онѣ did not belong originally to ерѣ, &c., and are not really personal pronouns at all, but demonstrative pronouns, corresponding somewhat to the German *jener, jene, jenes*, which in Russian, no longer used regularly as demonstrative pronouns, have been borrowed to supply the place of the lost nominatives of ерѣ, &c.

3. It is important to notice that the acc. sing. of онъ and of оно is always ерѣ, i. e. = the gen. sing., even though the thing to which it refers be inanimate. Similarly the acc. pl. of онѣ and of онѣ is always ихъ.

4. The initial н- in нмѣ, ихъ, and ими is always pronounced *yi-*.

5. The gen. sing. of она is usually pronounced *y yó*, i. e. like the acc. sing. еѣ, though it is always written еѣ.

6. The genitives of the personal pronoun *eró*, *eñ*, and *ixh* ordinarily mean *his*, *her*, and *their*, since Russian has no possessive pronoun of the third person, e.g. the only way of saying *his father* in Russian is *eró otets* (or *otets eró*).

7. The oblique cases of *onh*, *oná*, and *onú*, when directly governed by a preposition, are always prefixed by the letter *н*; this is ostensibly done for the sake of euphony, but the real reason is that certain prepositions originally ended in *н*, and this letter was borrowed by other prepositions which did not end in it. Subsequently when the prepositions lost their final *н*, it stuck to the pronoun where it has remained. As the loc. case in Russian is never used without a preposition of some sort, the loc. of this pronoun is always prefixed by *н*, placed in brackets in the paradigm for this reason. When a preposition precedes *ero*, *en*, or *ixh* in their meaning of *his*, *her*, or *their*, and therefore does not directly govern the pronoun, the *н* is omitted.

Examples: *сѣ нимѣ* = *with him*, *отѣ нихѣ* = *from them*, *о нѣмѣ* = *about him*, but *отѣ eró otca* = *from his father*, *о eró bráth* = *about his brother*, &c.

8. For the inst. sing. *мноѣ*, *тобоѣ*, *ей*, and *собоѣ* the full forms *мною*, *тобою*, *ею*, and *собою* are often used.

9. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вы* are always spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

10. The particle *же* (or *-жѣ*) is often affixed to the personal pronouns, and expresses identity or gives emphasis to the pronoun; e.g. *я твой братѣ*, *я же и твой другѣ* = *I am thy brother, I too am thy friend*; *кто вамѣ даѣ это?* *онѣ—а это?* *онѣ же* = *who gave you this? he [did]—and this? he [did] too*. In book catalogues when the name of the author has once been printed, *eró же* printed in front of the titles of his various works means *by the same author*.

же can also mean *but* where a slight emphasis is laid on the pronoun; e.g. *вы же сказали это!* = *but it was you [who] said this!*

11. The particle *то* affixed to the personal pronouns also expresses identity or gives emphasis.

§ 47.

Possessive Pronouns.

The declension of these resembles that of *онѣ*, *моѣ*, *моѣ*, *моѣ*; *моѣ* = *my*, *mine*; *твоеѣ*, *твоеѣ*, *твоеѣ*; *твоеѣ* = *thy*, *thine*; *своеѣ*, *своеѣ*, *своеѣ*;

свой = *one's own*; нашъ, наша, наше; наши = *our, ours*; вашъ, ваша, ваше: ваши = *your, yours*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	мой	моя	моё	мои
G.	моего	моёй	моего	моихъ
D.	моему	моёй	моему	моимъ
A.	мой от моего	мою	моё	мой от моихъ
I.	моимъ	моёй	моимъ	моими
L.	моёмъ	моёй	моёмъ	моихъ

*Plural.**Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	нашъ	наша	наше	наши
G.	нашего	нашей	нашего	нашихъ
D.	нашему	нашей	нашему	нашимъ
A.	= N. or G.	нашу	наше	= N. or G.
I.	нашимъ	нашей	нашимъ	нашими
L.	нашемъ	нашей	нашемъ	нашихъ

Plural.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Твой and свой are declined exactly like мой, and вашъ exactly like нашъ.

2. Свой can only be used when it refers to the subject of the sentence, but it can be used of any of the three persons; e.g. я люблю своего отца can only mean *I love my father* (though it is also possible to say я люблю моего отца), whereas я люблю его отца = *I love his father*. Again, онъ любить свою сестру = *he loves his (own) sister*, whereas онъ любить его сестру = *he loves his (i.e. some one else's) sister*.

3. The acc. sing. of the masc. and acc. pl. of all three genders of these pronouns follow the rule of the masculine substantives; i.e. when the object referred to is animate, the acc. = the gen., when inanimate it is the same as the nom.

4. For the inst. sing. моёй, твоёй, своёй, нашей, and вашей, the full forms мою, твою, свою, нашу, and вашу are also used.

5. It is important to notice that the nom. pl. мои (also твои and свои) is a disyllable, pronounced *ma-yi*; the nom. sing. masc. мой (as also твой and свой), on the other hand, is a diphthong, the -и being the original nom. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 3rd person, which in that declension has been replaced by онъ, &c.

6. In correspondence all cases of the pronoun *вашъ* are spelt with an initial capital for politeness.

7. The particle *же* (or *-жѣ*) affixed to the possessive pronouns expresses identity of ownership, e.g. *чей этотъ домъ? мой—а чѣѣ это поле? моѣ же = whose is this house? mine—and whose is this field? mine also.*

8. The particle *то* emphasizes the pronouns; e.g.:

мой-то? = do you mean mine?

§ 48.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

The declension of these is similar for the most part to that of the possessive pronouns, though differing from it in some important particulars.

тотъ, та, то; тѣ = that (yonder).

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	тотъ	та	то	тѣ
G.	того	той	того	тѣхъ
D.	тому	той	тому	тѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	ту	то	= N. or G.
I.	тѣмъ	той	тѣмъ	тѣми
L.	томъ	той	томъ	тѣхъ

этотъ, эта, это; эти = this or that (here).

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	этотъ	эта	это	эти
G.	этого	этой	этого	этихъ
D.	этому	этой	этому	этимъ
A.	= N. or G.	эту	это	= N. or G.
I.	этимъ	этой	этимъ	этими
L.	этомъ	этой	этомъ	этихъ

сей, сія, сіе (or сѣ); сіи = this (here).

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	сей	сія	сіе	сіи
G.	сего	сей	сего	сихъ
D.	сему	сей	сему	симъ
A.	= N. or G.	сію	сіе	= N. or G.
I.	симъ	сей	симъ	сими
L.	сѣмъ	сей	сѣмъ	сихъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. For the inst. sing. той, этой, and сей the full forms тою, этою, and сёю are also used.

2. Of these three pronouns *этотъ* is the oftenest, *сей* the most seldom used. *Этотъ* is frequently used where we should say *that* in English, e. g. in very common phrases such as :

Что это такое ? = *what's that* (lit. = *what this such*) ?

Кто это такой ? = *who's that* (lit. = *who this such*) ?

Это было давно = *that was long ago*.

Это очень хорошо = *that's very nice*.

Это нашъ домъ = *that is our house*.

Это can also mean *these* or *those* when it is the subject of a sentence and very frequently has this meaning, e. g. :

Это мои дѣти = *these or those [are] my children*.

The neuter pronoun *то* is often used as an enclitic affixed to a noun or another pronoun irrespective of gender or number to emphasize or to differentiate, and it sometimes seems to take the place of the definite article.

E. g. въ томъ-то и дѣло or то-то и есть (both =) *that's just the point*; домъ-то мой = *the house is mine*.

(The first of these is not to be confused with the similar idiom given below.)

In the colloquial language, especially that of the peasants, this pronoun can be affixed to any noun (but only in the nom.) and made to agree with it, and thus acquire the value of a definite article.

3. Тотъ is used specially frequently in argument, e. g. то, что . . . = *that which* . . . ; it is also used as a definite article before a relative clause, e. g. тотъ мальчикъ, которому я далъ деньги = *the boy to whom I gave the money*. In conversation, however, even *that (yonder)* is frequently rendered by *этотъ* with the addition of *тамъ* = *there*, e. g. этотъ домъ тамъ—нашъ = *that house over there is ours*.

4. Тотъ is especially common compounded with prepositions, e. g. потомъ = *then* (lit. = *upon that*), затѣмъ = *then* (lit. = *behind that*), потому = *therefore* (lit. = *according to that*), кромѣ того =

besides (lit. = *outside that*), *за то* = *on the other hand* (lit. = *for that*).

5. Тотъ followed by этотъ is often used for *the former* and *the latter*.

6. It is important to notice the very common idiom *то и дѣло* (lit. = *and that's the thing*), which means *incessantly*.

7. Сеѣ is seldom used except in a few phrases in which it is extremely common, e. g. *сейчасъ* = *immediately* (lit. = *this instant*, though the noun *часъ* has changed its meaning and in modern Russian = *hour*); *сѣю мину́ту* = *this minute, this instant*; *сегодня* = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*); *до сихъ поръ* = *till now* (lit. = *till these times*); *и то и сѣ* = *both the one and the other*; *при сѣмъ* = '*enclosed*' (lit. = *in the presence of this*).

8. The pronouns *такой*, *ѣтакой*, and *таковѣй* = *such* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

9. The pronoun *ѣный* = *that (yonder)*, which supplied the forms of the personal pronoun *онѣ*, &c., is now obsolete and only common in the phrase *во время ѣно* = *in days of yore* (lit. = *into that time*).

10. Тотъ followed by the enclitic *же* = *the same* and is very common, e. g. *въ томъ же домѣ* = *in the same house*, *того же автора* (gen.) = *by the same author*, *съ тѣмъ же мальчикомъ* = *with the same boy*; the words *ѣнѣ* и = *one and* are often added, e. g. *въ одномъ и томъ же городѣ* = *in one and the same town*, *въ одно и то же время* = *at one and the same time*. The phrase *тѣже*, always written as one word, = *also*, e. g. *мы тѣже* = *we also*. *Этотъ же* = *this same* and *таковѣ же* = *of the same kind*, are also very common.

§ 49. Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

кто = *who* (masc. and fem.); *что* = *what*.

N.	кто	что
G.	кого	чего
D.	кому	чему
A.	кого	что
I.	кѣмъ	чѣмъ
L.	комъ	чѣмъ

чей, чья, чьё; чьи = *whose*.

Russian has a special pronoun for *whose* which is declined throughout.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	чей	чья	чьё	чьи
G.	чьего	чей	чьего	чьихъ
D.	чьему	чей	чьему	чьимъ
A.	= N. or G.	чью	чьё	= N. or G.
I.	чьимъ	чей	чьимъ	чьими
L.	чьёмъ	чей	чьёмъ	чьихъ

который = *which*, какой and каковой = *of what sort*, are declined like adjectives, q. v.; который supplies the plural of кто, что.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The pronoun чей is of course most frequently used in the nominative, e. g. чей этотъ домъ? = *whose house is this?* But the other cases are not uncommon, e. g. чью жену онъ любитъ? = *whose wife does he love?*

2. Что is used to introduce a subordinate clause in all those cases where in English we use the demonstrative pronoun *that*, i. e. after all verbs of asserting, denying, believing, thinking, perceiving, feeling, &c., e. g. я говорю, что онъ дуракъ = *I say that he [is] a fool*. It is also used in the expressions for *why* and *because*, e. g. отчего? = *why?* (= *from what*), оттого что = *because* (lit. = *from that what*), почему? = *why?* (lit. = *according to what*), потому что = *because* (lit. = *according to that what*). It is important to notice the difference in meaning of these two expressions: отчего = *from what cause*, e. g. отчего сегодня такъ темно? = *why is it so dark to-day?* отчего вы такъ блѣдны? = *why are you so pale?* but почему = *on what ground*, e. g. почему вы говорите это? = *why do you say this?* почему онъ желаетъ видѣть меня? = *why does he wish to see me?* Of course there are many questions in which either of the two words could be used indifferently, and the answer to both is usually introduced by потому что, which is far commoner than оттого что. There is yet another expression for *why*, viz. зачѣмъ? which means literally *behind what?* and thus comes to mean *trying to get what?* or *with what object?* e. g. зачѣмъ вы пришли? = *why*

(sc. *with what object*) have you come? The answer to such a question is introduced by *затѣмъ, чтобы* (or more often merely by *чтобы*) = *in order that* (lit. *behind that what*), which is followed by the past tense or the infinitive; the particle *-бы* affixed to *что* (and sometimes written *чтобъ*) is really part of the verb *быть* = *to be*, q. v. *Чтобы* means *in order that*, and is also used to introduce wishes, when it is always followed by the past tense, e. g. *чтобы это было такъ!* = *that it were so!* Both *что* as a conjunction and *чтобы* are enclitics and have no accent.

3. *Кто* is often used by itself to express *whoever*, e. g. *кто умѣетъ по-норвѣжски, тотъ и понимаетъ по-датски* = *whoever knows Norwegian can also understand* (lit. *that one also understands*) *Danish*, *кто говоритъ это, врѣтъ* = *whoever says this, lies*. Another very common way of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* is to add *бы ни* to *кто* and *что*, which are then always followed by the past tense; it is important to notice that the particle *ни* does not imply negation; e. g. *кто бы мнѣ ни говорилъ это, я ему не повѣрю* = *whoever should tell me this, I shall not believe him*; *что бы вы ни дѣлали, я не буду васъ слушать* = *whatever you do, I shall not listen to you*; and the following very common idioms may be mentioned: *кто бы то ни было* = *whoever it be*, *что бы то ни было* = *whatever it be*, and *во что бы то ни стало* = *cost what it may* (lit. = *into whatever it should become*). This use of *бы* must be carefully distinguished from that mentioned in the preceding paragraph. *Whoever not* can only be translated by *кто не* . . . , e. g. *кто не видѣлъ Москвы, не знаетъ Россіи* = *whoever has not seen Moscow, does not know Russia*. Other common ways of expressing *whoever* and *whatever* are phrases such as *every one who*, *all that*, &c.

4. *Кто* . . . , *кто* . . . is very commonly used to express *some* . . . *others* . . . , e. g. *всѣ уѣхали, кто на лошадахъ, кто по желѣзной дорогѣ* = *they have all left, some by carriage* (lit. = *on horses*), *some by railway*.

5. The particle *же* or *-жъ* is very frequently affixed to *кто*, *что*, *чей*, and *какой*, and gives these pronouns the meaning *who then?* &c.; e. g. *кого же вы видѣли?* = *whom then was it you saw, whom then did you see?* *что же случилось?* = *what then has happened?* *Чтожъ* by itself, as an exclamation, is very commonly used in answer to a question or request, and means approximately *certainly*, or *why not?* Another very common idiom is *ну, такъ что-жъ?* =

well, what about it? Yet another что-жъ дѣлать? = *what's to be done, que voulez vous?*

Отчего же? and почему же? are also very common in argument, meaning *but why then?* Отчего же! is also used as an exclamation, meaning *both far from it, not at all, and certainly, by all means.*

6. Что and что-жъ is also very frequently used to introduce a question, and is in fact almost the most usual way of introducing an interrogative sentence; in this use it never has any emphasis on it; e.g. что вы побѣдете въ этомъ году заграницу? = *shall you go abroad this year?*

§ 50.

Definitive Pronouns.

самъ, самá, самó; сáми = *self.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	самъ	самá	самó	сáми
G.	самого	самой	самого	самихъ
D.	самоу	самой	самоу	самимъ
A.	= N. or G.	самоѣ	самó	= N. or G.
I.	самимъ	самой	самимъ	самими
L.	самомъ	самой	самомъ	самихъ

весь, вся, всё; всё = *all, the whole.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc., Fem., Neut.
N.	весь	вся	всѣ	всѣ
G.	всего	всей	всего	всѣхъ
D.	всему	всей	всему	всѣмъ
A.	= N. or G.	всю	всѣ	= N. or G.
I.	всѣмъ	всей	всѣмъ	всѣми
L.	всѣмъ	всей	всѣмъ	всѣхъ

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Всѣмъ and каждый = *every, each*, нѣмъ = *some*, and другой = *other*, are declined like adjectives, q. v. For одинъ = *only, alone* (lit. = *one*) cf. Numerals, § 60.

2. *One another* is expressed in Russian by the phrase другъ друга, which is the nom. and acc. sing. of the word другъ, which originally meant *second or other*, but in modern Russian has acquired the meaning of *friend*; e.g. они очень любятъ другъ друга = *they love*

one another very much, мы пошли́ другъ съ дру́гомъ = *we went one with the other*.

3. Самъ can be used either before or after the noun it qualifies, e.g. я самъ = *I myself* (masc.), я сама́ = *I myself* (fem.), самъ царь = *the tsar himself*, я ви́дѣлъ само́го царя́ = *I saw the tsar himself*, онъ мнѣ само́му сказа́лъ это́ = *he told this to me myself* (sc. *not through anybody else*), мы са́ми = *we ourselves*, онъ самъ о́г самъ онъ = *he himself*, само́ собо́ю = *by or of itself*, я самъ себѣ купи́лъ это́ = *I bought this for myself myself*, она́ сама́ себѣ купи́ла это́ = *she bought this for herself herself*.

4. It is not difficult to distinguish the use of самъ from that of the reflexive pronoun себя́, but самъ is very easily confused with the longer form of the same word са́мый = *the very*, which is declined like an adjective, e.g. тотъ же са́мый челове́къ = *the very same man*, but самъ челове́къ = *the man himself*; въ са́момъ це́нтрѣ́ го́рода = *in the very centre of the town*, but въ само́мъ го́родѣ́ = *in the town itself*. Са́мый is also used in the formation of the superlative degree in the comparison of adjectives, q. v.

5. The use of весь does not present any difficulties, e.g. весь го́родъ = *the whole town*, весь де́нь (acc.) = *all day long*, всю́ ночь (acc.) = *all night long*, она́ вся́ въ че́рномъ = *she [is] all in black*. It is very important to notice a few very common idioms in which the word occurs: со́всѣмъ = *quite* (lit. = *with all*), всё́ равно́ = *it's all the same* (lit. = *all even*), всего́ хоро́шаго, всего́ лу́чшаго! = (*I wish you*) *everything good, everything of the best!* (gen. after verb of wishing), всего́ = *altogether, in all*, e.g. всего́ пять́ мѣсть бага́жа́ = *five pieces of luggage in all* (lit. = *of all*), всё́ = *continually* (this is really an adverbial use of the neuter), e.g. она́ всё́ пла́кала́ = *she kept on crying all the time*, онъ всё́ кричи́тъ = *he keeps on shouting, he is always shouting*, я всё́ пишу́ = *I am always writing*, онъ всё́ ходи́тъ въ теа́тръ = *he is always going to the theatre*. It is very important to be sure of pronouncing весь with a soft c and closed e, as there is another word вѣсь having the open e-sound and hard ending, meaning *weight*.

§ 51.

Indefinite Pronouns.

ни́кто́ = *no one*, ни́что́ = *nothing*.

These are declined exactly like кто́ and что́, but it is to be observed that the nom. and acc. ни́что́ is very rarely used, the gen.

being almost always substituted for them, e.g. что съ вами? ничеро! = *what is the matter with you? nothing!* ёто ничеро! = *no matter!* (lit. = *this [is] nothing*). When a verb follows either of these pronouns, it must always be negative, since in Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative, but are on the other hand necessary to complete the negation, e.g. никто не пришёл = *no one has come*, я никому не сказалъ = *I have told no one*, онъ мнѣ ничеро не далъ = *he has given me nothing*.

The following very common idioms may be noticed: никогó не видать = *there is no one to be seen*, ничеро не видать = *there is nothing to be seen*, никогó ог ничеро не слыхатъ = *there is no one or nothing to be heard*.

There is a very idiomatic adverbial use of the word ничеро in which it means *tolerably, fairly well*, e.g. какъ вы себя чувствуете? ничеро! = *how do you feel [yourself]? fairly well!* This can also be used with a verb, e.g. онъ играетъ ничеро = *he plays fairly well*, but of course with the double negative the meaning would be negative, e.g. онъ ничеро не играетъ = *he is not playing anything*.

When никто and ничто are used with a preposition, the latter is inserted between the *ни-* and the pronoun, e.g. ни съ кѣмъ = *with no one*, ни о чёмъ = *about nothing*, ни за что = *not for anything*, ни съ чѣмъ = *without accomplishing one's object* (lit. = *with nothing*); ни въ чёмъ не бывало is an idiom meaning *not in the least*, and какъ будто ни въ чёмъ не бывало = *quite unruffled, as if nothing had happened*.

никако́й = *of no kind*

is declined like an adjective, q. v.

не́кого = *there is no one to . . .*

не́чего = *there is nothing to . . .*

Не- can be prefixed to any case of кто and что except the nom., and the words thus formed are written as one word, except when used with a preposition, which, just as in the case of никто, is inserted between the *не-* and the pronoun. It is always followed by the inf. It is important to remember that the accent is always on the *не-*, while in никто it is always on the last syllable; e.g. не́чего дѣлать ог дѣлать не́чего! = *there is nothing to be done!* (lit. = *to do*; a very common idiom), говорить не́чего! = *there is nothing more to be said, there's no denying it*, не́кому сказать = *there is no one*

to tell, нѣ съ кѣмъ говорить = *there is no one to talk to* (lit. = *with*),
 нѣ о чѣмъ писать = *there is nothing to write about*, and the common
 idioms: нѣ за что = *il n'y pas de quoi* (our *don't mention it*), нѣ за
 чѣмъ = *there is no object, there is no point*.

нѣкто = *some one*, нѣчто = *something*.

It is important not to confuse these two words with *нѣкого* and *нѣчего*. The beginner is all the more likely to confuse them because *ѣ* is pronounced exactly like *e* and in both the accent is on the same syllable. But as a matter of fact the two words are of very rare occurrence except in the nom., much the commoner expressions for *some one* and *something* being those mentioned lower; e. g. я слышала нѣчто о немъ = *I have heard something about him*, онъ мнѣ нѣчто сказалъ = *he told me something*.

нѣкоторый = *a certain, some*, is declined like an adjective, q. v.

кто-то = *some one*, что-то = *something*, кто-нибудь = *some one or other, any one*, что-нибудь = *something or other, anything* (lit. = *who not be, who be it not*), кто-либо = *any one*, что-либо = *anything*.

These are all declined exactly like *кто* and *что*. The difference in meaning between *кто-то* and *кто-нибудь* is slight but very important. *Кто-то* is the more definite of the two and can never mean *any one*; *кто-нибудь* is less definite and means *some one* or *any one*. The difference is best illustrated by examples: *кто-то* идётъ = *some one is coming*, *кто-то* пришёлъ = *some one has come*, *кто-то* сказалъ мнѣ = *some one told me*, *кто-то* тамъ = [*there is*] *some one there*, *кто-то* позвонилъ = *some one has rung*, я далъ кому-то книгу, но не помню кому = *I gave the book to some one, but I don't remember to whom*, она сказала мнѣ что-то о немъ = *she told me something about him* (sc. *but I don't want to tell you what*), я вижу что-то тамъ = *I see something there*, онъ написалъ что-то на бумажкѣ = *he wrote something on the piece of paper*, рубль съ чѣмъ-то = *a rouble with something* (i. e. *over a rouble, I forget how much*), говядина съ чѣмъ-то = *beef with something* (i. e. *something with it, I forget what*), but дома-ли кто-нибудь? or кто-нибудь дома? = *is any one at home?* спросите кого-нибудь! = *ask some one!* я спрошу у кого-нибудь совета = *I shall ask advice from some one*, я куплю вамъ что-нибудь = *I shall buy you something or other* (sc. *I don't know myself exactly what*), я куплю вамъ что-то = *I shall buy you something* (sc. *I know what, but I am not going to*

tell you), надо сдѣлать что-нибудь = *something must be done* (sc. *I don't know what*), надѣньте что-нибудь теплѣе = *put something warm on* (sc. *it doesn't matter what*), скушайте что-нибудь еще = *eat something more*, скажите мнѣ что-нибудь о себѣ = *tell me something about yourself*, сыграйте намъ что-нибудь! = *do play us something!*

Кто-либо and что-либо are still more indefinite, e. g. спросите кого-либо, а онъ скажетъ вамъ... = *ask any one you like, and he will tell you...*, дайте кому-либо = *give [it] to any one you like*.

Кѣй-кто = *a few*, кое-что = *a little*. These are also declined exactly like кто and что; they imply indefiniteness of number or quantity, e. g. я спрашивалъ кѣй-кого = *I have been asking one or two people*, онъ сказалъ мнѣ кое-что о себѣ = *he told me a few things about himself*, я узналъ кое-что о... = *I have found out a thing or two about...*, я кѣй съ кѣмъ говорилъ объ этомъ = *I have been talking to one or two people about this*.

Кѣй-какой = *a few* and любѣй = *any you like* are declined like adjectives, q. v.

DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVES

§ 52. The adjective in Russian has two forms, the shorter and the longer; the shorter is called the predicative, the longer the attributive.

The predicative form of the adjective is used almost solely when the adjective is the predicate of a sentence; in form it is exactly like a noun, and except in popular poetry it occurs only in the nominative, e. g. домъ хорошъ = *the house [is] nice* (cf. German: *das Haus ist schön*), моя сестра больна = *my sister [is] ill*, море глубоко = *the sea [is] deep*, они живы = *they [are] alive*, я очень радъ = *I [am] very glad*, онъ счастливъ = *he [is] happy*, она здорова = *she [is] well*, я виноватъ = *I [am] to blame*, я виновата = *I [am] to blame* (if a woman is speaking). But whenever an adjective qualifies a noun, the longer or attributive form must be used; this is an amalgamation of the shorter form with the pronominal endings. There is a hard and a soft declension, corresponding to the hard and soft nouns.

§ 53.

Hard Declension.

Example: бѣлый, бѣлая, бѣлое = *white*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлый	бѣлая	бѣлое
G.	бѣлаго	бѣлой	бѣлаго
D.	бѣлому	бѣлой	бѣлому
A.	= N. or G.	бѣлую	бѣлое
I.	бѣлымъ	бѣлой	бѣлымъ
L.	бѣломъ	бѣлой	бѣломъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	бѣлые	бѣлыя	
G.		бѣлыхъ	
D.		бѣлымъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		бѣлыми	
L.		бѣлыхъ	

Hard Declension when the ending is accented.

Example: молодой, молодая, молодое = *young*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	молодой	молодая	молодое
G.	молодого	молодой	молодого

after which it is declined exactly like бѣлый, except that the accent is always on the ending, and on the first syllable of the ending when it is disyllabic.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. of the adjective is the same as that which governs the acc. sing. and pl. of masc. and the acc. pl. of fem. nouns, i. e. for an animate object it is always the same as the genitive and for an inanimate object the same as the nominative.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every fem. inst. sing., e. g. бѣлою or бѣлоѣ.

3. The nominative singular and plural of the attributive form of the adjective arose through the affixing of the lost pronominal nominatives (which are given in scientific works as *ja ja je*, pronounced *i ya ye*, whose place in the pronominal declension has been taken by *онъ она оно*) to nominatives of the predicative form, thus *бѣлый* = *бѣлъ* + *и* (*je*), *бѣлая* = *бѣла* + *я* (*ja*), *бѣлое* = *бѣло* + *е* (*je*). The form of the nom. sing. masc. is really of Old Bulgarian origin and has forced its way not only into Russian orthography but also into the living language, thanks to the influence of the Old Bulgarian ecclesiastical tradition in the Russian language; the real Russian form of the nom. sing. is *-ой*, which is still retained in adjectives which are accented on the ending, e.g. *молодой* = *young*.

The other cases were formed analogously, though the process is clearer in some than in others, e.g. *бѣлаго* = *бѣла* + *его*, *бѣлую* = *бѣлу* + *ю* (= *ju yu*, an old acc. of the pronominal declension), *бѣлому* = *бѣлу* + *ему*; in the other cases more drastic contraction has occurred.

4. Several very common adjectives (including names) are accented on the ending and declined like *молодой*, e.g. *передовой* = *foremost*, *золотой* = *golden*, *больной* = *ill*, *сѣдой* = *gray-haired*, *большой* = *big*, *Толстой* = *Tolstói* (while the adjective *толстый* = *thick, fat*, is declined like *бѣлый*). It may be mentioned that almost all Russian surnames are adjectives and must be declined adjectivally, e.g. *сочинѣнія Толстого* = *the works of Tolstói*, *я зналъ Толстого* = *I knew Tolstói*, *я знаю графиню Толстую* = *I know Countess Tolstói*, *Толстые* = *the Tolstóis*, *у Толстыхъ* = *at the house of the Tolstóis*. Also the ordinals: *второй* = *second*, *шестой* = *sixth*, *седьмой* = *seventh*, *восьмой* = *eighth*, and *сороковой* = *fortieth*.

5. Many adjectives ending in both *-ый* and *-ой* are used substantivally, e.g. *столовая* (с.с. *комната*) = *dining-room*, *гостиная* = *drawing-room*, *кладовая* = *store-room*, *насекомое* = *insect*, *животное* = *animal*, *портной* = *tailor*, *городовой* = *policeman*, *рядовой* = *private*, *помовый* = *carter*, *больной* = *the patient, the invalid* (fem. *больная*), *чужой* (lit. = *swift*), *золотой* = *a gold coin (ten roubles)*, and very commonly the names of streets, e.g. *Нѣвскій* (с.с. *проспѣктъ*) = *the Nevsky* (in Petrograd), *Морская* (с.с. *улица*) = *the Morskaya* (street in Petrograd).

6. The **ы** of the case-endings of those adjectives whose stems both end in **к**, **г**, and **х**, and are accented, becomes **и**, e. g. **крѣпкій** = *strong*, **крѣпкимъ**, **крѣпкіе**, &c. (with fem. **крѣпкая** and neut. **крѣпкое**), **маленькій** = *little*, **великій** = *great*, **широкій** = *broad*, **дикий** = *wild*, **строгій** = *severe*, **тихий** = *quiet*, **узкій** = *narrow*, **короткій** = *short*, **сладкій** = *sweet*, and many others; this category includes all adjectives derived from names of towns and countries, e. g. **москóвскій** = *of Moscow*, *Muscovite*, **петрогáдскій** = *of Petrograd*, **кíевскій** = *of Kiev*, **рíжскій** = *of Riga*, **русскій** = *Russian*, **нѣмѣцкій** = *German*, **францúзскій** = *French*, **англíйскій** = *English*, and innumerable surnames which are often derived from names of places, e. g. **Оболѣнскій** = *Obolenski*, **Ча́йковскій** = *Chaikovski*, **Достоѣвскій** = *Dostoyevski*, &c. It must not be forgotten that all such surnames are declined throughout, e. g. the wife and unmarried daughter or sister of a man called **Оболѣнскій** is **Оболѣнская**, his whole family **Оболѣнские**, &c., and that for a foreigner to say, e. g. *Madame Obolensky*, is just as correct as it would be to talk about the Emperor Catherine.

But when an adjective whose stem ends in **к**, **г**, or **х** is accented on the ending then it is declined like **молодой**, and the **ы** only changes to **и** in the masc. and neut. inst. sing. and throughout the plural, e. g. **городско́й** = *belonging to the town* (nom. pl. **городскіе**), **дорого́й** = *dear* (inst. sing. **дорогѣмъ**, nom. pl. **дорогіе**, &c.), as also those surnames of this category which are accented on the ending, e. g. **Трубецко́й** = *Trubetskoi* (nom. pl. **Трубецкіе** = *the Trubetskoi*), **Шаховско́й** = *Shakhovskoi* (fem. **Шаховская**), &c.

In this category are included those adjectives whose stems end in **ж** and **ш**, and are accented on the ending, e. g. the very common words **чужо́й** = *strange* (sc. *not known*), **чужіе** = *strangers*, **у чужіихъ** = *amongst strangers*, **въ чужомъ домѣ** = *in another person's house*, and **большо́й** = *big*, **большо́й домъ** = *a large house*, **большо́й любітель искусства** = *a great lover of art*, **большіе** often = *the grown-ups*.

7. The pronouns which are declined like adjectives all belong to the hard declension: **каждый** = *every, each*, **который** = *which*, **нѣкоторый** = *a certain, some* are declined exactly like **бѣлый**, **всякій** = *of every kind, every, each*, like **крѣпкій**, and **тако́й**, **ѣтако́й**, **таково́й** = *of such a kind*, **тако́й-же** = *of the same kind*, **како́й** and **каково́й** = *of what kind*, **друго́й** = *other*, **никако́й** = *of no kind*, **иной** = *some*, **ко́й-какой** = *a few*, and **любо́й** = *any you like*, like **дорогой** and **молодой**.

These words are so very common that a few examples of their use are added: *каждый день* (acc.) = *every day*, на *каждомъ шагѣ* = *at every step*, *каждую минуту* (acc.) = *every minute*, *каждый знаетъ* = *every one knows*, *какой нѣмеръ?* = *which number?* *какой часъ?* = *what time is it?* (lit. = *which hour?*), въ *какомъ часу?* = *at what o'clock?* *какое число сегодня?* = *what date is it to-day?* *нѣкоторые находятъ, что...* = *some consider* (lit. = *find*) *that...*, *нѣкій* (ог *нѣкто*) *Ивановъ* = *a certain [man called] Ivanov*, до *нѣкоторой стѣпени* = *to a certain extent*, въ *нѣкоторомъ родѣ* = *in a certain way*, *in some ways*, всѣй *вздоръ* = *all sorts of rubbish*, всѣя *книга* = *each book*, всѣя *книги* = *all sorts of books*, всѣя *всячина* = *odds and ends*, онъ *такой милый!* = *he is such a nice man!* (N.B. Russians never say такъ *милый* for *so nice*), она *такая милая!* = *she is such a nice woman!* они *такіе милые!* = *they are such nice people!* въ *такую погоду* = *in* (lit. *into*) *such weather*, въ *такое время* = *at such a time*, *такимъ образомъ* = *in this way* (lit. *by such manner*), which often comes to mean *by doing this*, до *такой стѣпени* = *to such an extent*, *такого рода* = *of such a sort* (e.g. *такого рода пьеса* = *a play of this sort*; the nom. often follows the gen., but can also precede it), въ *такомъ случаѣ* = *in such a case*, which comes to mean *since this is so*, въ *такомъ родѣ* = *in that manner, of that sort*, *такого-же рода*, въ *такомъ-же родѣ* = *of the same kind, in the same manner*, *какой онъ интересный!* = *how interesting he is!* *какая интересная книга!* = *what an interesting book!* *какой красивый мальчикъ!* = *what a beautiful boy!* *какая хорошая погода!* = *what nice weather!* *какая плохая (скверная) погода!* = *what bad (nasty) weather!* *какимъ образомъ?* = *in what manner?* *какія новости сегодня?* = *what news is there to-day?* *какого рода?* = *of what sort?* (e.g. *это какого рода пьеса?* = *what sort of a play is this?*), въ *какомъ родѣ* = *what like?* *какой вздоръ!* = *what rubbish!* *книга, каковую вы написали* = *a book of the sort which you have written*, *другой разъ* = *another time*, *другого рода* = *of another sort*, на *другой день* = *the next day*, *другимъ образомъ* = *in another way*, *другіе говорить* = *others say*, *никакимъ образомъ* = *in no way*, ни въ *какомъ случаѣ* = *in no case, in no eventuality*, which comes to mean *whatever happens*, ни за *какіе коврижки* = *not for anything in the world* (lit. *not for any sort of little cakes*), въ *какомъ городѣ* вы живѣте? ни въ *какомъ* = *in which town do you live?* *not in any*, *кой-какія новости* = *some items of news*, *иной разъ* = *sometimes* (Germ. *manch-*

mal), иные говорятъ = *some say* (originally иной meant *one*, e.g. инородъ = *unicorn*, but it also acquired the meaning *other*, e.g. инородцы = *people of other race than one's own*), кой-какие книги = *a few books of sorts*, въ любой часъ = *at any hour* (lit. into), въ любомъ городѣ = *in any town you like to mention*, въ любой день *any day you like* (lit. into).

There is a very idiomatic use of какой as an interjection, usually expressing admiration at somebody's exploit, and it is always used in the predicative form and precedes the noun, e.g. какъ русский балетъ! = *well, what do you think of the Russian ballet, isn't it fine!* какъ пѣвица! = *isn't she a splendid singer!* какъ урожай = *what a fine harvest!*

8. It is not absolutely true that all adjectives have both predicative and attributive forms. The two words радъ (fem. рада) = *glad* and гораздъ = *capable* have only the predicative form. To render their meaning when used attributively synonyms such as радостный = *joyful*, способный = *capable* must be used.

Conversely большой = *big* has no predicative form, and if used predicatively the synonym великий takes its place, e.g. Россія велика = *Russia is large*; further, all words in -ский, e.g. русский = *Russian*, in -ской, e.g. городской = *of the town*, and adjectives denoting materials, e.g. золотой = *golden*, каменный = *of stone or brick*, have only the attributive form, e.g. he is Russian = онъ русский, my ring is of gold = моё кольцо золотое, this bridge is of stone = этотъ мостъ каменный. Otherwise every adjective has both forms and the shorter must be used whenever the adjective is the predicate. To form a shorter from a longer adjective it is only necessary to cut off the endings -ый, -я, and -е, then for the masc. to substitute -ъ and for the fem. and neut. nothing; for the pl. cut off -е, -я; e.g. милый, милая, милое = *nice, dear*, short form = миль, мила, мило, pl. милы.

Examples of use: милая дѣвочка = *a nice little girl*, дѣвочка мила = *the little girl [is] nice*, while it is also possible to say дѣвочка милая = *the little girl is a nice* (sc. little girl), дѣвочка такая милая = *the little girl is such a nice* (sc. little girl); онъ милый = *he is a nice [man]*, онъ такой милый = *he is such a nice [man]*, онъ миль = *he is nice*, онъ такъ миль = *he is so nice*. The only difficulty that occurs in forming the short form is that in some cases in the nom. masc. sing. where, after cutting off the -ый, a group of consonants

difficult to pronounce would be left, a vowel is inserted; this is usually *e*, which when accented becomes *ě*, e.g. *большой* = *ill*—*болень*, *умный* = *clever*—*умёнъ*, *сильный* = *strong*—*силень* or *силенъ*, *видный* = *visible*—*видень*, *спокойный* = *calm*—*спокоёнъ*; in the case of *достойный* = *worthy*, it is *и*—*достойнъ*; before -*къ* it is *о*, *короткий* = *short*—*коротокъ*; *крѣпкий* = *strong*—*крѣпокъ*; *лёгкий* = *light*—*лёгокъ* (except after *ж* and *ш*, when it is *е*, e.g. *тяжкий* = *heavy*,—*тяжекъ*). *О* also occurs in a few other words: *злой* = *bad-tempered, wicked*—*золь*; *полный* = *full*—*полонь*.

In many cases, however, groups of consonants, which might seem difficult to the foreigner, but are as nothing to Russians, are left without any vowel being inserted, e.g. *мёртвый* = *dead*—*мёртъвъ*; *чёрствый* = *hard* (especially *stale*, of bread)—*чёрствъ*.

9. It has been pointed out that in the language as it is spoken and written the predicative form of the adjective only occurs in the nominative; in the folk-poetry, however, which is epic in character, the other cases are often used, usually as fixed epithets for certain things, and recur with great frequency.

10. The first halves of compound adjectives which are hard end in -*о*, e.g. *бѣлокаменный* = *of white stone*, *свѣтло-зелѣный* = *light green*, *тѣмно-сѣрый* = *dark gray*, *волжско-кама́йский* банкъ = *the bank of the Volga and the Kama*, *ру́ско-нѣмце́цкiй* словарь = *a Russian-German dictionary*.

Corresponding to the soft declension of nouns, there is also one of adjectives, though the number included in it is very much smaller than that belonging to the hard declension:

§ 54.

Soft Declension.

Example: *синiй, синяя, синее* = *dark blue*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	синiй	синяя	синее
G.	синяго	синей	синяго
D.	синему	синей	синему
A.	=N. or G.	синюю	синее
I.	синимъ	синей	синимъ
L.	синемъ	синей	синемъ

	Masc.	Plural. Fem.	Neut.
N.	сініе	сінія	
G.		сініхъ	
D.		сінімъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		сініми	
L.		сініхъ	

It will be observed that all the soft vowels in the endings of the soft declension correspond to the hard vowels in those of the hard declension, i. e. (и) i to ы, я to а, ю to у, е to о.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The rule with regard to the acc. sing. masc. and acc. pl. masc. and fem. is the same as for the hard adjectives.

2. There is an alternative longer form of three syllables for every inst. sing. fem., e. g. сінею and сіней.

3. The predicative form of the soft adjectives is practically never used.¹

4. There are no soft adjectives having the accent on the ending.

5. There are a few soft adjectives which are used substantivally, e. g. ловчій = *hunter*, стряпчій = *attorney*, гончая (sc. собака) = *sporting-dog* (cf. obs. 7), лѣшій = *wood-demon*, передняя (sc. комната) = *ante-room*.

6. The commonest adjectives declined like сіній are only a few in number, and are therefore given here: древній = *ancient*, искренній = *sincere*, внутренній = *interior*, вышній = *exterior*, крайній = *extreme*, здѣшній = *belonging to this place, from here*, тамошній = *belonging to that place, from there*, вчерашній = *of yesterday*, сегодняшній = *of to-day*, завтрашній = *of to-morrow*, весенній (or вѣсній) = *vernal*, лѣтній = *summer*, осенній = *autumnal*, зимній = *winter*, послѣдній = *last*, средній = *middle*, теперешній = *of to-day* (lit. *of now*), тогдашній = *former* (lit. *of then*), прежній = *former*, задній = *hinder*, передній = *front*, утренній = *morning*, вечерній = *evening*, верхній = *upper*, нижній = *lower* (Нижній Новгородъ = *Lower Newtown*), ранній = *early*, поздній = *late*.

¹ Except the very common forms: хорошъ, хороша, хорошо, pl. хороши, горячъ, -ча, -чо, -чи, свѣжъ, -жа, -жо, -жи, похожъ, похожа, похоже, похожи, cf. p. 79.

7. Those soft adjectives which end in -шій, -жій, -чій, and -щій are declined somewhat differently from сѣній, and as some of them are extremely common one is given in full :

хорóшій, хорóшая, хорóшее = *nice, good, jolly*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хорóшій	хорóшая	хорóшее
G.	хорóшаго	хорóшей	хорóшаго
D.	хорóшему	хорóшей	хорóшему
A.	= N. or G.	хорóшую	хорóшее
I.	хорóшимъ	хорóшей	хорóшнимъ
L.	хорóшемъ	хорóшей	хорóшемъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	хорóшіе	хорóшія	
G.		хорóшихъ	
D.		хорóшнимъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		хорóшими	
L.		хорóшихъ	

This is apparently a mixture of the hard and soft adjectives, but it is really soft, only the ш, ж, ч, and щ turn subsequent я, ы, о, ю into а, и (і), е, у. The following very common words are thus declined: горячій = *hot* (lit. = *burning*, e. g. in the phrase горячей воды (gen.) = *some hot water*), свѣжій = *fresh*, похожій = *like*, меньшій = *lesser, smaller*, большій = *greater, bigger*, лучшій = *better*, all superlatives in -шій and all participles in -чій and -щій.

8. The first halves of compound adjectives which are soft end in -е, e. g. средне-азіатскій = *Central Asian*, древне-греческій = *ancient Greek*.

N.B. The adjective derived from Нѣжній Нѣвгородъ (cf. obs. 6) is нижегородскій, e. g. нижегородская губернія = *the Government (i. e. Province) of N. N.*

9. Special attention must be called to the plurals:

мнóгие = *many*, and

немнóгие = *few*, which are declined like хорóшіе; the respective singulars are adverbs, мнóго = *much* and немнóго = *little*; нѣсколько = *some* is similarly used except in the nom. plur. for which нѣкоторые is invariably substituted (cf. p. 75), e. g.

многіе находятъ, что . . . = *many people consider* (lit. *find*) *that* . . . (it would be impossible to use the adverb here), только у (очень) немногихъ свои экипажи = *only a (very) few have their own carriages*, въ нѣсколькихъ случаяхъ = *in several cases*. The singular of многіе is also used, e. g. во многомъ эта книга мнѣ нравится = *there is much in this book that pleases me* (lit. *this book in much*).

§ 55. Declension of Possessive Adjectives.

There is a large number of these in Russian, and as the declension is different from that of the ordinary adjective, an example is given in full:

Ивѣновъ = *belonging to Ivan* (= *John*).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	Ивѣновъ	Ивѣнова	Ивѣново
G.	Ивѣнова	Ивѣновой	Ивѣнова
D.	Ивѣнову	Ивѣновой	Ивѣнову
A.	= N. or G.	Ивѣнову	Ивѣново
I.	Ивѣновымъ	Ивѣновой	Ивѣновымъ
L.	Ивѣновомъ	Ивѣновой	Ивѣновомъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.		Ивѣновы	
G.		Ивѣновыхъ	
D.		Ивѣновымъ	
A.		= N. or G.	
I.		Ивѣновыми	
L.		Ивѣновыхъ	

Ивѣновъ may mean either *belonging to Ivan*, e. g. Ивѣновъ домъ, or it may be the surname *Ivanov*, which in this case is an ellipse standing for Ивѣновъ сынъ = *Ivan's son*, or *Johnson*; Ивѣнова may mean *belonging to Ivan* (fem.), e. g. Ивѣнова сестра = *Ivan's sister*, or by itself, prefixed by Госпожа (Mrs. or Miss) it means *Miss* or *Mrs. Ivanov*—Госпожа Ивѣнова = *Mrs. Johnson*; Ивѣново may mean *belonging to Ivan* (neut.) or it may be the name of a village, when the word село is understood, originally called after Ivan; Ивѣновы may mean anything belonging to Ivan in the plural, or it may mean by itself *the Ivanovs*. Surnames and names of places formed in this way are endless, e. g. Павловъ = *Paul's*, '(Mr.) *Paul-*

son', Пáвлова = '(Mrs. or Miss) *Paulson*', Пётрoвъ = *Peter's*, *Peterson*, Попо́въ = *priest's* (from по́пъ = *a priest*, a very common surname), and include many fantastic names of sometimes curious origin, e. g. Абри́кoвъ (*apricot's*), Филосо́фовъ (*philosopher's*), Грибо́довъ (*mushroom-eater's*). It is from these words that the well-known Russian patronymics are formed by adding to them -ичъ (which is a diminutive with the special meaning *son of*) for the masculine and -на for the feminine, and it must be remembered that it is by their Christian names together with their patronymics that all Russians address one another, unless they are strangers or very intimate friends or relations. For example, if a man's surname is Попо́въ, his father's name Пётръ (*Peter*), and his own Christian name Па́вель (*Paul*), his friends will all call him Па́вель Петро́вичъ; let us say that his wife's name is А́нна (*Anne*) and her father's Christian name Ива́нъ, her full name will be А́нна Ива́новна Попо́ва, and all her friends will call her А́нна Ива́новна. There is a number of possessive adjectives from soft stems corresponding to the hard represented by Ива́новъ, e. g. Андре́й = *Andrew*, makes Андре́евъ; Васи́лий = *Basil*—Васи́льевъ; Серге́й = *Sergius*—Серге́евъ. In this category are included names of not purely Russian origin such as Тургене́въ = *Turgénev*.

Besides there is a large number of names and words which form their possessive adjectives in -инъ, -ынъ, instead of in -овъ (the case-endings are exactly the same), e. g. Тома́ (*Thomas*) makes Томи́нъ, fem. Томина́ with patronymic Томи́чъ (*Thomas's son*); Ильа́ (*Elias*)—Ильи́нъ (patronymics Ильи́чъ, fem. Ильи́нична); Вита́ (*Victor*)—Вити́нъ (the name of a well-known poet); ца́рица (*tsaritsa*, *empress*)—Ца́рицынъ (a large town on the Volga, sc. го́родъ), Ца́рицыно (sc. село́, a place near Moscow), while ца́рь makes ца́ревъ. This category includes such words as му́жнинъ = *husband's* (from му́жъ = *husband*), же́нинъ = *wife's* (же́на), бра́тнинъ = *brother's* (бра́тъ), and се́стринъ = *sister's* (сестра́), and those derived from diminutives, e. g. Серге́инъ from Серге́жа = Серге́й = *Sergius*, Са́шинъ from Са́ша = Алекса́ндръ or Алекса́ндра = *Alexander* and *Alexandra*. Госпо́дь = *the Lord* makes Госпо́день, Госпо́дня, Госпо́дне.

All these possessive adjectives have only the predicative form.

Finally there is a large category of possessive adjectives formed especially from names of animals, but including some others;

these have only the attributive form. As the declension is rather different from the others, an example is given :

рыбій = *fish's* (from рыба = *fish*).

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	рыбій	рыбья	рыбье
G.	рыбьяго	рыбьей	рыбьяго
D.	рыбьему	рыбьей	рыбьему
A.	= N. or G.	рыбью	рыбье
I.	рыбьимъ	рыбьей	рыбьимъ
L.	рыбьемъ	рыбьей	рыбьемъ

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	рыбьи		
G.	рыбьихъ		
D.	рыбьими		
A.	= N. or G.		
I.	рыбьими		
L.	рыбьихъ		

Common words belonging to this category are волчій = *wolf's* (волкъ), лисій = *fox's* (лиса), собачій = *dog's* (собака), кошечій = *cat's* (кошка), медвѣжій = *bear's* (медвѣдь), птицій = *bird's* (птица), Божій = *God's* (Богъ), человѣчій = *man's, human* (человѣкъ), and the ordinal третій = *third*, e. g. третьяго класса = *of the third class*, въ третьемъ классѣ = *in the third class*, and the idiom третьего дня = *theday before yesterday* (lit. = *of the third day*).

§ 56. Note on the Terminations of Adjectives.

Adjectives ending in -оватый or -еватый correspond in meaning to English adjectives in *-ish*, e. g. желтоватый = *yellowish* (желтый = *yellow*).

Those ending in -астый often imply largeness of the attribute, бородастый = *with a big beard* (борода = *beard*, бородастый = *bearded*) Those in -истый imply possession of a certain attribute: душистый = *fragrant, possessing sweet smell* (духъ = *spirit*, духа (pl.) = *scent*).

The terminations -ѣхонькій, -ѣхонькій, -ѣшенькій imply completeness; very often the adjective in its original form precedes the other; these forms are usually used predicatively:

- СЫТЬ-СЫТѢХОНЕКЪ = *absolutely satiated (with food)*,
 • ОДИНЪ-ОДИНѢХОНЕКЪ = *quite alone*.

The terminations -енькій and -онькій are diminutive:

МАЛЕНЬКІЙ = *small* (from МАЛЫЙ, which is seldom used).

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

§ 57. The Predicative Comparative.

The comparative is formed by cutting off the -ій (or -ѣ) of the attributive form of the adjective and adding -ѣ (or -ѣй) to the stem.

The word thus formed has no singular or plural and is indeclinable; also it can only be used predicatively.

In the case of words of more than three syllables the comparative can be formed by using the positive prefixed by the adverb, БОЛѢе = *more*, as in English, e. g. *more intelligible*.

Comparison can be expressed in three ways: by the words

- (1) ЧѢМЪ (inst. sing. of что), and } = *than*
 (2) НЕЖЕЛИ

followed by the nominative, and (3) by the genitive of comparison.

Examples: ДЛИННЫЙ = *long*, ср. ДЛИННѢе,

ЭТА ПАЛКА ДЛИННѢе ЧѢМЪ ТА = *this stick [is] longer than that*,

КРАСИВЫЙ = *beautiful*, ср. КРАСИВѢе,

МОИ ЦВѢТЫ КРАСИВѢе ВАШИХЪ (gen.) = *my flowers [are] more beautiful than yours*,

ПРЯМОЙ = *straight*, ср. ПРЯМѢе,

ЭТА ДОРОГА ПРЯМѢе ТОЙ (gen.) = *this road [is] straighter than that*,

or purely predicatively:

ЭТА ПАЛКА ДЛИННѢе = *this stick [is the] longer*.

If the comparative is followed by ЕГО = *his*, ЕЯ = *hers*, or НИХЪ = *theirs*, a conjunction is necessary, e. g.

МОЙ ДОМЪ КРАСИВѢе НЕЖЕЛИ ЕГО = *my house [is] more beautiful than his*, since КРАСИВѢе ЕГО would mean *more beautiful than he*.

An example of an adjective of more than three syllables :

образованный = *cultured* ; predic. comp. болѣе образованъ (after which a conjunction is necessary) or образованнѣе,

мы болѣе образованы чѣмъ онѣ = *we [are] more cultured than they.*

Болѣе is also invariably used with радъ = *glad*, which has no comparative, and with свѣжій = *fresh* and черствый = *hard, stale* (of bread), and похожій = *like*, e.g.,

это болѣе похоже на + acc. = *this is more like . . .*

To express *less* the adverb мѣнѣе with similar construction is used, e.g.,

онѣ мѣнѣе образованы чѣмъ мы = *they are less cultured than we.*

A very large number of adjectives, however, form their comparatives by adding -е instead of -ѣе. Some of these are adjectives whose stems originally ended in a consonant, such as к, liable to be softened into ч before the palatal ѣ and absorbing it in the process, others are the result of analogical influence or quite irregular. As they are all extremely common words a full list is given :

высокій = <i>high, tall</i>	ср. выше
низкій = <i>low</i>	„ ниже
глубокий = <i>deep</i>	„ глубже
мелкій = <i>shallow (also petty, small change, fine print or writing)</i>	„ мельче
широкий = <i>broad</i>	„ шире
узкий = <i>narrow</i>	„ уже ¹
далёкий = <i>distant</i>	„ дальше
близкий = <i>near</i>	„ ближе
толстый = <i>thick, fat</i> { especially }	„ толще
тонкий = <i>thin</i> { of solids }	„ тоньше
густой = <i>thick</i> { especially of }	„ гуще
жидкий = <i>thin</i> { liquids and gases }	„ жидче
редкий = <i>rare, sparse</i>	„ рѣже
ранний = <i>early</i>	„ раньше
долгий = <i>long</i> (of time)	„ дольше
короткий = <i>short</i>	„ короче
крѣпкий = <i>strong</i>	„ крѣпче
простой = <i>simple</i>	„ проще

¹ Not to be confused with the conjunction уже = *already*.

строгий = <i>severe</i>	ср. строже
тихий = <i>calm, slow</i>	„ тише
лёгкий = <i>light</i>	„ легче
дорогой = <i>dear</i>	„ дороже
дешёвый = <i>cheap</i>	„ дешевле
богатый = <i>rich</i>	„ богаче
молодой = <i>young</i>	„ моложе
старый = <i>old</i>	„ старше
чистый = <i>clean</i>	„ чище
твёрдый = <i>firm, hard</i>	„ твёрже
сладкий = <i>sweet</i>	„ слаще
горький = <i>bitter</i>	„ горче
жаркий = <i>hot</i>	„ жарче
большой = <i>big</i>	„ больше
малый (маленький) = <i>little</i>	„ меньше
хороший = <i>nice, good</i>	„ лучше
худой (плохой, дурной) = <i>bad</i>	„ хуже

A few adjectives have two forms of the comparative :

тяжёлый = *heavy*, ср. тяжёле and тяжело́е

поздний = *late*, ср. позже and позднѣе.

Худой has two meanings, (1) *thin* (of human beings and animals) and (2) *bad*; the comparative of the first meaning is худѣе and of the second хуже. Fat (of human beings and animals) is usually rendered by полный (ср. полнѣе) = *full*, though толстый (but only in the positive) is also used less politely of human beings.

As regards the accent the following rule may be mentioned: all so-called irregular comparatives (e. g. больше) are accented on the penultimate. Of the others, adjectives of two syllables are accented on the 3 of -ѣе; also злой = *wicked*—злѣе. Adjectives of more than two syllables keep the accent in the comparative where it was in the positive, e. g. красивый = *beautiful*—красивѣе; to this rule there are a few exceptions :

здоровый = *healthy* ср. здоровѣе

холодный = *cold* „ холоднѣе

горячий = *hot* „ горячѣе

(горячий is used of substances, e. g. water, food, also of the emotions; жаркий is used especially of the weather; тёплый = *warm* (ср. теплѣе) is used for everything).

§ 58.

The Attributive Comparative.

When the comparative is used, not for purposes of strict comparison but as an attributive adjective expressing a stronger degree of any quality than is expressed by the positive, the form in -ѣе, &c., cannot be employed. Instead it must be either expressed by using *болѣе* with the positive or by another special form which some adjectives possess; this form ends in -ѣйшій, -айшій, -ишій, or -ишій and is declined like *хорошій* (or like *молодой*).

As only a few adjectives are commonly used in this form a full list is given :

высокій = *high, tall*, ср. *высшій*, e. g.

высшіе чины = *the upper ranks* (of officials)

въ высшей степени = *in the highest* (lit. *very high*) *degree*

низкій = *low*, ср. *низшій*, e. g.

низшія цѣны = *lower prices*

низшее мѣсто = *a lower place*

дальній = *distant*, ср. *дальнѣйшій*, e. g.

дальнѣйшее развитіе = *the subsequent development* (there is no attributive comparative from *далёкій*)

старый = *old*, ср. *старшій*, e. g.

старшій братъ = *elder brother*

молодой = *young*, ср. *младшій* (from another stem *млад-*), e. g.

младшая дочь = *younger daughter*

[*хорошій* = *nice, good*], ср. *лучшій*, e. g.

лучшіе магазины = *the superior shops*

худой = *bad*, ср. *худшій*, e. g.

худшіе сорта = *inferior sorts*

большой = *big*, ср. *большій*, e. g.

большую частью = *for the greater part*

большіе города = *the larger towns*

малый (*маленькій*) = *little*, ср. *меньшій* = *lesser* and *меньшой* = *younger*, e. g.

самое меньшее = *the very least*

меньшой сынъ = *younger* (or *youngest*) *son*.

The form in -ѣйшій and -айшій possessed by several adjectives, e. g. *слабый* = *weak*, *слабѣйшій*, *крѣпкій* = *strong*, *крѣпчайшій*, is in meaning rather a superlative (like our *very weak, very strong*)

than a comparative. In almost all cases except those mentioned the attributive comparative can be and is usually expressed by *болѣе* with the positive, e. g.

это болѣе красивая шляпа = *this [is] the prettier hat.*

Rather + the positive or comparative is expressed by *по-* and the comparative, e. g.

мнѣ нужна палка по-длиннѣе = *I want (to me is necessary) a rather long(er) stick*

я хочу что-нибудь по-лучше, по-красивѣе, по-дешевле = *I want something rather better (superior), prettier, cheaper* (sc. *than what you've shown me*).

§ 59.

The Superlative.

The superlative can be expressed in several ways; the commonest way is to use the pronoun *самый* with the positive (and in some cases the comparative), e. g.

самый красивый = *most beautiful*

самый некрасивый = *ugliest*

самый лучший = *best*

самый плохой
самый скверный } = *worst*

самый большой = *biggest*

самый маленький = *smallest*

самый старший = *eldest*

самый младший = *youngest*

самый высший = *highest*

самый низший = *lowest*

самый крепкий = *strongest*

самый слабый = *weakest, &c.*

These can be used either predicatively or attributively, e. g.

самый лучший магазинъ = *the best shop*

это будетъ самое лучшее = *that will be the best* (sc. *way*).

Another way of forming the superlative is by means of the prefix *наи-*, but only a few adjectives (always comparatives) are treated in this way and even they are seldom used, the form being considered archaic and pedantic. The commonest are:

наилучший = *best*

наибольший = *biggest*

наименьший = *smallest*

Another way of expressing *very* is by means of the prefix *пре-*, which is followed by the positive; this form is quite common, e. g.

прехорошенькій = *very pretty*

преподобный = *very reverend*

прескверный = *very bad*

пре- also occurs in the word превосходный = *excellent*.

The termination *-ѣйшій*, *-ѣйшій* is added to a few adjectives with the meaning of a superlative; the commonest are :

высокій = *high*, superl. высочайшій

великій = *great*, superl. величайшій

малый = *little*, superl. малѣйшій

e. g. безъ малѣйшаго сомнѣнія = *without the smallest doubt*

глубокій = *deep*, superl. глубочайшій

чистый = *clean, pure*, superl. чистѣйшій

любезный = *amiable*, superl. любезнѣйшій

дорогой = *dear*, superl. дражайшій (from a stem *дѣр-*).

Yet another way of expressing the superlative predicatively is by the predicative comparative followed by *всѣхъ*, e. g.

это мѣсто лучше всѣхъ = *this place [is] the best of all*.

THE NUMERALS

§ 60. The Cardinal and Ordinal Numerals.

1	одинъ, одна, одно	первый
2	два (M. and N.) двѣ (F.)	второй
3	три	третій
4	четыре	четвёртый
5	пять	пятый
6	шесть	шестой
7	семь	седьмой
8	восемь	восьмой
9	девять	девятый
10	десять	десятый
11	одиннадцать	одиннадцатый
12	двѣнадцать	двѣнадцатый
13	тринадцать	тринадцатый

14	четы́рнадцать	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятна́дцать	пятна́дцатый
16	шестна́дцать	шестна́дцатый
17	семна́дцать	семна́дцатый
18	восемна́дцать	восемна́дцатый
19	девятна́дцать	девятна́дцатый
20	два́дцать	два́дцатый
21	два́дцать о́динъ о́дна, &c.	два́дцать пе́рвый
22	два́дцать два́, двѣ	два́дцать второ́й
23	два́дцать три́	два́дцать тре́тій
30	три́дцать	три́дцатый
40	со́рокъ	со́рочовый
50	пятьдеся́тъ	пятидеся́тый
60	шестьдеся́тъ	шестидеся́тый
70	се́мьдеся́тъ	семидеся́тый
80	во́семьдеся́тъ	восемидеся́тый
90	девяно́сто	девяно́стый
100	сто	со́тый
200	двѣсти	двухсо́тый
300	три́ста	трѣхсо́тый
400	четы́реста	четы́рехсо́тый
500	пятьсо́тъ	пятисо́тый
1,000	ты́сяча	ты́сячный
2,000	двѣ ты́сячи	двухты́сячный
5,000	пять ты́сячь	пяти́тысячный
10,000	де́сять ты́сячь	деся́титы́сячный
100,000	сто ты́сячь	сто́тысячный
1,000,000	милліо́нь	милліо́нный

§ 61. Declension and Use of the Numerals.

О́динъ is declined as follows:

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	о́динъ	о́дна	о́дно
G.	о́дногo	о́дно́й	о́дногo
D.	о́дному	о́дно́й	о́дному
A.	= N. or G.	о́дну	о́дно
I.	о́днимъ	о́дно́й	о́днимъ
L.	о́дно́мъ	о́дно́й	о́дно́мъ

	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N.	одни́		однѣ́
G.	одни́хъ		однѣ́хъ
D.	одни́мъ		однѣ́мъ
A.	= N. or G.		= N. or G.
I.	одни́ми		однѣ́ми
L.	одни́хъ		однѣ́хъ

The plural of *одинъ* is used in several ways, e. g.

одни́ другие́ = *some others*

однѣ́ да́мы = *ladies only*

мы одни́ { = (1) *only we*
= (2) *we [are] alone*

одни́ми рука́ми = *with the hands only*

but *одной* рука́й = *with one hand*

одни́ми слова́ми = *by words alone*

but *однимъ* слова́мъ = *in one word*

оди́нъ Бо́гъ зна́етъ = *God alone knows*

одно́ и то́-же = *one and the same thing*

однообра́зны́й = *monotonous*.

Одинъ, одна́, одно́ is used in all numbers compounded with 1 according to the gender of the substantive which follows, which is always in the nom. sing., e. g.

два́дцать оди́нъ го́дь = *twenty-one years*

со́рокъ оди́нъ ру́бль = *forty-one roubles*

ты́сяча и одна́ но́чь = *the thousand and one nights*.

два, двѣ́ = <i>two</i> .		оба́, обо́ѣ = <i>both</i> .				
Masc.	Neut.	Fem.		Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
N.	два	двѣ́		оба́		обо́ѣ
G.	двухъ́			обо́ихъ		обо́ихъ
D.	двумъ́			обо́имъ		обо́имъ
A.	= N. or G.			= N. or G.		
I.	двуми́			обо́ими		обо́ими
L.	двухъ́			обо́ихъ		обо́ихъ

три = *three*, четы́ре = *four*.

N.	три	четы́ре
G.	трёхъ	четырёхъ
D.	трёмъ	четырёхъ
A.	= N. or G.	= N. or G.
I.	тремѣ	четыремѣ
L.	трёхъ	четырёхъ

Substantives of any gender which follow два, три, and четы́ре, as well as all numerals compounded with these three, are invariably in the gen. sing., not in the nom. pl. The reason for this is that два originally took the dual and the nom. dual masc. ended in -а, i. e. was in appearance identical with the gen. sing. When the dual became obsolete the ending -а still continued to be used after два but came to be looked on as the gen. sing. Subsequently through analogical influence the gen. sing. of feminine nouns was used after двѣ, and also the gen. sing. of nouns of all genders came to be used after три and четы́ре as well as after два. The old dual is still apparent in the word двѣсти = 200; e. g.

два брата = *two brothers*

три стола́ = *three tables*

двѣ сестры́ = *two sisters* (nom. pl. = сёстры)

четы́ре села́ = *four villages* (nom. pl. = сѣла)

два́дцать два́ го́да = *twenty-two years*

сто три рублё́ = *one hundred and three roubles, &c.*

If an adjective comes between the numeral and the noun, it can be in either the nom. pl. or the gen. pl., not in the singular, as might be expected, e. g.

двѣ краси́выя (or краси́выхъ) дѣвочки́ = *two pretty little girls*

три больші́е (or больші́хъ) дома́ = *three large houses*.

The effect of putting the numeral after the noun is to make the former somewhat indefinite :

дня́ два = *about two days, two or three days*

го́да четы́ре = *about four years*.

Of course, if used in any other case but the nominative, both numeral and substantive, and when there is an adjective, that also, agree, the regular cases of the plural being used, e. g.

N. два ма́ленькіе ма́льчика́ = *two little boys*

G. двухъ ма́ленькихъ ма́льчиковъ = *of two little boys*

D. двумъ ма́ленькимъ ма́льчикамъ = *to „ „ „ &c.*

- N. три сестры́ = *three sisters*
 G. трёхъ сестёръ = *of* „
 D. трёмъ сёстрамъ = *to* „
 or сестра́мъ, &c.

As regards оба, обо́ the masc. and neut. take the gen. sing., but the fem. takes the nom. pl., hence :

оба брата́

оба селá (nom. pl. would be сёла)

but обо́ сёстры (gen. sing. would be сестры́).

Пять = *five*, and all numerals ending in -ъ up to and including тридцать :

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пять
G.	пяти́
D.	пяти́
A.	пять
I.	пятью́
L.	пяти́

N.B. во́семь has G. D. L. восьми́ and I. восьми́ю.

Пятьдеся́тъ = *fifty*, шестьдеся́тъ = *sixty*, семьдеся́тъ = *seventy*,
 во́семьдеся́тъ = *eighty* :

	Masc. Neut. Fem.
N.	пятьдеся́тъ
G.	пяти́десяти
D.	пяти́десяти
A.	пятьдеся́тъ
I.	пятью́десятью
L.	пяти́десяти

The numbers from пять onwards are really feminine nouns, equivalent for example to the French *une cinquaine*.

The numbers from 11-19 are composed of the single numerals and ten joined together by на = *on to*, e. g.

трина́дцать = три на деся́тъ = *three on to ten*.

Два́дцать and три́дцать are *two-tens* and *three-tens*.

In пятьдеся́тъ, шестьдеся́тъ, семьдеся́тъ and во́семьдеся́тъ the -деся́тъ is an old gen. pl. and пятьдеся́тъ might be translated in French *une cinquaine de dizaines*.

Сорокъ = *forty* (from the Greek τεσσαράκοντα) is declined like столъ, i. e.

- G. сорока
D. сорокѹ, &c.,

and девяносто = *ninety* and сто = *one hundred* are declined like a hard neuter noun except when followed by a noun, when they have only one ending for all the cases, viz. -а, e. g.

ста рублями = *with a hundred roubles.*

въ сорока случаяхъ = *in forty cases.*

Also when compounded with other numerals, e. g.

въ ста шестѣи домѣхъ = *in one hundred and six houses.*

Двѣсти = 200, триста = 300, четыреста = 400, пятьсотъ = 500, &c.

N.	двѣсти	триста	четыреста	пятьсотъ
G.	двухъ сотъ	трѣхъ сотъ	четырёхъ сотъ	пяти сотъ
D.	двумъстамъ	трѣмъстамъ	четыремъстамъ	пятистамъ
A.	= N. or G.			
I.	двумястами	тремястами	четырьмястами	пятьюстами
L.	двухъстахъ	трѣхъстахъ	четырёхъстахъ	пятистахъ

Тысяча is declined like a feminine noun in -ча

Singular.

Plural.

N.	тысяча	e. g. двѣ тысячи	пять тысячъ
G.	тысячи	двухъ тысячъ	пяти тысячъ
D.	тысячѣ	двумъ тысячамъ	пяти тысячамъ
A.	тысячу	= N. or G.	
I.	тысячей (also тысячью)	двумя тысячами	пятью тысячами
L.	тысячѣ	двухъ тысячахъ	пяти тысячахъ

милліонъ is declined like столъ, but with the accent fixed on the third syllable throughout.

The substantives which follow all numerals ending in -ъ from 5 onwards, except compounds of 1, 2, 3, and 4, such as 21, 32, 44, &c., provided the numerals are in the nom. or acc., are always in the gen. pl. The reason for this is that, as has already been stated, пять, &c., are really feminine substantives, and so the noun following is naturally put in the gen. pl. This can be seen in the word пятьдесятъ = 50, which is really a nom. sing. (пять) followed by a (now obsolete) gen. pl. (десять) and means *a five of tens*. If followed by any other cases than the nom. or acc. both numeral

and substantive agree, as in the case of два, три, &c. Besides the numerals which end in -ь, сорокъ = 40, сто = 100, двѣсти = 200, триста = 300, &c., тысяча = 1,000, and миллионъ come under the above rule, e. g.

пять рублёй = *five roubles*

десять дней = *ten days*

but N.B. съ пятью дѣтьми = *with five children.*

§ 62. Cardinal Numbers in Composition.

Одинъ makes одно-, e. g. однодворецъ = *freeholder (peasant).*

Два makes дву- and двух-, e. g. двуглавый = *double-headed*, двусмысленный = *ambiguous*, двухлѣтний = *two-year-old*, but двухэтажный = *two-storied (house)*, двухмѣстный = *having two seats*.

Три makes тре- in треугольный = *three-cornered*, otherwise трѣх-; e. g. трѣхлѣтний = *three-year-old*, трѣхрублёвый = *of three roubles*.

Четыре makes четверо- in четвероугольный = *four-cornered, square*, otherwise четырёх-; e. g. четырёхэтажный = *of four floors*.

All others end in -и, e. g. семилѣтняя война = *the seven years' war*.

Notice the forms : двоюродный братъ = *first cousin (masc.)*

двоюродная сестра = „ „ (fem.)

троюродный, &c. = *second cousin*.

For numerals in composition in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

§ 63. Ordinal Numbers.

The ordinal numbers are declined like attributive adjectives, второй, шестой, седьмой, восьмой, and сороковой like молодой, третій like рыбій, and the rest like бѣлый. The ordinals have no short or predicative form, hence

я первый = *I am the first.*

The following idiomatic uses of the ordinals may be observed :

во-первыхъ = *firstly, in the first place*

во-вторыхъ = *secondly*

во-третьихъ = *thirdly*

самъ-третій = *I and two others*

самъ-четвёртый = *I and three others.*

For the use of the ordinals in the expression of time, cf. § 68.

§ 64.

Distributive Numbers.

These are expressed by prefixing the preposition *по* to the cardinal numbers; два, три, четыре, and со́рокъ remain in the nom. and the following substantive in the gen. sing. or plur., but all the other numbers are put in the dat. with the substantive in the dat. after *одинъ* and in the gen. plur. after all the others, e.g.

онъ подарилъ намъ по одной книгѣ = *he gave us one book each*

у насъ по два, у васъ по три, а у нихъ по четыре собаки = *we have two, you have three, and they have four dogs each*

у обоихъ по пять лошадей = *they have both five horses each.*

For the use of the distributives in the expression of money-values, cf. § 69.

§ 65.

Multiplicative Numerals.

These are expressed as follows:

разъ	= <i>once</i> (lit. = <i>a blow</i>)
два раза	= <i>twice</i> (lit. = <i>two blows</i>)
три раза	= <i>thrice</i>
четыре раза	= <i>four times</i>
пять разъ	= <i>five times.</i>

шесть разъ, &c.; разъ is the old gen. plur. still used in a few phrases of this kind where it had become crystallized; the gen. plur. in -овъ originally belonged to only a few nouns, but became general gradually.

In counting (for games, music, &c.) the formula is: разъ, два, три, четыре = *one, two, three, four.*

The three words *о́днѣжды* = *once*, *двѣжды* = *twice*, and *трѣжды* = *thrice*, were borrowed from Old Bulgarian, but are almost obsolete; *о́днѣжды* is still sometimes used for *one fine day*, or *once upon a time*, but разъ or *о́динъ разъ* is more usual.

Notice the following idioms in which разъ occurs:

ско́лько разъ (gen. pl.) = *how many times, how often*

мно́го разъ (gen. pl.) = *many times*

не́сколько разъ (gen. pl.) = *several times*

сра́зу (gen. sing.) = *all at once, suddenly*

and especially the difference between:

не́разъ = *more than once*

e.g. я не́разъ говори́лъ . . . = *I have said more than once . . .*

и́ ни́ разу́ не . . . = *not once*

e.g. онъ ни́ разу́ не́-бы́лъ у насъ = *he has not once been at our house.*

The expression *twice as* is rendered by въ-двое with the comparative, e. g.

это вино въ-двое лучше того = *this wine is twice as good as that.*

ваше перо въ-трие дороже моего = *your pen is three times as dear as mine.*

For larger numbers it is more usual to turn it, e. g.

этотъ театръ въ тысячу разъ красивѣе чѣмъ тотъ = *this theatre is a thousand times more beautiful than that.*

Expressions such as *ten-fold*, used predicatively, are rendered by въ-десятеро, &c.

The adjectival multiplicatives :

двойной = *double, two-fold*,

тройной = *treble, three-fold*,

are quite common and are declined like молодой.

Simple = простой.

§ 66.

Collective Numerals.

These are used for the numbers from 2-8 and 10 :

2	двое	6	шестеро
3	трое	7	семеро
4	четверо	8	восьмеро
5	пятеро	10	десятеро

двое and трое are declined as follows :

N.	двое
G.	двоихъ
D.	двоимъ.
A.	= N. or G.
I.	двоими
L.	двоихъ

the others :

N.	четверо
G.	четверыхъ
D.	четверымъ
A.	= N. or G.
I.	четверыми
L.	четверыхъ

These numerals are especially common in phrases such as the following:

насъ трое = *there are three of us*, which also means *we three* (it would be impossible to say мы три), у меня четверо дѣтей = *I have four children*, ихъ было шестеро = *there were* (lit. was) *six of them*, and with nouns which are only used in the plural, e.g. сани = *sledge*, шестеро саней = *six sledges*, часы = *watch, clock*, трое часовъ = *three watches*. Notice сотня = 100 (often sc. *soldiers*).

N.B. въ-двоёмъ = *tête-à-tête*

въ троёмъ = *à trois*

пара (лошадей) = *a pair of horses*

тройка = *three horses abreast*

четвёрка = *four* „ „

Троица = *the Trinity*

дюжина = *a dozen*, but must only be used of things, never of people

десятокъ = *ten*, e.g. десятки тысячъ = *tens of thousands*

близнецы = *twins*.

Notice the curious idiom я самъ-другъ = *I and another*.

двойка = *deuce* (at cards)

семёрка = *seven*

тройка = *three*

восьмёрка = *eight*

четвёрка = *four*

девятка = *nine*

пятёрка = *five*

десятка = *ten*.

шестёрка = *six*

For the use of the collectives as multiplicatives cf. § 65.

§ 67.

Fractions.

Половина = *a half*, and is declined like a hard fem. noun, with the accent fixed on the third syllable.

$2\frac{1}{2}$ = два (or двѣ) съ половиной

$3\frac{1}{2}$ = три съ половиной, &c.

For $1\frac{1}{2}$ there is a special word:

полтора (made up of пол- and второ́й = *half-second*) for the masculine, and полторы for the feminine, e.g.

N. полтора фунта (gen. sing.) = $1\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

полторы сажени „ „ = $1\frac{1}{2}$ fathom.

For all the other cases the form полутора is used for both genders, the noun being declined in the plural, e.g. полутора фунтами.

150 = полторáста

N. полторáста

G. D. I. L. полѹтораста

Half in composition is treated as follows:N. полфѹнта = $\frac{1}{2}$ lb.

G. полуфѹнта

D. полуфѹнту

A. = N.

I. полуфѹнтомъ

L. полуфѹнтѣ

The plural is полуфѹнты, &c., like an ordinary hard masculine noun.

полрюмки = *half a wine-glass* would be declined similarly, but with the feminine substantival endings.

For полдень and полночь cf. § 68.

$\frac{1}{3}$ = треть, a feminine noun declined like лошадь but with the accent fixed on the first syllable;

$\frac{2}{3}$ = двѣ трѣти;

$\frac{1}{4}$ = чѣтверть, feminine, declined like треть;

$\frac{3}{4}$ = три чѣтверти.

Other fractions are expressed as follows:

$\frac{1}{5}$ = одна пѣтая (sc. часть = *part*);

$\frac{2}{5}$ = двѣ пѣтыхъ;

$\frac{3}{7}$ = три седьмыхъ.

§ 68.

Expression of Time.

Часъ = *hour* (N.B. часы = *watch* or *clock*)

what time is it? = который часъ?

at what hour...? = въ какомъ часу...? (cf. § 39, obs. 7)

1 o'clock = часъ (sc. первый = *first*)

at „ = въ часъ

1.15 = часъ съ чѣтвертью (= $1\frac{1}{4}$)

or чѣтверть второго (= $\frac{1}{4}$ of the 2nd)

1.5 = пять минутъ второго (= 5 min. of the 2nd)

1.30 = половина второго

or второго полови́на

at 1.30 = въ полови́ну второго

1.45	= безъ четверти два (= <i>without</i> $\frac{1}{4}$ 2)
at 1.45	= „ „ „ or въ часъ сорокъ пять
2 o'clock	= два часа́
at „	= въ два часа́
at about „	= часа́ въ два
2.10	= десять мину́тъ трѣтяго
2.30	= полови́на трѣтяго
3 o'clock	= три часа́
3.50	= безъ десяти́ (мину́тъ) четы́ре
4 o'clock	= четы́ре часа́
5 „	= пять часо́въ
10.30	= полови́на одиннадцатаго
12 o'clock	= двѣнадцатъ часо́въ
12.15	= четверть перваго
12.30	= полови́на перваго
12.45	= безъ четверти часъ
12.55	= безъ пяти́ (мину́тъ) часъ.

half-an-hour = полчаса́

2 hours = два часа́

$2\frac{1}{2}$ *hours* = два часа́ съ полови́ной

$1\frac{1}{2}$ *hour* = полтора́ часа́.

Notice especially the word *су́тки* (nom. pl. fem.) = *the 24 hours*,
a day and night, e. g.

трѣе су́токъ (gen. pl.) = *72 hours*

цѣлыя су́тки = *a whole 24 hours*

четы́ре су́токъ = *four days and nights*

пять су́токъ = *five „ „*

minute = мину́та

'one minute' = одну́ мину́ту, мину́точку

'this minute' = сию́ мину́ту

second = секун́да

this instant = сию́ секун́ду

or сей-часъ

in one minute = въ одну́ мину́ту

in five minutes = че́резъ пять мину́тъ

in two hours = че́резъ два часа́

N.B. *черезъ* can also give the meaning *every other*:

черезъ часъ = (1) *in an hour's time*

(2) *every other hour.*

Notice that:

about two hours } = *около двухъ часовъ*
about two o'clock }

every minute (incessantly) = *по-минутно*

полдень = *midday*

Gen. *полудня*

Loc. *полудни*

The phrase *по-полудни* = *after noon* is very common, as Russian has no single word for *afternoon*, e.g.

at 4 p.m. = *въ 4 ч. по-полудни*

in the afternoon = (1) *по-полудни*

(2) *днѣмъ* (inst. of *день*)

полночь = *midnight*

Gen. *полночи.*

N.B. *half-a-day* = *полднѣ*

half-a-night = *полночи*

daily (adj.) = *ежедневный*

(adv.) = *ежедневно.*

The days of the week are:

Воскресѣніе = *Sunday* (lit. = *resurrection*)

понедѣльникъ = *Monday* (= *after the holiday*)

вторникъ = *Tuesday* (cf. *второй*)

среда = *Wednesday* (= *centre*)

четвергъ = *Thursday* (cf. *четвёртый*)

пятница = *Friday* (cf. *пятый*)

суббота = *Saturday* (= *Sabbath*).

on Sunday = *въ Воскресѣніе*

on Monday = *въ понедѣльникъ*

N.B. *on Tuesday* = *во вторникъ*

on Wednesday = *въ среду*

on Thursday = *въ четвергъ*

on Friday = *въ пятницу*

on Saturday = *въ субботу*

on Sundays = *по Воскресѣніямъ, &c.*

<i>week</i>	= недѣля
<i>fortnight</i>	= двѣ недѣли
<i>this week</i>	= эту недѣлю
<i>every week</i>	= каждую недѣлю
<i>for a week</i>	= на недѣлю
<i>weekly</i>	= еженедѣльный.

Notice the idiom :

ту недѣлю	= <i>next week</i> or <i>last week</i> (lit. <i>that week</i>)
на той недѣлѣ	= „ „ (sc. <i>in</i> or <i>during</i> ...).

The months are :

январь	= <i>January</i>	іюль	= <i>July</i>
февраль	= <i>February</i>	августъ	= <i>August</i>
мартъ	= <i>March</i>	сентябрь	= <i>September</i>
апрѣль	= <i>April</i>	октябрь	= <i>October</i>
маі	= <i>May</i>	ноябрь	= <i>November</i>
іюнь	= <i>June</i>	декабрь	= <i>December</i>

they are all masculine.

in January = въ январѣ

in May = въ маѣ.

In the words for the first two and the last four months the accent is always on the ending, in the others it remains throughout where it is in the nominative.

<i>Month</i>	= мѣсяць
<i>monthly</i>	= ежемѣсячный
<i>the date</i>	= число
<i>Jan. 1st</i>	= первое января (sc. <i>число</i>)
<i>on Feb. 2nd</i>	= второго февраля (sc. <i>числа</i>)
<i>on March 3rd</i>	= третьяго марта
<i>of the fifth of April</i> (e. g. letter)	= отъ пятаго апрѣля
<i>on May 21st</i>	= двадцать-перваго маія
<i>on June 30th</i>	= тридцатаго іюня
<i>on July 31st</i>	= тридцать-перваго іюля
<i>what date is it to-day?</i>	= какое (отъ котораго) сегодня число?
<i>year</i>	= годъ
<i>half-year</i>	= полгода
<i>two years</i>	= два года
<i>three years</i>	= три года
<i>four years</i>	= четыре года

but <i>five years</i>	= пять лѣтъ (lit. = <i>summers</i>)
<i>six years</i>	= шесть лѣтъ
till <i>twenty-one years</i>	= двадцать-одинъ годъ
<i>twenty-two years</i>	= двадцать-два года
<i>twenty-five years</i>	= двадцать-пять лѣтъ
	&c.
how old are you?	= сколько вамъ лѣтъ?
<i>twenty-three</i>	= двадцать-три года
<i>this year</i>	= въ этомъ году
<i>last year</i>	= въ прошломъ году
<i>last year's</i>	= прошлогóдний
<i>next year</i>	= въ будущемъ году
<i>in the year 1899</i>	= въ тысяча восемь сотъ девяносто девятomъ году (i. e. only the last numeral is an ordinal)
<i>in the year 1914</i>	= въ (тысяча) девять сотъ четыр- надцатомъ году
<i>of the year 1900</i>	= тысяча девять сотого года
<i>the twenties</i>	= двадцатые годы
<i>of the thirties</i>	= тридцатыхъ годовъ
<i>in the forties</i>	= въ сороковыхъ годахъ

(but only of historical periods, not of personal age)

century = (1) вѣкъ
(2) столѣtie.

Ago is expressed in two ways: (1) by *за* with the acc., e. g.

за два года = *two years ago*

or (2) by *тому назадъ* (= *to it back*), e. g.

пять лѣтъ *тому назадъ* = *five years ago*

in a year's time = *черезъ годъ*

every other year = (1) *черезъ годъ*

(2) *каждые два года*

every year

= *каждый годъ*

yearly

= *ежегодный*

Время

= *Time*

со временемъ

= *in time, gradually*

время отъ времени

= *from time to time*

во время (+ gen.)

= *during*

во-время

= *in time* (sc. *punctually*)

пора́	= <i>it is time</i>
пора́ми	= <i>at times</i>
поро́й	= „
съ тѣхъ поръ	= <i>from that time on</i>
до тѣхъ поръ	= <i>till then</i>
до сихъ поръ	= <i>till now</i>
съ какихъ поръ ?	= <i>since when ?</i>
but въ-по́ру	= <i>it fits (of clothes, &c.)</i>
не въ-по́ру	= <i>it does not fit.</i>

§ 69.

Expression of money-values.

Полти́нникъ	= $\frac{1}{2}$ rouble (= 50 kopeks)
ру́бль	= a rouble (= 1s. 11d.)
полтора́ рубля́	= $1\frac{1}{2}$ rouble
два рубля́	= 2 roubles
два съ полти́ной	= $2\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
пять ру́блей	= 5 roubles
пять съ полти́ной	= $5\frac{1}{2}$ roubles
копѣ́йка	= a kopek (= $\frac{1}{4}$ d.) ¹
два́ копѣ́йки	= 2 kopeks
пять копѣ́екъ	= 5 kopeks

60 kopeks = шестьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or шесть гривенъ

70 „ = се́мьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or се́мь гривенъ

80 „ = во́семьдеся́тъ копѣ́екъ

or во́семь гривенъ.

The following are the colloquial names of the current coins and notes:

пята́къ	= 5 kopeks (copper)
пята́чокъ	= „ (nickel)
гриве́нникъ	= 10 „ „
пятина́лты́нный	= 15 „ (nickel ; алты́нь = 3 kopeks)
двугриве́нникъ	= 20 „ „
полти́на	= 50 „ (silver)
цѣ́лковый } (or ру́бль)	= 1 rouble „

¹ Also spelt копѣ́йка, gen. pl. копѣ́екъ.

трёхрублёвая бума́жка	= 3-rouble note
пятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 5-rouble note
ог синенькая (<i>little blue</i>)	
десятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 10 " "
ог красненькая (<i>little red</i>)	
двадцатипятирублёвая бума́жка	} = 25 " "
столублёвая бума́жка	} = 100 " "
ог радужная (<i>rainbow</i>)	
однокопёчная ма́рка	= a 1-kopek stamp
двух————— „	= a 2-kopek „
трёх————— „	= a 3-kopek „
четырёх————— „	= a 4-kopek „
семь————— „	= a 7-kopek „
десяти————— „	= a 10-kopek „

The preposition *по* followed by a numeral = *at . . .*; the numerals are in the dat., or acc., cf. § 61:

двѣ ма́рки по одной копѣйкѣ	= two 1-kopek stamps
пять ма́рок по-двѣ копѣйки	= five 2-kopek „
десять ма́рок по-семь копѣекъ	= ten 7-kopek „
(ог десять семи́копѣчныхъ ма́рокъ, &c.).	

The question *at what price?* is expressed by the idiom *по-чѣмъ?* e. g.

по-чѣмъ э́ти галстуки? = *at what price* (sc. *how much*) (*are*) *these neckties?*

по-два ру́бли = *two roubles each*

по-пяти ру́блей = *five roubles each*.

For the use of the preposition *въ* with similar meaning cf. § 65.

THE ADVERB

§ 70. The adverb is generally the same as the nominative singular neuter of the predicative adjective, e. g.

ми́лый	ми́лая	ми́лое	= nice; attributive form
ми́ль	ми́ла	ми́ло	= „ predicative form
		ми́ло	= nicely
хоро́ший	хоро́шая	хоро́шее	= good, nice

хоро́шь хороша́ хорошо́ = *good, nice*
 хорошо́ = *well; all right.*

Similarly: пло́хо = *badly*
 ду́рно = „
 скве́рно = „
 нехорошо́ = „ &c.

Soft adjectives form the adverb with -e instead of -o, e. g.

кра́йний = *extreme* кра́йне = *extremely*
 и́скренний = *sincere* и́скренне = *sincerely*

but many of them take -o like the hard adjectives, e. g.

ра́нный = *early* ра́но = *early* (adv.)
 по́здний = *late* по́здно = *late* (adv.)
 да́вный = *former* да́вно = *long ago*

и́скренний also makes и́скренно.

Owing to the fact that the present tense of the verb *to be* is almost quite obsolete in Russian, the adverb is very frequently used as an impersonal verb forming a sentence by itself, e. g.

ра́но = *it is early* (often = *too early*)

по́здно = *it is late* (often = *too late*)

жа́рко = *it is hot*

те́пло = *it is warm*

блѝзко = *it is near*

высоко́ = *it is high*

хорошо́, что вы пришѝли = *it is well (or nice) that you have come*

возмо́жно, что онѝ придѝтъ = *it is possible, that he will come*

невозмо́жно, чтобы онѝ пришѝлъ = *it is impossible, that he should come.*

Several adverbs can be accented in two ways, each equally correct, e. g.

те́мно or те́мно = *it is dark*

холо́дно or хо́лодно = *it is cold*

далеко́ or дале́ко = *it is far*

глубо́ко or глѝбо́ко = *it is deep* (also = *deeply* figuratively).

Adjectives in -ский form the adverb by changing -ский into -ски, e. g.

и́ронический = *ironical*

и́ронически = *ironically*

similarly : поэтически = *poetically*
 дружески = *in a friendly way, warmly*
 хронически = *chronically, &c.*

The preposition *по-* prefixed to such adverbs gives the meaning *in the manner of*:

по-приятельски = *in a friendly way*
 по-москóвски = *in Moscow fashion*

and if the adverb is one formed from the name of a nationality it can also mean *in . . .*, e. g.

по-ру́сски = *in Russian*
 по-а́нглийски = *in English*
 по-не́мецки = *in German*
 по-фра́нцузски = *in French*

e. g. я уме́ю по-ру́сски or я говорю́ по-ру́сски = *I can (sc. talk) Russian, or I talk Russian*

я не понимаю́ по-не́мецки = *I don't understand German.*

Notice the idiom:

что по-како́вски? = *in what language is that?*

Otherwise adverbial expressions with *по-* are formed by using the dative singular of the adjective or pronoun, e. g.

по-но́вому = *in modern fashion*
 по-ста́рому = *in old fashion*
 по-сво́ему = *in one's own way*
 по-мо́ему = *in my own way or in my opinion*
 по-ва́шему = *in your way or in your opinion*
 по-во́енному = *in military fashion.*

Cf. also § 73.

§ 71.

Adverbs of Place.

здесь	}	= <i>here</i>
ту́ть ¹		
та́мъ	}	= <i>there</i>
вездѣ		
(по)всю́ду ¹	}	= <i>everywhere</i>
гдѣ		
нигдѣ	}	= <i>nowhere</i>

¹ Rather colloquial than literary.

е. г. НИГДѢ НѢТЬ МѢСТА = *there is no place (or room) anywhere*

НИГДѢ НИКОГО НѢТЬ = *there is no one anywhere*

НѢГДѢ = *there is nowhere to . . .*

е. г. НѢГДѢ СѢСТЬ = *there is no place to sit down*

ГДѢ-ТО = *somewhere, in a certain place* (sc. *I don't remember where,*

I don't know where, or I don't wish to say where)

е. г. ОНѢ ГДѢ-ТО ВЪ РОССІИ = *he is somewhere in Russia*

ГДѢ-НИБУДЬ = *somewhere, anywhere*

е. г. ОНѢ ПРОВЕДѢТЬ ЗИМУ ГДѢ-НИБУДЬ ЗА-ГРАНИЦЕЙ = *he will spend the winter somewhere abroad*

ГДѢ-БЫ ТО НІ БЫЛО = *wherever you like*

ТАМЪ И СЯМЪ = *here and there.*

The adverbs *hither*, &c., are far more frequently used in Russian than in English; in English we say *I am going there*, but in Russian always *I am going thither*; in English *where have you put my book?* but in Russian *whither*, &c.; in English *where did you get that hat?* but in Russian *whence*, &c.

СЮДА = *hither*

е. г. ПОЙДИ СЮДА = *come here*

ТУДА = *thither*

е. г. Я ИДУ ТУДА = *I am going there*

КУДА = *whither*

е. г. КУДА ВЫ ПОЛОЖИЛИ МОЮ КНИГУ? = *where have you put my book?*

НИКУДА = *nowhither*

е. г. Я НИКУДА НЕ ИДУ = *I am not going anywhere*

НѢКУДА = *there is no place whither*

е. г. НѢКУДА ИТТИ = *there is nowhere to go to*

КУДА-ТО = *somewhither*

е. г. ОНѢ КУДА-ТО УШѢЛЪ = *he has gone off somewhere*

КУДА-НИБУДЬ = *somewhither*

е. г. ПОЙДЕМЪ КУДА-НИБУДЬ = *let's go somewhere (anywhere)*

КУДА-БЫ ТО НІ БЫЛО = *whithersoever*

ОТСЮДА = *hence*

е. г. ОТСЮДА ДО МОСКВЫ ДАЛЕКО = *from here to Moscow it is far*

ОТТУДА = *thence*

е. г. ОТТУДА ДО НАСЪ ПЯТЬ ВѢРСТЪ = *it is five versts from there to us*

откуда = whence

e.g. вы откуда? = where do you come from?

откуда-то = somewhere

откуда-нибудь = somewhere

e.g. достаньте откуда-нибудь = get from somewhere (no matter where)

откуда-бы то ни было = whencesoever.

Notice the following very idiomatic uses of где and куда, e.g.

где мне это сделать! = I shall never be able to do that!

где вам! = how can you think of it!

этот город куда больше того = this town is ever so much bigger than that

это вино хоть куда = this wine is simply splendid

где . . . , где . . . = in one place . . . , in another . . .

Notice: наверх = up above, sc. upstairs

вниз = down below, sc. downstairs

вверх = up(wards)

вниз = down(wards)

снаружи = outside, outwardly

внутри = inside, inwardly.

§ 72.

Adverbs of Time.

теперь = now

тогда = then

всегда = always

когда = when

никогда = never

e.g. никогда не ем мяса = I never eat meat

никогда = there is no time to . . .

e.g. мне теперь некогда! = I've no time for that now!

некогда = formerly, sometime

иногда = at times, sometimes

когда-то = formerly, a long time ago (sc. I don't remember exactly when)

e.g. он когда-то был женат = he was married once (sc. his wife is now dead or has disappeared)

когда-нибудь = some time

e.g. загляните к нам когда-нибудь! = look us up some time or other

когда-бы то ни было = *whenever you like*

сначала = *at first*

наконѣцъ = *at last*

уже = *already*

нѣтъ ещё } = *not yet*

ещё не }

уже нѣтъ, уже не = *no longer*

e. g. его уже нѣтъ здѣсь = *he is already gone, he is no longer here*

наконѣцъ = *at last*

ужо, потомъ = *later on*

скоро = *soon, quickly*

снова, опять = *again*

по-скорѣе = *as quickly as possible, hurry up!*

долго = *a long time*

онъ долго не идѣтъ = *he is a long time in coming*

давно } = *long ago, long since*

давнимъ-давно }

сей-часъ } = *immediately*

тотъ-часъ }

сю мину́ту }

третьяго дня = *the day before yesterday*

вчера = *yesterday*

сегодня = *to-day*

завтра = *to-morrow*

послѣ-завтра = *the day after to-morrow.*

§ 73.

Adverbs of Manner.

такъ = *thus*

какъ = *how, as, like*

никакъ = (1) *in no wise, by no means*

e. g. никакъ нѣтъ = *not at all*

никакъ нельзя = *it is quite out of the question,*

as an interrogative conjunction:

= (2) *perhaps, as likely as not*

никакъ онъ придѣтъ = *perhaps he will come.*

The following also is used more as an interrogative conjunction:

некакъ = *I expect, as likely as not*

некакъ идутъ = *I think they're coming*

некакъ приходить кто-то ? = *has any one been ?*

какъ-то = *somehow, sort of, somehow or other*

e. g. мнѣ какъ-то не хочется = *somehow or other (I can't explain why) I don't want to*

это странно какъ-то = *it's queer somehow*

какъ-то can also mean *for instance*, and is used as an alternative for the expression какъ напри^мѣръ = *as for example*;

какъ-нибудь = *somehow or other, by hook or by crook*

e. g. устройте это какъ-нибудь = *arrange this (matter) by some means or other*

пріѣзжайте къ намъ какъ-нибудь лѣтомъ = *come and see us in the summer if you possibly can*

это надо сдѣлать какъ-нибудь = *(we) must do this somehow or other*

какъ-бы то ни было = *however that may be*

иначе (or иначе) = *otherwise, differently*

это надо устроить иначе = *this must be arranged differently*

учись хорошенько, иначе тебя накажутъ = *learn your lesson well, otherwise they'll punish you*

не такъ = *differently*, but very often sc. *wrong* (adv.); although there is a word for *incorrectly*, viz. неправильно, the most common way of saying *wrong* is не такъ, e. g.

вы не такъ сдѣлали = *you have done it wrong*

онъ не такъ поѣхалъ = *he has taken the wrong road*

вы не такъ сказали = *you have said it wrong*

я не такъ понялъ его = *I misunderstood him*

though of course the same expression is often used to mean *not thus literally*.

Notice the very common adverbs:

вдругъ = *suddenly*

постепенно } = *gradually*
мало-по-малу }

напрасно = *in vain* (often sc. *it is a pity that*)

нарочно = *on purpose*

нечаянно = *unintentionally*

случайно = *accidentally*

особенно = *especially*

вообщѣ = *in general*

именно = *namely*

дѣйствительно = *actually, in very fact, indeed*

конечно = *of course*

навѣрно = *surely, certainly*

слѣдовательно = *consequently*

непремѣнно = *without fail*

безпрестанно = *incessantly*

включительно = <i>inclusively</i>	обыкновенно = <i>usually</i>
исключительно = <i>exclusively</i>	необыкновенно } = <i>unusually, un-</i>
безусловно = <i>absolutely</i>	чрезвычайно } <i>commonly</i>

and the idioms:

такъ и сякъ = *this way and that*

ни такъ ни сякъ = *neither this way nor that*

такъ себѣ = *so-so, fairly, middling*

ничего = „ „ „

такъ = *gratis, for nothing, for fun*

я это только такъ сказалъ = *I didn't mean it*

такъ точно = *just so* (often used by servants = *yes*)

точно такъ = *just like that*

точно = (1) *it is just as if*

онъ точно въ неё влюблёнъ = *one would think he was in love with her*

= (2) *really, truly, exactly*

у меня собака точно такая = *I've got a dog just like that*

ровно = *exactly*

ровно въ два часа = *exactly at two o'clock.*

Cf. also § 70.

Note on the use of *то* after adverbs of place, time, and manner.

It should be mentioned that *то* is often used enclitically after interrogative adverbs, not to express indefiniteness, but merely as an expletive, as much as *to* say, *I wonder*, e. g.

гдѣ-то онѣ теперь! = *I wonder where they are now!*

когда-то мы увидимся! = *I wonder when we shall meet again!*

какъ-то онъ устроится! = *I wonder how he'll settle his affairs!*

After definitive adverbs its use implies *surprise*, e. g.

теперь-то я понимаю! = *now I understand!*

такъ-то вы поняли меня! = *is it thus that you understood me!* (i. e. *thought what I meant*).

§ 74. Adverbs of Degree and Quantity.

много	= <i>much</i>
немного	} = <i>little</i>
dimin. немножко	
мало	

e. g. дайте мнѣ немного вина (gen.) = *give me a little wine*

ещё немножко? = *a little more?*

это мало! = *that's little* (sc. *too little*)!

это много! = *that's much* (sc. *too much*)!

въ этой книгѣ мало хорошаго = *in this book there's but little good*

у меня немного денегъ = *I have a little money* (with emphasis on денегъ)

у меня немного денегъ }
у меня денегъ немного } = *I have but little money*
у меня мало денегъ }
(with emphasis on немного)

(for the declension of the plural *много*, &c., cf. § 54, obs. 9)

сколько = *as much, how much*

сколько это стоитъ? = *how much does this cost?*

я помогаю ему, сколько могу = *I help him as much as I can*

только = *so much*

онъ былъ столько разъ у меня, что наконецъ онъ мнѣ надоѣлъ =
he has been so many times to see me, that at last I've got sick of him

сколько головъ, столько умовъ = *so many heads, so many minds*

только = *only*

не только = *not only*.

Notice the idioms:

да и только }
только и всего } = *and that's all*

не хочу, да и только = *I don't want to, and that's all about it*

нисколько = *not in the least* (always with the negative repeated)

я нисколько не хочу = *I don't want to in the least*

сколько-нибудь = *at all*

если онъ сколько-нибудь порядочный человекъ = *if he is at all a decent fellow*

несколько = *some, a few, somewhat*

несколько разъ = *several times*

„ рублей = *a few roubles*

у него несколько дѣтей = *he has several children*

эта шляпа несколько дороже = *this hat is rather dearer*

гораздо = *ever so much*

это изданіе гораздо дешевле = *this edition is ever so much cheaper*

довольно }
достаточно } = *enough, fairly*

довольно денегъ = *enough money*

ДОВОЛЬНО ХОЛОДНО = *it is fairly cold.*

(N.B. *not enough* is usually expressed by *мáло*, e.g. *мáло дéнегъ* = *not enough money*)

больше = more

у него́ больше́ книгъ, чѣмъ у меня́ = *he has more books than I*

бóльше всего = *most of all*

по-бóльше = *a good lot, rather more*

да́йте мнѣ по-бо́льше (+ gen.) = *give me a good lot of . . .*

мéньше (with gen.) = *less*

мѣньше всего = *least of all*

по-мѣньше (with gen.) = *as little as possible*

скорѣе = *rather* (sc. *sooner*)

я скорѣе дамъ вамъ, чѣмъ ему = *I would rather give (lit. shall give) it to you than to him*

слишкомъ } = *too, excessively*
черезчуръ }

ЭТО СЛИШКОМЪ МНОГО = *that is too much*

ЭТО СЛИШКОМЪ МАЛО = *that is too little*

(N.B. *never* with **немного**)

СЛИШКОМЪ = *more than, above* (lit. = *with excess*)

ЕМУ СЛИШКОМЪ СОРОКЪ ЛѢТЬ = *he is over forty*

очень = *very, very much*

весьма́ = *very, quite*

она́ очень ми́лая = *she is very nice*

я её́ очень люблю́ = *I like her very much*

я очень хочу = *I want to very much*

у него́ очень {много} денегъ = he has {a great deal of} money
 {мало} {very little}

(N.B. *never* with *немного*)

ВО ВСЕ НЕ = *not in the least*

я вóвсе не хочú = *I don't in the least want to*

почти (что) = *almost*

ПОЧТІ ТЕМНО́ = *it is nearly dark*

я почти что упалъ = *I nearly fell down*

далекó не
совсѣмъ не } = *far from, not nearly, not at all*

онъ далекó не богáтый челоуѣкъ = *he is far from being a rich man*

я совсѣмъ не понимаю = *I don't understand at all*

совсѣмъ = *quite*

мнѣ совсѣмъ удобно = *I'm quite comfortable*

не совсѣмъ = *not quite*

вполнѣ, сполна, сполонъ = *entirely*

едва, еле, еле-эле, чуть, чуть-чуть = *scarcely, with difficulty*

онъ едва умѣетъ писать = *he scarcely knows how to write*

она еле-эле ходить = *she walks with the greatest difficulty*

едва не, чуть не, чуть-чуть не = *almost*

меня едва не убили = *they almost killed me*

она чуть-чуть не упала = *she very nearly fell down*

(чуть-чуть alone means the tiniest bit)

по крайней мѣрѣ = *at least*.

Note on the Degrees of Comparison of Adverbs.

The comparative of the adverb is exactly the same as the predicative comparative of the adjective, e. g.

лучше = *better* (adj. and adv.)

хуже = *worse* „ „

Specifically adverbial forms are :

болѣе = *more* } cf. §§ 57, 84.
мѣнѣе = *less* }

Notice :

болѣе или мѣнѣе = *more or less*

ни болѣе ни мѣнѣе = *neither more nor less*

and the superlative forms :

наиболѣе = *(the) most* (adv.)

наимѣнѣе = *(the) least* (adv.)

всего мѣнѣе = *anything rather than*.

Comparatives preceded by *по-* are commonly used adverbially, e. g.

по-выше = *higher up* (sc. a little higher)

по-ниже = *lower down*

по-дальше = *further along*

по-ближе = *rather closer*

and cf. p. 87.

PARTICLES AND CONJUNCTIONS

§ 75.

и = and;

often used to emphasize the preceding word, or with the meaning *just, moreover*, e. g.

я такъ и думалъ! = *I thought as much!*

этого и недоставало = *it was just this that was wanting* (= *this is the last straw*)

въ томъ-то и дѣло = *that's just the point*

я и говорить ему . . . = *moreover I had told him . . .*, followed by
не = *not in the least*

я и не хотѣлъ = *I didn't in the least want to, or what's more I didn't want to.*

In some cases, when things are mentioned in couples, да = *and*,
e. g. мужъ да жена = *husband and wife.*

It is important to notice that expressions such as *you and I* are always introduced by мы = *we*, e. g.

мы съ вами = *you and I*

мы съ нимъ = *he and I*

мы съ сестрой = *my sister and I.*

Any antithesis can be introduced by а, e. g.

онъ хочетъ, а я не хочу = *he wants to, but I don't* (or *and I don't*).

It can usually be rendered by the English *but* or *while*, but very often it begins a sentence and corresponds to our *now* or *and*; it takes the place of и (= *and*) whenever any antithesis is to be indicated.

да
но } = *but*

this indicates stronger antithesis than а; still stronger are

однако
однакоже } = *nevertheless*

всѣтаки = *however, after all*

-таки can be added as an enclitic to words in the sentence, e. g.

онъ такъ поставилъ на своёмъ = *he (sc. in spite of everything) would have his own way*

или = *or*

вѣдь = *for, for you know that*

usually used as an expostulation at the beginning of a sentence, e. g.

вѣдь вы знали, что я не хочу = *now look here, you knew that I didn't want to*

и — и — = *both — and —*

ни — ни — = *neither — nor —*

какъ — такъ и — = *both — and —*

или — или — = *either — or —*

итакъ = *and so*

(usually used in drawing an inference)

также } = *also*
тоже }

даже = *even*

ещё = *still*

вотъ = *this is . . . , here is . . . , there is . . .*
(like French *voici, voilà*).

§ 76. Questions and Answers (cf. § 49).

These are introduced either by some interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by the use of the interrogative particle -ли, e. g.

кто вы? = *who are you?*

вы-ли это? = *is this you?*

дома-ли баринъ? = *is the gentleman at home?*

In ordinary conversation the -ли is often omitted, the question being indicated by raising the voice at the end of the sentence. Что is often used at the beginning of a question instead of -ли, e. g.

что мы поѣдемъ? = *shall we go?*

This same question could be put in the following ways:

а что, мы поѣдемъ?

поѣдемъ, что-ли?

If a negative answer is expected *развѣ* is very often used, e. g.

развѣ вы знаете его? = *you don't know him, do you?*

If an affirmative answer is expected, use *развѣ* не, e. g.

развѣ вы меня не узнали? = *didn't you recognize me?*

развѣ вы не хотите? = *do you mean to say you don't want to?*

Incredulity and amazement are expressed by неужели, e. g.

неужели это правда! = *can this possibly be true!*

Doubt by вряд-ли

вряд-ли это такъ = *I doubt whether this is so.*

-ли — или — = *whether — or —*

я не знаю, умерь-ли или нѣтъ = *I don't know whether he is dead or not.*

The affirmative answer is

да = *yes*, and the negative нѣтъ = *no*,

but as often as not a question can be answered by repeating a word contained in the question, e. g.

знаете-ли вы его? — знаю — = *do you know him? — yes, I do.*

дома-ли барыня? — дома = *is the lady at home? — yes.*

Other common expressions are:

конечно = *of course*

ещё-бы! = *I should say so!*

§ 77.

Negations.

In negative sentences the negative particle не always comes immediately before the verb if the whole sentence is negated, but before any particular word if that word only is negated, e. g.

я не люблю его = *I don't like him*

я люблю не его, а её = *I like her, not him.*

The object, when directly governed by the negative, is always in the genitive, e. g.

онъ не любитъ своей жены = *he doesn't love his wife*
(but cf. § 81).

If a sentence contains any negative pronoun, adverb, or the conjunction ни — ни —, the negative particle не must be added; two negatives in Russian do not make an affirmative, e. g.

никого не вижу = *I can see no one*

ничего не хочу = *I don't want anything*

я никакъ не ожидать — = *I didn't in the least expect —*

. There is not = нѣтъ

which always requires the genitive, e. g.

нѣтъ надежды = *there is no hope*

дома никого нѣтъ = *there is nobody at home*

Is there not? = нѣтъ-ли?

§ 78.

Subordinative Conjunctions.

чтобы = *in order that*чтобы не = *lest*если = *if*хотя = *although*когда = *when*пока = *while*

&c.

(for the use of these cf. §§ 102-5)

(как) будто	} = <i>as it were, as though</i> ;
будто-бы	
яко-бы	

these are very commonly used in reporting facts, incidents, or speeches of doubtful authenticity or credibility, e. g.

онъ какъ будто не хочетъ = *I fancy he doesn't want to*онъ говорить будто не хочетъ = *he makes out he doesn't want to*она́ будто-бы нездорова = *she is supposed to be unwell.*

Other particles used colloquially are

авось = *may be*небось = *I expect*

моль	} = <i>says he, said he</i> (in quoting another's words)
дэска́ть	

which are all very commonly used by the people, but not much in society or literature.

The particle -сь is often affixed to the last word of any sentence, especially by servants and shopkeepers and subordinate officials when addressing employers, customers, or superiors, to indicate subservience; it is supposed to be an abbreviation of the words сударь = *sir* and сударыня = *madam*.

THE PREPOSITIONS AND THE USE OF THE CASES WITH AND WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

§ 79. Alphabetical list of prepositions:

безъ (безо)	= <i>without</i>	Gen.
близъ (близь)	= <i>near</i>	Gen.
вдоль	= <i>down</i>	Gen.
вмѣсто	= <i>instead of</i>	Gen.
внутри	= <i>inside</i>	Gen.

внѣ	= <i>outside</i>	Gen.
вѡзлѣ	= <i>alongside</i>	Gen.
вѡкрѹтъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
вѡпрекѣ	= <i>against</i>	Dat.
въ (во)	= <i>in, into</i>	Acc. Loc.
для	= <i>for</i>	Gen.
до	= <i>up to</i>	Gen.
за	= <i>for, behind</i>	Acc. Inst.
изъ	= <i>out of</i>	Gen.
изъ-за	= <i>from out, from behind, because of</i>	Gen.
изъ-подъ	= <i>from under</i>	Gen.
крѡмѣ	= <i>besides, except</i>	Gen.
крутомъ	= <i>around</i>	Gen.
къ (ко)	= <i>to</i>	Dat.
мѣжду	= <i>between</i>	Gen. Inst.
мимо	= <i>past</i>	Gen.
на	= <i>on, on to</i>	Acc. Loc.
надъ (надо)	= <i>above</i>	Inst.
о (объ, обо)	= <i>about, against</i>	Acc. Loc.
около	= <i>around, about, near</i>	Gen.
отъ (ото)	= <i>away from</i>	Gen.
пѣредъ (передо, предъ, предо)	= <i>in front of</i>	Acc. Inst.
по	= <i>according to, along, till</i>	Acc. Dat. Loc.
пѡдлѣ	= <i>alongside of</i>	Gen.
пѡзадѣ (пѡзѣдъ)	= <i>behind</i>	Gen.
пѡсредѣ	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
пѡслѣ	= <i>after</i>	Gen.
пѡдъ (подо)	= <i>under</i>	Acc. Inst.
при	= <i>in the presence of, at, near</i>	Loc.
про	= <i>about</i>	Acc.
прѡтивъ	= <i>against</i>	Gen.
ради	= <i>for the sake of</i>	Gen.
сверхъ	= <i>over</i>	Gen.
сквозъ	= <i>through</i>	Acc.
среди	= <i>in the midst of</i>	Gen.
съ (со)	= <i>with, from</i>	Acc. Gen. Inst.
у	= <i>at the house of, near, in the posses- sion of</i>	Gen.
черезъ, чрезъ	= <i>through, across, over</i>	Acc.

§ 80.

The Nominative.

The nominative is used, as in other languages, for the subject and the predicate of the sentence, e. g.

я твой отецъ = I [am] thy father

though under certain conditions the predicate is in the instrumental, cf. § 84.

The nominative is used for the vocative, except in the three instances mentioned in § 89, e. g.

отецъ мой! = oh, my father!

за + nom.

The nominative is always used after the preposition за = for in phrases such as :

что это за книга? = what book is that? what sort of a book is that? (lit. = what this for book). Cf. German: was ist das für ein Buch?

though when the nom. is the same as the acc. it is not apparent that it is the nom., e. g.

что это за домъ? = what house is that?

§ 81.

The Genitive.

The genitive is used to denote :

(1) Possession, e. g.

домъ отца = the house of the father

though in this sense it is often replaced by the possessive adj., q. v.

(2) Qualities, e. g.

мальчикъ хорошаго характера = a boy of good character

человѣкъ пожилыхъ лѣтъ = a man of advanced years.

(3) Partition, e. g.

я хочу воды = I want (some) water

хлѣба, пожалуйста! = (some) bread, please!

кусокъ мяса = a piece of meat

often with the meaning of a lot after impersonal verbs :

накопилось писемъ = (a lot) of letters has accumulated.

(4) Quantity, e. g.

стаканъ чаю = a glass of tea (tea in Russia is usually drunk out of glasses)

фунтъ сахара = *a pound of sugar*

масса людей = *a mass (crowd) of people*

after adverbs of quantity, e. g.

много дѣтей = *many children*

мало друзей = *few friends*

немного (dim. немножко) мяса = *a little meat*

нѣсколько лѣтъ = *some years*

for the gen. in -у cf. § 39; for the other adverbs of quantity, and also for their adjectival forms and use, cf. § 74.

(5) After the numerals 5-20, 25-30, 35-40, &c., cf. § 63.

(6) Time in certain expressions:

сегодня = *to-day* (lit. = *of this day*)

перваго марта = *on the first of March* (= *of the first*).

(7) Comparison:

онъ слабѣе меня = *he [is] weaker than I*.

(8) The genitive is always used after certain verbs:

бояться } = *to fear*
опасаться }

избѣгать = *to avoid*

желать = *to wish* (when an indefinite quantity is implied)

хотѣть = *to desire* („ „ „)

искать = *to seek*

просить = *to beg*

ждать } = *to await, expect*
дожидаться }

стоить = *to cost* (except in quotations of prices)

лишать = *to deprive*

касаться = *to touch, concern*

держаться = *to keep to*.

Examples:

я боюсь моря = *I am afraid of the sea*

хотите-ли вы вина = *would you like some wine?* but я хочу

эту книгу (= acc.) = *I want this book*

желаю вамъ счастливаго пути! = *I wish you a good journey!*

(желаю вамъ) всего хорошаго (лучшаго)! (*I wish you*) *everything good (best)*! (A very common phrase on saying good-bye or ending a letter.)

я ищу квартиры = *I am looking for a flat*
 жду вашего приезда = *I am awaiting your arrival*
 стоило его жизни = *it cost his life* (but in prices the nom.
 is used)
 что касается васъ = *this concerns you*
 что касается меня = *as far as I am concerned*

notice the idiom :

милости просимъ! = *please come and see us* (lit. = *we crave mercy*, a very common form of general invitation).

(9) After certain adjectives in the shorter or attributive form :

пóлoнь = *full*
 вагoнь пóлoнь людéй = *the railway-carriage is full of people*
 дoстóинъ = *worthy*
 oнá дoстóйна eгó = *she is worthy of him.*

(10) In negative sentences the direct object is always in the genitive, e. g.

я не вижу вашего дома = *I do not (= cannot) see your house*
 онъ не слышитъ моего голоса = *he does not hear my voice*
 я не знаю вашей сестры = *I don't know your sister.*

One meets with apparent exceptions to this rule, when the object is not directly governed by the negative, but they are only apparent, e. g.

я не могу читать эту книгу = *I cannot read this book*
 but
 я не читалъ этой книги = *I have not read this book.*

The genitive is also used after

нѣтъ = *there is not (il n'y a pas)*
 не бѣдетъ = *there will not be*
 нѣ-было = *there was not*
 у меня нѣтъ денегъ = *I have no money* (lit. = *to me there is no money*)
 сегодня не бѣдетъ представлénия = *to-day there will be no performance*
 не бѣдетъ дождя = *there will be no rain*
 нѣ-было ничегó = *there was nothing*
 нѣ-было морóза = *there was no frost.*

(11) The genitive is used instead of the accusative in the singular and plural of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ь, -й, and

in the plural of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я when they denote things that are or were animate, e. g.

я вижу солдата = *I see a soldier*

онъ знаетъ отца = *he knows the father*

я люблю собакъ = *I am fond of dogs*

The old accusative which was the same as the nominative is used in a few phrases which became crystallized before the introduction of this use of the genitive. Cf. § 83.

(12) Notice the idioms:

дома = *at home*

мало того что . . . = *far from . . .*

The genitive is used after the following prepositions:

безъ = *without*

безъ меня = *without me, in my absence*

безо всего = *without anything*

notice безъ того, чтобы не сказать вамъ = *without telling you*

до = *up to, till, before*

до того = *to that* (sc. extent, = *to such an extent*)

до того времени = *up to that time*

до сихъ поръ = *till now* (cf. § 68)

до конца = *up to the end* (конѣцъ = *end*)

до рождества Христова = *before the birth of Christ*

до васъ = *before your time, before your arrival*

notice the idioms:

мнѣ не до этого = *I have no time* (or *no inclination*) *for this*
(sc. now)

имъ не до насъ = *they have nothing to do with us* (sc. *they don't bother themselves about us*)

до-сыта = *to one's full*

изъ (изо before certain groups of consonants) = *from out of, of*

я получилъ письмо изъ Москвы = *I have received a letter from*
Moscow

онъ приѣхалъ изъ Англіи = *he has arrived from England*

изъ воды = *from out of the water*

изъ золота = *of gold*

изъ стекла = *of glass*

изо дня въ день = *from day to day*

it is always used in the phrase *one of*, e. g.

ВЪ ОДНОМЪ ИЗЪ БОЛЬШИХЪ ДОМОВЪ = *in one of the big houses . . .*

the gen. alone cannot be used in such cases ; notice the idiom :

ИЗЪ-ДОМУ = *from (out of) home.*

The two following compound prepositions also take the genitive :

ИЗЪ-ЗА = *from behind, from beyond, from out of, on account of*

ИЗЪ-ЗА ГРАНИЦЫ = *from beyond the frontier, sc. from abroad*

ИЗЪ-ЗА ЭТОГО = *from out of this, sc. on account of, as a result of this*

ИЗЪ-ЗА МОЕЙ БОЛЕЗНИ = *on account of, as a result of my illness*

ИЗЪ-ПОДЪ = *from under*

ИЗЪ-ПОДЪ СТОЛА = *from under the table.*

У = *near, at the house of, in the possession of, from.*

As the verb *to have* (ИМѢТЬ) is very seldom used in Russian, recourse has to be had to a paraphrase to express possession, temporary or permanent. This paraphrase consists of the preposition *у* followed by a noun or pronoun in the genitive and a part of the verb *to be* (БЫТЬ) ; the part most commonly used is *есть* = *is*, *il y a*, though of course *будеть* = *will be*, *il y aura*, and *было* = *was*, *il y avait*, *il y a eu* are also very frequent. It remains to be said that the word *есть* is as often as not omitted, so that as a result the commonest way of saying in Russian :

<i>I have</i>	is	у меня
<i>thou hast</i>	„	у тебя
<i>he or she has</i>	„	у него, у ней
<i>we have</i>	„	у насъ
<i>you have</i>	„	у васъ
<i>they have</i>	„	у нихъ

The full forms, with *есть* added each time after the pronoun, are especially common in relating stories or whenever it is necessary to be particularly explicit, and in questions.

Examples:

У МЕНЯ ЕСТЬ ОТЕЦЪ И МАТЬ, И ДВА БРАТА = *I have a father and a mother and two brothers*

У НИХЪ МНОГО ДЕНЕГЪ = *they have a lot of money*

у насъ нѣтъ дѣтей = *we have no children* (нѣтъ is a contraction of не + есть)

есть у васъ эта книга? = *have you this book?*

у меня насморкъ = *I have a cold in the head*

у него простуда = *he has a cold in the chest*

notice the idioms:

у васъ хоро́шій видъ = *you look well* (lit. *you have a good aspect*)

у него плохой видъ = *he looks ill.*

If the word in the nominative comes before the preposition у and the word governed by it, it regains its original meaning of *near*, e. g.

собака у меня = *the dog is near me.*

The distinction is very subtle and must be closely observed, as it is one way of expressing the difference between the definite and the indefinite articles, e. g.

у меня or } собака = *I have a dog*
у меня есть }

while

собака у меня = *the dog is near me* (not necessarily *my dog*),
i. e. *I have the dog, the dog is in my possession, or at my house.*

Again,

у него автомобиль = *he has a motor-car*

but

автомобиль у него = *the motor-car is at present in his possession, he has the motor-car* (probably not his own).

у of course often means *at the house of*, e. g.

они у насъ = *they [are] at our house*

у насъ сегодня балъ = *[there is] a dance at our house to-day*

я обѣдаю сегодня у друзей = *I am dining at the house of some friends to-day.*

With the personal pronoun it also acquires the meaning of a possessive adjective, e. g.

у меня зубъ болитъ = *my tooth aches, I have toothache*

домъ у насъ горитъ = *our house is burning*

головá у ней болитъ = *her head aches, she has a headache.*

кошелёкъ у меня пропáлъ = *I have lost my purse.*

In exclamatory remarks it acquires, coupled with the personal pronoun, something of the nature of the ethic dative, e. g.

она у меня хорошая лошадь! = *that's a fine horse!* (sc. of mine)

ты у меня красавица! = *thou art a beauty!* (not ironically, sc. *you are mine, you are beautiful, and I'm proud of you*)

она у васъ умница! = *she's a clever-girl!* (sc. *your little girl*).

Curiously enough after certain verbs у can also mean *from*, e. g.

онъ отнялъ у меня деньги = *he took away the money from me*

я взялъ у него книгу = *I took the (or a) book from him.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *from, since, from off*

съ головы до ногъ = *from head to foot* (lit. *feet*)

съ утра до вечера = *from morning till evening*

съ января = *since January*

съ пятиго мая = *from the 5th of May*

онъ упалъ съ крыши = *he fell from the roof*

сколько съ васъ взяли? = *how much did they take off you?*
(e. g. *in shops*, = the colloquial: *how much did they rook you?*)

съ меня взяли очень дорого = *they made me pay dear* (lit. *they took very dearly from me*)

со дня на день = *from day to day*

со скуки = *from tedium*

съ отчаянія = *from despair*

съ вашего позволенія = *with your permission.*

Notice phrases such as :

сразу (also съ-разу) = *at once*

я сразу узналъ его = *I immediately recognized him*

снова = *again*

сбизнова = *all over again*

сначала = *at first*

which are compound adverbs formed by the preposition съ with the genitive of nouns and adjectives.

отъ (ото before certain groups of consonants) = *from, away from*

онъ уѣхалъ отъ насъ = *he has gone away from us (sc. left us)*
 я получилъ письмо отъ брата = *I have received a letter from*
(sc. my) brother

отъ радости = *from joy*

отъ скуки = *from tedium*

отъ всего этого = *from (as a result of) all this*

онъ умеръ отъ этого = *he died from (of) this*

. . . . отъ двадцатаго мая = *of the 20th of May*

notice the idiom :

отъ роду = *from birth.*

Phrases are common in which both отъ and до are used :

отъ Петрограда до Москвы = *from Petrograd to Moscow*

отъ начала до конца = *from beginning to end*

отъ времени до времени = *from time to time.*

There are a number of prepositions which take the genitive which were originally adverbs (some are still used as such), or cases of nouns with or without other prepositions, and having become crystallized are regularly used as prepositions :

близъ = *near*

близъ Москвы = *near Moscow*

около = *around, about, near*

около Лондона = (1) *not far from London*, (2) *around London*

около двадцати лѣтъ = *about 20 years*

*крутомъ } = *round, around*

*вокругъ }

крутомъ города = *round the town*

поблизъ } = *alongside of*

*возлѣ }

возлѣ меня = *alongside of me*

поблизъ рѣки = *alongside the river*

вдоль = *the length of, down*

вдоль улицы = *down the street*

внѣ = *outside*

внѣ комнаты = *outside the room*

*внутри = *inside*

внутри комнаты = *inside the room*

вмѣсто = *instead of*

вмѣсто того = *instead of that*

сверхъ = *over*

сверхъ того = *in addition to that*

сверхъ шубы = *over (his) fur coat*

(сверхестественный = *supernatural*)

среди (*посреди) = *in the middle of*

среди улицы = *in the middle of the street*

(Средиземное море = *the Mediterranean*)

*позади = *behind*

позади меня = *behind me*

*послѣ = *after*

послѣ обѣда = *after dinner*

*мимо = *past*

мимо дома = *past the house* (cf. мимоходомъ = *in passing*)

для = *for*

для чего? = *what for?*

онъ сдѣлать это для меня = *he did this for me*

крѣмъ = *besides*

крѣмъ этого = *besides this*

крѣмъ того = *besides that*

ради = *for the sake of*

ради Бога! = *for God's sake*

прѣтивъ = *against, opposite*

прѣтивъ непріятеля = *against the enemy*

прѣтивъ холеры = *against cholera*

прѣтивъ насъ = (1) *against us*, (2) *opposite us*

между = *between* (but more commonly with the inst.).

Those marked with an asterisk can be used as adverbs as well.

§ 82. The Dative is used after a number of verbs without any preposition:

дать }
давать } = *to give*

я далъ ей деньги = *I gave her the money*

онъ далъ мнѣ слово = *he gave me [his] word*

вѣрить = *to believe*

я вамъ вѣрю = *I believe you* (but N.B. вѣровать въ Бога
= *to believe in God*)

удивляться = *to be astonished (at)*

я удивляюсь этому = *I am astonished at this*

радоваться = *to rejoice (at)*

мы радуемся вашему приѣзду = *we rejoice at your arrival*

кланяться = *to greet (lit. = to bow to)*

кланяюсь всѣмъ = *greetings to all*

учиться = *to learn*

я учусь русскому языку = *I am learning Russian*

смѣяться = *to laugh (at)*

чему вы смѣетесь? = *what are you laughing at?*

(N.B. *to laugh at some one* = с. надъ + inst.)

мѣшать = *to hinder*

я вамъ не мѣшаю? = *I am not in your way?*

молиться = *to pray to*

молюсь Богу = *I am praying to God*

завидовать = *to envy*

завидую вамъ = *I envy you*

жаловаться = *to complain*

онъ жалуется мнѣ на васъ = *he complains to me of you*

грозить = *to threaten*

грозить намъ бѣда = *misfortune is threatening us*

мстить = *to take vengeance on*

учить (+ acc. and dat.) = *to teach*

чему онъ васъ учить? = *what is he teaching you?*

говорить, сказать = *to tell*

скажете мнѣ = *tell me*

подражать = *to imitate*

напоминать, напомнить = *to remind*

напомните мнѣ объ этомъ = *remind me about this*

это мнѣ напоминаетъ его = *this reminds me of him*

писать = *to write* (but also with къ, cf. p. 131)

я пишу ему письмо = *I am writing him a letter*

подарить = *to give, to present*; купить = *to buy*, and others.

Also after impersonal verbs:

это мнѣ нравится = *this pleases me*, sc. *I like this*

мнѣ хочется = *I want to*

мнѣ пить хочется = *I am thirsty* (= *I want to drink*. There is no adjective *thirsty* in Russian)

кажется = *it seems*

мнѣ кажется = *it seems to me, sc. I think*

мнѣ не спится = *I cannot sleep*

мнѣ нездоровится = *I am unwell.*

Notice the curious expression :

онъ приходится мнѣ (e.g.) дядей (inst.) = *he is my (e.g.) uncle*
which is used to describe relationships usually of the remoter kind (N.B. приходится usually = *one has to + inf.*).

The dative is also used in the following common expressions :

можно мнѣ ? = *may I ?*

вамъ невозможно = *you may not*

вамъ нельзя = *you must not*

пора намъ ! = *it is time for us (sc. to go)*

я радъ вашему приѣзду = *I am glad at your arrival.*

After adverbs expressing pleasure, displeasure, heat, cold, &c., e.g.

удбно-ли вамъ ? = *would you like . . . ?*

какъ вамъ удбно = *just as you like*

мнѣ холодно = *I am cold*

мнѣ тепло = *I am warm*

мнѣ жарко = *I am hot*

мнѣ непріятно + inf. = *it is unpleasant to me to . . .*

мнѣ жалъ = *I am sorry.*

Also in expressing age :

сколько вамъ лѣтъ ? = *how old are you ? (lit. = how many to you of years ?)*

мнѣ двадцать лѣтъ = *I am twenty*

and in a few expressions such as :

эта книга вамъ = *this book is for you*

это мнѣ = *this is for me*

цѣна этимъ мѣстамъ = *the price of these places*

онъ намъ сосѣдь = *he is our neighbour*

онъ мнѣ врагъ = *he is an enemy of mine*

что не пришло мнѣ въ голову = *it did not enter my head.*

The dative is also used with the infinitive to express *is to, has got to*, e. g.

кому написать это письмо ? = *who is to write this letter ?*

этому не быть = *this is not to be.*

Notice the idioms:

такъ себѣ = *fairly*

e. g.

какъ это вамъ нравится? такъ себѣ! = *how do you like that? so-so!*

и томѹ подобное = *and so on* (abbr. и т. п. = &c.) (lit. *and to that similar*: sometimes also in plur.)

домой = *homewards, [to] home.*

The dative is used after the following prepositions:

къ (ко before certain groups of consonants) = *to*

я пришёлъ къ вамъ = *I have come to you*

приходите къ намъ = *come to us, sc. come and see us*

приходите ко мнѣ = *come and see me*

у меня къ вамъ просьба = *I have a favour to ask you*

къ вечеру = *towards evening*

къ осени = *towards autumn, by the autumn*

къ началу октября = *by the beginning of October*

къ концу ноября = *by the end of November*

къ первому августа = *by the first of August*

къ пяти часамъ = *by five o'clock.*

Notice the idioms:

къ сожалѣнію = *unfortunately, to my regret*

къ несчастію = *unfortunately*

къ моему удивленію = *to my surprise*

это вамъ къ лицу = *that suits you (of clothes), (lit. = to you to the face)*

къ моимъ ногамъ = *(he fell) at my feet*

лицомъ къ лицу = *face to face*

къ какой стати? = *to what purpose?*

кстати = *by the by, that reminds me.*

вопреки = *against, in spite of*

вопреки приличіямъ = *in defiance of decorum*

по = *along, over, according to*

по улицѣ = *along the street*

по-морю = *over the sea, by sea*

по-моему от
по моему мнѣнію } = *in my opinion*

почему?	= <i>why?</i> (= <i>on what grounds?</i>)
потому что (abb. п. т. ч.) }	= <i>because</i>
по прежнему	= <i>as formerly</i>
по новому стилю }	= <i>according to new, old style</i>
по старому стилю }	

(in dating letters, the Russian (Julian) calendar being thirteen days behind ours (Gregorian); the abbreviations are: с.с., н.с.).

Notice the very common idioms:

по-тихóньку	= <i>quietly, on the sly</i>
по-немнóжку }	= <i>gradually, little by little</i>
мáло-по-мáлу }	
по желéзной доро́гѣ	= <i>by rail</i>
по случа́ю + gen.	= <i>on the occasion of . . .</i>
по нево́лѣ	= <i>perforce</i>
по моёй ча́сти	= <i>in my line, in my department</i> (lit. <i>part</i>)
я уда́рилъ его́ по голо́вѣ	= <i>I hit him on the head</i>
я уда́рилъ его́ по плеча́мъ	= <i>I hit him on the shoulders</i>
по возбу́женнымъ цѣна́мъ	= <i>at raised prices</i> (sc. <i>higher than usual</i>),

also distributively:

по но́чамъ	= <i>at night</i> (sc. <i>frequently</i>)
по у́трамъ	= <i>in the morning</i> (sc. <i>every morning</i>)
по Воскре́сеніямъ	= <i>on Sundays, every Sunday</i>
онъ да́лъ всѣмъ намъ по я́блоку	= <i>he gave us all an apple each</i>
по пяти́ рублѣй (dat. + gen. pl.)	= <i>at five roubles.</i>

§ 83.

The Accusative is used

(1) To denote the object of a transitive verb, e.g.

я люблю́ свою́ ро́дину = *I love my country.*

It has already been remarked that the acc. sing. and plur. of masculine nouns ending in -ъ, -ѣ, and -ѣ, and the acc. plur. of feminine nouns ending in -а, -я is the same in form as the gen. sing. and plur. in the case of animate, and the same as the nominative in the case of inanimate nouns.

The same rule applies to all adjectives and to all the pronouns except the personal pronouns and *кто* = *who*; in these the acc. is always the same as the gen., even the acc. of the neuter pronoun

оно = *it* being the same, not as the nom. but as the gen., viz. его.

It must be observed, however, that this was not always so; the old acc. was invariably the same as the nom., and this is still to be seen in a few expressions which became crystallized before the gen. came to be used for the acc. in the case of animate things; such phrases, amongst others, are:

ВЫЙТИ ЗАМУЖЬ = *to marry*

(N.B. of the woman only; the phrase literally means *to go out behind a man or a husband*)

ЕГО ПРОИЗВЕЛИ ВЪ ПОЛКОВНИКИ = *they have promoted him to be a colonel* (lit. *into the colonels*)

ЗВАТЬ ВЪ ГОСТИ = *to invite* (lit. = *to call into guests*, sc. *as guests*)

ПОСТУПИТЬ ВЪ СОЛДАТЫ = *to enlist*.

(2) To express duration of time and distance:

ЭТУ ЗИМУ = *this winter*

ЦЕЛОЕ ЛѢТО = *the whole summer*

ПРОШЛУЮ ОСЕНЬ = *last autumn*

БУДУЩУЮ ВЕСНУ = *next spring*

ОДИНЪ ГОДЪ = *(for) one year*

КРУТЛЫЙ ГОДЪ = *the whole year round*

ЦѢЛУЮ НЕДЕЛЮ = *(for) a whole week*

МЫ ПРОШЛИ ДВѢ ВЕРСТЫ (acc. + gen. sing., cf. § 61) = *we have walked two versts.*

(3) After the word ЖАЛЬ = *pity*, e.g.

МНѢ ЖАЛЬ ВАШУ СЕСТРУ = *I am sorry for your sister*

ЕМУ ЖАЛЬ ЕЁ = *he is sorry for her*

МНѢ ЕГО ЖАЛЬ = *I am sorry for him.*

The accusative is used after the following prepositions:

ВЪ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *into*

Я ЪДУ ВЪ РОССІЮ = *I am travelling to Russia*

Я ЪДУ ВЪ ЛОНДОНЪ = *I am travelling to London*

ВЪ КРЫМЪ = *to the Crimea*

ОНЪ ВОШЁЛЪ ВЪ КОМНАТУ = *he came into the room.*

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

въ понедѣльникъ	= <i>on Monday</i>
во вторникъ	= <i>on Tuesday</i>
въ день моего рождѣнія	= <i>on my birthday</i>
въ два часа	= <i>at two o'clock</i>
разъ въ день	= <i>once a day</i>
два раза въ недѣлю	= <i>twice a week</i>
во что-бы то ни стало	= <i>cost what it may</i>
въ два рубля	= <i>costing two roubles</i>
въ рубль	= <i>at one rouble</i>
въ два этажá	= <i>two stories (high)</i>
въ тысячу разъ лучше	= <i>a thousand times better</i>
въ старинѣ	= <i>in the old days</i>
во-время	= <i>in time</i>
во время + gen.	= <i>during (the time of)</i>
въ пору	= <i>it is the right size</i>
мнѣ не въ пору	= <i>it doesn't fit me</i>
вамъ въ пору	= <i>it fits you</i>
въ гору	= <i>up-hill.</i>
(Cf. вверхъ	= <i>upwards</i>
внизъ	= <i>downwards.</i>)

Notice the common expressions :

втечѣніе + gen. (also written въ течѣніе) = *in the course of*
 вслѣдствіе этого (also въ с . . .) = *as a result of this*
 въ продолженіе цѣлаго года = *for a whole year.*

за = *behind, beyond, for, by*

я ѣду за границу = *I am going abroad (lit. beyond the frontier)*
 онъ поѣхалъ за-городъ = *he has gone out of town*
 онъ взялъ меня за руку = *he took me by the hand*
 сядемъ за столъ = *let us sit down to table*
 ей за-пятьдесятъ лѣтъ = *she is more than 50.*

Always after the following verbs :

(по) благодарить	= <i>to thank</i>
купить	} = <i>to buy</i>
покупать	

продавать }	= to sell
продать }	
молиться	= to pray

and expressions such as *praying for, fighting for*, e.g.

я благодарю васъ за ваше письмо = *I thank you for your letter*

я купилъ это за рубль = *I bought this for a rouble*

онъ мнѣ продалъ лошадь за пять сотъ рублей = *he sold me a horse for 500 roubles*

моли́тесь за меня = *pray for me*

жизнь за царя = *(one's) life for the tsar*

за Англичанъ = *for (sc. in favour of) the English.*

Notice the idioms:

за кого вы меня принимаете? = *whom do you take me for?*

выйти	} за . . .	= to marry
выходить		

она вышла за немца = *she married a German*

за кого она вышла? = *whom did she marry?*

For the phrase выйти замужъ cf. p. 133.

Also in certain expressions of time and distance:

она умерла за два часа до вашего приезда = *she died two hours before your arrival*

мы живёмъ за пять верстъ отъ стáнции = *we live five versts from the station*

за царствованіе Алексáндра вторóго = *in the reign of Alexander II*

за лѣто = *in the course of the summer (sc. when it is over).*

Notice the idioms:

за хвостъ, за голову = *by the tail, by the head*

за-руку, за-ногу = *by the hand, by the leg or foot*

заодно = *in concert with*

за то = *on the other hand.*

на = *on to*

положите книгу на столъ = *put the book on the table*

онъ лёгъ на-бокъ = *he lay down on his side*

на колѣни = *on to (one's) knees*

на зéмлю = *on to the ground.*

Notice the following idiomatic uses :

на-ночь	= <i>for the night</i>
онъ прѣхалъ на цѣлый мѣсяць	= <i>he has come for a whole month</i>
дня на-два	= <i>for about two days</i>
на другой день	= <i>(on) the next day</i>
на слѣдующій разъ (or) на другой р.)	= <i>for next time</i>
на-гору	= <i>up-hill</i>
на-берегъ моря	= <i>to the seaside</i>
ѣхать на Кавказъ	= <i>to travel to the Caucasus</i>
на-два рубля дороже	= <i>dearer by two roubles</i>
на пятьдесятъ копѣекъ дешевле	= <i>cheaper by 50 kopeks</i>
на лицо	= <i>present (sc. to be present), in cash</i>
на силу	= <i>with great effort</i>
на-ново	= <i>afresh</i>
на-скоро	= <i>quickly (sc. without taking much time or trouble)</i>
положиться } надѣяться }	на кого = <i>to have confidence in any one</i>
кушайте на здорѣе!	
when showing hospitality)	
на сѣверъ	= <i>to the North</i>
на югъ	= <i>to the South</i>
на востокъ	= <i>to the East</i>
на западъ	= <i>to the West</i>
это похоже на васъ	= <i>that is like you (of a portrait)</i>
это ни на что не похоже	= <i>that is not like anything (sc. unutterably bad, abominable)</i>
на память	= <i>from memory</i>
на-показъ	= <i>for show</i>
на-вѣрхъ	= <i>upstairs (sc. motion up)</i>
на-лѣво	= <i>to the left</i>
на-право	= <i>to the right</i>
наконѣцъ	= <i>at last</i>
наизусть	= <i>by heart (e.g. recitations, &c.)</i>

о (before vowels объ) = *about, against*

объ эту пору	= <i>about this time</i>
я ушибся о столъ	= <i>I have hurt myself against the table</i>
я оперся о колонну	= <i>I leant against a column</i>
рука объ руку	= <i>arm in arm</i>

по = *till*

отъ пѣрваго (sc. числа) по тридцать-пѣрвое (sc. число) января =
from Jan. 1st-31st

по колѣни въ водѣ = *up to the knees in the water.*

Notice the idioms:

по тѣ стороны = *(over on) that side (of the river)*

по правую рѣку = *on the right-hand side*

по лѣвую рѣку = *on the left-hand side.*

For the use of по + acc. in expression of money values, cf. § 69.

подъ = *under*

положите эту подушку себѣ подъ-голову = *put this pillow under
 your head*

подъ-руку (взять кого) = *to take some one by the arm*

подъ-гору = *down-hill.*

про = *concerning*

про кого вы говорите? = *about whom are you talking?*

Notice the idiom:

про себя = *to oneself*

e. g. они смѣялись про себя = *they were laughing to themselves*

(про себя) = *(aside).*

сквозь = *through*

видно сквозь дымъ = *visible through the smoke*

сквозь лѣсъ = *through the forest, of anything that is visible
 through the trees of the forest*

while черезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest, e. g. walking through the
 forest.*

съ (so before certain groups of consonants) = *about, like*

онъ съ меня (sc. ростомъ) = *he is (as big) as me (sc. in growth)*

съ недѣлю = *about a week.*

черезъ (or чрезъ) = *through, across, via, over*

черезъ заборъ = *over the fence*

черезъ воду = *through the water*

черезъ воздухъ = *through the air*

черезъ лѣсъ = *through the forest*

черезъ рѣку = *across the river, or through the river* (sc. *motion across*)

черезъ Неву = *across the Neva*

черезъ Москву = *across, through, or via Moscow*

черезъ кого? = *through whom?* (sc. *by whose agency?*).

In expressions of time :

черезъ полъ-часа = *in half an hour's time*

черезъ недѣлю = *in a week.*

It also can mean *every other* :

черезъ часъ = *in an hour's time, or every other hour*

черезъ день = *every other day.*

The Instrumental.

§ 84. The instrumental case denotes primarily, as its name implies, the instrument or agent by which anything is done, e.g.

писать карандашомъ = *to write with a pencil*

это письмо написано мной = *this letter [was] written by me*

руками = *with [one's] hands*

ногой = *with [one's] foot, or leg.*

It denotes manner :

пароходомъ = *by steamer*

я ѣду въ Россію пароходомъ = *I am travelling to Russia by steamer*

сухимъ путёмъ = *overland* (lit. *by dry way*)

я поѣду сухимъ путёмъ = *I shall go overland*

моремъ = *by sea*

толпой = *in a crowd*

стрѣлой = *like an arrow*

лѣсомъ = *by* (sc. *through*) *the forest*

дорожкой = *by the path*

полемъ = *by the field*

наложеннымъ платежёмъ = *pay on delivery.*

Notice the idioms :

ѣхать шагомъ = *to drive* (or *ride*) *at walking-pace, 'au pas'*

идти пешкомъ = *to go on foot.*

and especially :

ѣхать верхомъ = *to ride* (sc. *on horseback*); *верхъ* = *top*, and the phrase literally means *to travel as the top* (sc. *the upper part*).

The phrase *кататься верхомъ*, lit. = *to roll along as the top* is also used; these two phrases are the only means of saying *to ride* in Russian. Notice also:

<i>рядомъ</i>	= <i>side by side</i>
<i>гуськомъ</i>	= <i>in single file</i>
<i>такимъ путёмъ</i>	= <i>in this way</i>
<i>какимъ образомъ?</i>	= <i>in what manner, how?</i>
<i>какимъ способомъ?</i>	= <i>by what means?</i>
<i>такимъ образомъ</i>	= <i>in this</i> (lit. <i>such</i>) <i>manner, like that, and often means if you do this . . .</i>
<i>посредствомъ</i> + gen.	= <i>by means of</i>
<i>какимъ изъ которыхъ поѣздомъ?</i>	= <i>by which or what train?</i>
<i>мѣстами</i>	= <i>in places</i>
<i>большею частью</i>	= <i>for the most part</i>
<i>разомъ</i>	= <i>all at once, all together</i>
<i>оптомъ, гуртомъ</i>	= <i>(sell by) wholesale</i>
<i>цѣликомъ</i>	= <i>wholly, completely, all</i>
<i>лицомъ къ лицу</i>	= <i>face to face</i>
<i>однимъ словомъ</i>	= <i>in one word</i>
<i>другими словами</i>	= <i>in other words</i>
<i>его словами</i>	= <i>in his words</i>
<i>само-собой</i>	= <i>of its own accord, automatically</i>
<i>само собою разумѣется</i>	= <i>cela se comprend</i>
<i>она хороша собой</i>	= <i>she is good-looking</i> (here the <i>собой</i> merely amplifies the sentence; if anything it emphasizes the compliment, but is really untranslatable in English)
<i>волей-неволей</i>	= <i>willy-nilly.</i>

In certain expressions of the time of day and the seasons:

<i>весной</i>	= <i>in the spring</i>
<i>лѣтомъ</i>	= <i>in the summer</i>
<i>осенью</i>	= <i>in the autumn</i>
<i>зимой</i>	= <i>in the winter</i>

(when preceded by the demonstrative pronoun always use the acc., cf. § 83)

<i>утромъ</i>	= <i>in the morning</i>
<i>вечеромъ</i>	= <i>in the evening</i>

днём = *by day*, and also very frequently = *in the afternoon*
 ночью = *by night*.

N.B. (1) *this morning* is сегодня утромъ (lit. = *to-day in the morning*)

(2) *this evening* is сегодня вечеромъ (lit. = *to-day in the evening*),
 similarly завтра утромъ = *to-morrow morning*, &c.

It is used in expressions such as:

чѣмъ богаты, тѣмъ и рады = *what we are rich in, to that you are welcome* (lit. = *with that we are glad*, sc. *that we will gladly give*).

It denotes origin:

родомъ Англичанинъ = *by birth an Englishman*.

It is used in some expressions of measurement:

рѣка шириной въ полъ-версты = *a river about half a verst wide (in width)*

гора въ тысячу футовъ вышиной = *a hill 1000 feet in height*

also глубиной = *in depth*, длиной = *in length*.

In comparison of measures, e.g.

я годомъ старше его = *I am older than he by a year*

though these phrases are more commonly expressed by на + acc.
 (cf. § 83) or въ + разъ (cf. §§ 65, 83)

тѣмъ лучше = *all the better*

тѣмъ не мѣнѣе = *nevertheless*

тѣмъ болѣе = *all the more*.

The instrumental is always used after certain verbs:

любоваться = *to admire* (but only literally *to gaze at*)

пользоваться } = *to take advantage of, to profit by*
 воспользоваться }

пользуюсь этимъ случаемъ + inf. = *I am taking advantage of this occasion to . . .*

гордиться = *to be proud of*

я горжусь вами = *I am proud of you*

дорожить = *to value highly*

жѣртовать } = *to sacrifice*
пожѣртовать }

онъ пожѣртовалъ всѣмъ своимъ состояніемъ = *he sacrificed the whole of his fortune*

владѣть = *to rule, command*

Англія владѣтъ Индіей = *England rules India*

онъ хорошо владѣтъ русскимъ языкомъ = *he has a good command of the Russian language*

командовать = *to be in command over (troops, &c.)*

руководить = *to lead*

управлять = *to manage*

онъ управляетъ моимъ имѣніемъ = *he manages my property*

завѣдывать = *to look after*

она завѣдуетъ домомъ = *she looks after the house*

прáвить = *to drive*

онъ хорошо прáвить лошадыми = *he drives a carriage (lit. horses) very well.*

дышать = *to breathe*

пахнуть = *to smell (intrans.)*

чѣмъ это пахнетъ? = *what does this smell of?*

A very common and at first sight puzzling use of the instrumental is that called *predicative*. The predicate is put in the instrumental instead of in the nominative whenever any temporary or hypothetical condition is to be indicated, e. g.

когда я былъ мальчикомъ = *when I was a boy*

онъ будетъ великимъ человекомъ = *he is going to be a great man*

лежаніе у него не было ни необходимою ни случайною
= *lying down was in his case neither a necessity nor an accident*

послать заказнымъ = *to send . . . registered.*

The predicative instrumental is used after the following verbs :

дѣлаться } = *to become*
становиться }

называться = *to be called*

звать = *to call*

меня зовутъ Иваномъ = *they call me Ivan, i. e. my name is Ivan*

служить = *to serve as*

это служило мнѣ предлогомъ = *this served me as an excuse*

считаться = *to be considered*

это считается хорошимъ жалованіемъ = *that is considered good pay*

это считается невѣжливымъ = *that is considered rude*

слыть = *to have the reputation*

родиться = *to be born*

казаться = *to seem*

дѣло казалось серьёзнымъ = *the matter seemed serious*

притворяться = *to pretend to be.*

The instrumental is used after the following prepositions:

за = *behind, for (to get something)*

за границей = *abroad (lit. = beyond the frontier)*

за столомъ = *at table*

за обѣдомъ = *at dinner*

за-городомъ = *out of town*

я пришёл за деньгами = *I have come for the money*

надо послать за докторомъ = *(we) must send for the doctor*

зачѣмъ? = *why? (sc. with what object?)*

за тѣмъ чтобы + inf. = *in order to . . .*

затѣмъ = *after that, then.*

It is always used of a woman being married (cf. за + acc., § 83):

она замужемъ = *she is married*

за кѣмъ она замужемъ? = *to whom is she married?*

между = *between* (also but less often with gen.)

между Петроградомъ и Москвой = *between Petrograd and Moscow*

между нами = *between us* (both of concrete objects and of emotions), *amongst us*

между прочимъ = *amongst other things.*

Notice the idioms:

между тѣмъ = *meanwhile, cependant.*

надъ (надо before certain groups of consonants) = *above*

надъ головой = *above (my) head*

надо мной = *above me (only literally)*

пéредь (передо before certain groups of consonants) = *before, in front of*

- пéредь дóмомъ = *in front of the house*
 пéредо мнóй = *in front of me*
 пéредь éтимъ = *before this (temporal)*
 пéредь обéдомъ = *before dinner*
 пéредь тѣмъ какъ + inf. = *before + verb (e.g. going).*

пóдь (подо before certain groups of consonants) = *under, near*

- пóдь землѣй = *underground*
 подо мнóй = *under me*
 пóдь éтимъ услóвiемъ = *on this condition*
 пóдь какѣмъ предлóгомъ ? = *under what pretext ?*
 пóдь Москвóй = *near Moscow*
 пóдь Лóндономъ = *near London.*

съ (со before certain groups of consonants) = *with*

- со мнóй = *with me*
 съ большѣмъ удовóлствиемъ = *with great pleasure*
 съ насладѣнiемъ = *with relish*
 съ трудóмъ = *with difficulty*
 со врѣменемъ = *in course of time*
 съ кѣмъ вы говорѣли ? = *with whom were you talking ?*
 съ какóй цѣлью ? = *with what object ?*
 съ Бóгомъ ! = *good-bye ! (lit. with God)*
 Бóгъ съ нѣми ! = *never mind them ! (lit. God be with them).*

§ 85. The Locative is only used with prepositions, hence it is sometimes called the prepositional case.

The locative is used with the following prepositions :—

въ (во before certain groups of consonants) = *in*

- въ Москвѣ = *in Moscow*
 во мнѣ = *in me*
 во Францiи = *in France*
 въ Крымѣ = *in the Crimea (cf. § 39, Obs. 7)*
 въ концѣ = *at the end*
 въ началѣ = *at the beginning*
 во снѣ = *in one's sleep or dreams.*

Notice the idioms :

ВЪ КОНЦѢ-КОНЦОВЪ = *at long last, finally*

ВЪ САМОМЪ ДѢЛѢ = *in very fact.*

In certain expressions of time :

ВЪ СЛѢДУЮЩЕМЪ ГОДѢ = *the following year*

ВЪ ТАКОМЪ-ТО ГОДѢ = *such and such a year*

ВЪ ПЕРВОМЪ ЧАСѢ = *between 12 and 1*

ВО ВТОРОМЪ ЧАСѢ = *between 1 and 2.*

For other similar expressions, cf. § 68.

ВТАЙНѢ = *secretly*

ВПОСЛѢДСТВІИ = *subsequently*

ВПОЛНѢ = *completely, thoroughly.*

НА = *on*

НА СТОЛѢ = *on the table*

НА БЕРЕГѢ МОРЯ = *on the sea-shore, at the seaside*

НА БОКѢ = *on (one's) side*

НА СОЛНЦѢ = *in the sun*

НА ДВОРѢ = *in the yard*

(this is the commonest way of saying out of doors)

НА ЛЬДѢ = *on the ice* (fr. лёдъ)

НА МОСТѢ = *on the bridge*

НА СЛУЖБѢ = *in service* (sc. Government service)

НА НЕБѢ = *in heaven, in the sky*

НА СВѢЖЕМЪ ВОЗДУХѢ = *in the fresh air*

НА СВѢТѢ = *in the world*

НА СВОБОДѢ = *at liberty.*

Notice the idioms :

НА СВОЁМЪ ВѢКѢ = *in one's time, in one's life*

НАЯВѢ = *in reality* (as opposed to *in one's sleep*)

НА ЛОШАДАХЪ = *by carriage, driving* (lit. = *on horses*)

НА-ОДИНѢ = *alone, in solitude.*

It is used of men marrying, after the verb жениться = *to marry* :

ОНЪ ЖЕНИЛСЯ НА РУССКОЙ = *he married a Russian*

НА КОМУ ОНЪ ЖЕНАТЬ? = *to whom is he married?*

Notice the compound adverb:

накану́нь = *on the eve.*

о (объ before vowels and often before consonants also; обо before certain groups of consonants) = *concerning*

обо мнѣ = *about me*

о ог объ чѣмъ вы говорѣли? = *what were you talking about?*

обо всёмъ = *about everything.*

In certain expressions of number:

о двухъ концахъ = *with two ends.*

по = *after*

по приѣздѣ = *on or after arrival*

по нашемъ возвращеніи = *on our return.*

Notice the idioms:

скучать по родинѣ = *to be home-sick (for one's country)*

по чѣмъ? = *at what price?*

по чѣмъ аршинъ? = *how much a yard?* cf. § 69.

при = *in the presence of, in the time of, near*

при мнѣ = *in my presence, in my time, by me, near me, on me*

при дворѣ = *at court*

при Екатеринѣ Великой = *in the time of Catherine the Great*

при битвѣ подъ Лейпцигомъ = *at the battle of (lit. near, under) Leipzig.*

Notice the idioms:

при чѣмъ = *in addition to which, besides which*

при томъ = *besides that*

при всёмъ томъ = *in addition to all that, in spite of all that*

при всёмъ моёмъ стараніи = *in spite of all my efforts.*

THE VERB

§ 86. The Russian verb consists of the following parts:

Present	}	Active
Past		
Future		
Conditional		
—		
Imperative		
—		
Infinitive		
—		
Present Gerund		
Past Gerund		
—	}	Passive
Present Participle		
Past Participle		
Present Participle		
Past Participle		

The present is the only tense which has personal endings. The past is a tense only in name; in reality it is a participle whose endings vary not according to person, but according to number and gender. The future in form is exactly the same as the present. The conditional in form is exactly the same as the past. There is no subjunctive. There is no passive of any part of the verb except the participles, and if anything is expressed in the passive, it must be done by means of participles or of the reflexive verb (cf. § 110).

Use of the Personal Pronouns with the Verb.

The personal pronouns:

Я	= <i>I</i>
ТЫ	= <i>thou</i>
ОНЪ, ОНА, ОНО	= <i>he, she, it</i>
МЫ	= <i>we</i>
ВЫ	= <i>you</i>
ОНѢ (M. N.), ОНѢ (F.)	= <i>they</i>

are used in Russian with the verbs very much as in English; in certain cases they are, however, omitted altogether, e.g. when the verb is used, as it frequently is, in an answer in reply to a question instead of да (= *yes*) or нѣтъ (= *no*), e.g.:

Question: БЫЛИ-ЛИ ВЫ У НИХЪ ВЧЕРА? = *did you go to see them yesterday?* (lit. *were you at their house?*)

Answer: БЫЛЪ = *I did* (lit. *I was*)

Question: БУДЕТЕ-ЛИ ВЫ У НЕГО СЕГОДНЯ? = *will you go to see him to-day?*

Answer: БУДУ = *I shall*

Question: МОЖЕТЕ-ЛИ ВЫ СДѢЛАТЬ ЭТО ДЛЯ МЕНЯ? = *can you do this for me?*

Answer: МОГУ = *I can*.

The pronoun онó is comparatively rarely used; its place is often taken by это, e.g.

это было очень давно = *it was a very long time ago*

or it is omitted altogether, e.g.

тепло сегодня = *it is warm to-day*.

When it is used it often acquires the meaning of *the thing we were referring to* or *what you were talking about*, e.g.

онó, конечно, неприятно = *(a thing like) that (sc. which we were discussing) is, of course, unpleasant*.

§ 87.

The Present.

REGULAR VERBS.

In Old Bulgarian the verbs are divided into five classes, and for etymological purposes Russian verbs can be similarly treated. For practical purposes, however, it is best to divide the verbs into only two classes, not according to the infinitive, but according to the endings of the present. The few irregular verbs which there are, which in Old Bulgarian form the fifth class, are in Russian not sufficiently numerous to form a class by themselves, but as they are very important they are given in full in a separate paragraph. For the regular verbs there are two sets of personal endings, which are added to the verb-stem sometimes directly,

sometimes with a vowel (-а-, -я-, -ѣ-, -ѧ-, -ю-) or a consonant (-н-) inserted between stem and ending.

The first difficulty to be faced is the fact that though every present may be put in one class or the other, the infinitives are much more difficult to classify, because verbs having various infinitive endings have identical present endings, and others having identical infinitive endings have different present endings. In the lists of verbs given they are arranged alphabetically according to the last letter of the present stem as seen in the 3rd pers. plur., those ending in consonants + *y* first, those ending in vowels + *ю* later.

Another difficulty is that the palatal qualities of the vowels in the personal endings have in many cases affected the last consonant of the stem, so that the present stem differs from the infinitive stem. The present endings of the two main classes of Russian verbs are the following:

	I.	II.
Sing.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ } -\text{y} \text{ (or } -\text{ю}) \\ 2 \text{ } -\text{ѣшѣ}^1 \\ 3 \text{ } -\text{ѣтъ} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -\text{ю} \text{ (or } -\text{y}) \\ -\text{ишѣ} \\ -\text{итѣ} \end{array} \right.$
Plur.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1 \text{ } -\text{ѣмѣ} \\ 2 \text{ } -\text{ѣте} \\ 3 \text{ } -\text{ѣтъ} \text{ (or } -\text{ютъ}) \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -\text{имѣ} \\ -\text{ите} \\ -\text{ятѣ} \text{ (or } -\text{атѣ})^2 \end{array} \right.$

Class I comprises all the verbs contained in the first three classes in Old Bulgarian; in that language the endings of class I were 2nd sing. -ѣши, 3rd sing. -ѣтъ (*-e/i*, *-et*, cf. § 36), &c., of class II -ѣши, -ѣтъ (*-ne/i*, *-net*), of class III -ѣши, -ѣтъ (*-je/i*, *-jet*); in Russian these appear respectively as *-je/i*, *-jet*, *-nje/i*, *-njet*, and *-je/i*, *-jet*, i.e. the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. all begin with *-je* (pron. *-ye*). Of the verbs which originally belonged to class I, those whose stems end in *r* or *k* change these letters to *ж* and *ч* before the palatal vowels of the endings *-e/i*, *-je/i*, &c., but retain the *r* and *k* before the *-y* of the 1st sing. and 3rd plur. The

¹ When the accent falls on the personal ending the 2nd and 3rd sing. and 1st and 2nd pl. of class I are pronounced: -ѣшѣ (cf. § 14), -ѣтъ, -ѣмѣ, -ѣте.

² When unaccented these endings (3rd plur. of class II) are generally pronounced -ѣтъ (or -ѣтъ).

stems of the verbs which insert -н- between the stem and the personal ending undergo no change. Of the verbs which originally belonged to class III, those whose stems end in vowels take the endings -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ, those whose stems end in consonants changed them (except in the case of those in -н and of a few in -п) before the palatal vowels of the personal endings -ју, -ješ/, &c., in such a way as to absorb the *y*-sound contained in them, viz. final к, т of a stem becomes ч, or ш, final р, д, з become ж, and final с and х become ш, the personal endings appearing as -чу, -чешь, -жу, -жешь, -шу, -шешь, and -ху, -хешь.

In class II the first person singular is often disguised as *y* (i.e. apparently the same as in class I); the reason is that the -ю of the 1st sing. changes final к and т of the stem into ч or ш, final р, д, and з into ж, and final с and х into ш. It also becomes *y* when the stem itself ends in ч, ж, or ш. Similarly the *я* of the 3rd plur. becomes *a* when the stem ends in ч, ж, or ш. In class II those stems which end in н, ъ, в, and м insert н before the -ю of the 1st sing.

Another difficulty which the beginner has to face is that of the prepositions in composition with the verbs. Verbs compounded with a preposition (i.e. preceded by it) are infinitely more numerous than those without, and this fact makes the beginner think at first sight that the language possesses an infinitely larger number of verbs than it really does. When reading Russian the beginner should always try and see the root or stem of each verb and cut off the preposition or prepositions which precede it. For this purpose it is important to learn the prepositions given in §§ 79-85, and also to compare them with those given in dealing with prepositions in composition with verbs. As the prepositions always have an especial effect on the meaning of each verb, only simple verbs have been given in the following lists, the alteration in meaning effected by the various prepositions being discussed later. Many of the verbs given in these lists are extremely uncommon, others not used in their simple form; the student should not attempt to learn the lists, but only use them for reference. The list of the verbs under class I contains all the difficult primary verbs which belong to this class; otherwise the lists given are very far from being exhaustive; they are merely intended to be representative. The verbs are arranged alpha-

betically according to the last letter of the present stem, those ending in a consonant + *y* first, those ending in a consonant + *ю* next, and lastly those ending in a vowel + *ю*. Only the 1st and 2nd persons sing. and the infinitive are given. In class I, whenever the 1st sing. ends in -*y* the 3rd pl. ends in -*ютъ*, when the 1st sing. ends in -*ю* the 3rd pl. ends in -*ютъ*. In both classes, on whichever syllable the accent is in the 2nd sing., that syllable retains it throughout. Those verbs preceded by a hyphen are only used in composition, and examples of them compounded with prepositions are given below. All those verbs marked with F are perfective and their presents always have future meaning, cf. § 101:

§ 88.

CLASS I.

Examples of presents:

(Inf. мочь)

могý = *I can*

можешь

можетъ

можемъ

можете

могутъ

(Inf. идти¹)

идý = *I am going* (sc. on foot)

идешь

идетъ

идёмъ

идёте

идутъ

(Inf. тянуть)

тянý = *I am pulling*

тянешь

тянетъ

тянемъ

тянете

тянутъ

(Inf. брать)

берý = *I take, I am taking*

берёшь

берётъ

берёмъ

берёте

берутъ

(Inf. писать)

пишý = *I write, I am writing*

пишешь

пишетъ

пишемъ

пишете

пишутъ

(Inf. слать)

шлю² = *I am sending*

шлешь

шлётъ

шлёмъ

шлёте

шлютъ

¹ Also spelt *ити*.

² In the case of this verb the palatal quality of the personal endings has affected the *c* of the stem through the *я*.

(Inf. дѣлать)	(Inf. пить)
дѣлаю = <i>I do, I am doing</i>	пью = <i>I drink, I am drinking</i>
дѣлаешь	пьёшь
дѣлаетъ	пьётъ
дѣлаемъ	пьёмъ
дѣлаете	пьёте
дѣлають	пьютъ

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others:

	Present.		Infinitive.
-б +			
гребѹ	гребёшь	гребѣти	row
скребѹ	скребёшь	скребѣти	scrape
-шибѹ ¹	-шибёшь F	-шибѣти	(hit)
-в +			
ревѹ	ревёшь	ревѣть	roar
живѹ	живёшь	жить	live
зовѹ	зовёшь	звать	call
рвѹ	рвёшь	рвать	tear
плывѹ	плывёшь	плыть	float
слывѹ	слывёшь	слыть	be renowned as
-г +	[ж = г + (j)e]		
берегѹ	бережёшь	беречь	keep
стерегѹ	стережёшь	стеречь	guard
жгѹ	жжёшь ²	жечь	burn (trans.)
стригѹ	стрижёшь	стричь	shear
лгѹ	лжёшь	лгать	prevaricate
могѹ	можёшь	мочь	be able
бѣгѹ (cf. § 89)	—	бѣжать	run
лягѹ	ляжешь F	лечь	lie down
-прягѹ ³	-прижёшь F	-прячь	(harness)
д +			
кладѹ	кладёшь	класть	put
падѹ	падёшь F	пасть	fall

¹ e.g. ушибѣти = *to bruise*.

³ e.g. запрячь = *to harness*.

² Or жгѣшь.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
крадѹ	крадёшь	красть	<i>steal</i>
ведѹ	ведёшь	вести	<i>lead</i>
бредѹ	брёдёшь	бредить	<i>wander</i>
жду	ждёшь	ждать	<i>(a) wait</i>
идѹ	идёшь	идти	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
бѹду	бѹдёшь	быть	<i>be</i>
блюдѹ	блюдёшь	блюсти	<i>watch</i>
ѣдѹ (cf. § 89)	ѣдёшь	ѣхать	<i>ride, drive</i>
прядѹ	прядёшь	прясть	<i>spin</i>
сѣдѹ	сѣдёшь F	сѣсть	<i>sit down</i>
ж +			
(=г, д, з + -ju) (=г, д, з + -je)			
-кажѹ ¹	-кажёшь F	-казать	<i>(show)</i>
мажѹ	мажёшь	мазать	<i>smear</i>
брызжѹ ²	брызжёшь	брызгать	<i>splash</i>
лижѹ	лижёшь	лизать	<i>lick</i>
гложѹ	гложёшь	глодать	<i>gnaw</i>
ржѹ	ржёшь	ржать	<i>neigh</i>
рѣжѹ	рѣжёшь	рѣзать	<i>cut</i>
вяжѹ	вяжёшь	вязать	<i>bind, knit</i>
з +			
везѹ	везёшь	везти	<i>convey</i>
ползѹ	ползёшь	ползти	<i>crawl</i>
грызѹ	грызёшь	грызть	<i>gnaw</i>
лѣзѹ	лѣзёшь	лѣзть	<i>clamber</i>
к + (ч = к + (j)e)			
влекѹ	влечёшь	влечь	<i>draw</i>
пекѹ	печёшь	печь	<i>bake</i>
текѹ	течёшь	течь	<i>flow</i>
толкѹ	толчёшь	толочь	<i>knock</i>
волоку ³	волочёшь	волочь	<i>drag</i>
тку	тчёшь ⁴	ткать	<i>weave</i>
сѣкѹ	сѣчёшь	сѣчь	<i>cut, flog</i>

¹ e.g. сказать = *to say*, показать = *to show*, but the reflexive казаться = *to seem* is used in the simple form.

² Also брызгаю, &c.

³ Also волочѹ, волочишь, волочить (class II).

⁴ От ткѣшь.

*Present.**Infinitive.*

м +			
жмѹ	жмѣшь	жать	<i>squeeze</i>
-нимѹ ¹	-нимѣшь	F } F } F }	(take)
-имѹ ²	-имѣшь		
-ѣмѹ ³	-ѣмѣшь		
н +			
станѹ	станѣшь	стать	<i>become, begin (intrans.)</i>
гну	гнѣшь	гнуть	<i>bend</i>
жну	жнѣшь	жать	<i>reap</i>
мну	мнѣшь	мять	<i>crush</i>
стонѹ	стонѣшь	стонать ⁴	<i>groan</i>
-пну ⁵	-пнѣшь	-пять	<i>(stretch)</i>
-чну ⁶	-чнѣшь	-чать	<i>(begin)</i>
дѣну	дѣнѣшь	дѣть	<i>put</i>
клянѹ	клянѣшь	клясть	<i>curse</i>
тянѹ	тянѣшь	тянуть	<i>pull</i>

Verbs connoting a gradual process :

мѣрзну	мѣрзнѣшь	мѣрзнуть	<i>be frozen</i>
мокну	мокнуѣшь	мокнуть	<i>be soaked</i>
гасну	гаснѣшь	гаснуть	<i>die down</i>
кисну	киснѣшь	киснуть	<i>grow sour</i>
тихну	тихнѣшь	тихнуть	<i>grow quiet</i>
сохну	сохнѣшь	сохнуть	<i>grow dry</i>
тонѹ	тонѣшь	тонуть	<i>drown (intrans.)</i>
стыну	стынѣшь	стынуть	<i>grow cold</i>

Verbs connoting a single action :

двину	двинѣшь	двинуть	<i>move (trans.)</i>
кину	кинѣшь	кинуть	<i>throw</i>
крикну	крикнѣшь	крикнуть	<i>cry out</i>
трону	тронѣшь	тронуть	<i>touch</i>
шепнѹ	шепнѣшь	шепнуть	<i>whisper</i>

¹ e.g. обнимѹ, обнимѣшь, обнять = *to embrace*.снимѹ, снимѣшь, снять = *to take off, to photograph*.² e.g. примѹ, примѣшь, принять = *to accept*.³ e.g. возьмѹ, возьмѣшь, взять = *to take*.⁴ Also has present стонаю, стонаѣшь.⁵ e.g. распять = *to crucify*.⁶ e.g. начѹ, начѣшь, начать = *to begin (trans.)*.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
р +				
вру	врѣшь		врать	<i>prevaricate</i>
берѹ	берѣшь		братъ	<i>take</i>
дерѹ	дерѣшь		драть	<i>tear</i>
жрѹ	жрѣшь		жрать	<i>devour</i>
-мру ¹	-мрѣшь	F	-мерѣть	(<i>die</i>)
-пру ²	-прѣшь	F	-перѣть	(<i>press</i>)
тру	трѣшь		терѣть	<i>rub</i>
-стру ³	-стрѣшь	F	-стерѣть	(<i>stretch</i>)
с +				
пасѹ	пасѣшь		пасті	<i>pasture</i>
несѹ	несѣшь		нести	<i>carry</i>
трясѹ	трясѣшь		трясті	<i>shake (trans.)</i>
т +				
плетѹ	плетѣшь		плесті	<i>plait</i>
метѹ	метѣшь		месті	<i>sweep</i>
гнетѹ	гнетѣшь		гнесті	<i>press, oppress</i>
растѹ ⁴	растѣшь		расті	<i>grow (intrans.)</i>
-чтѹ ⁵	-чтѣшь	F	-честъ	(<i>read</i>)
цвѣтѹ	цвѣтѣшь		цвѣсті	<i>blossom</i>
-рѣтѹ ⁶	-рѣтѣшь	F	-рѣсті	(<i>obtain</i>)
ч + (=к, т + -ju) (=к, т + -je-)				
плачу	плачѣшь		плакать	<i>weep</i>
мечѹ	мечѣшь		метать	<i>fling</i>
хочѹ (cf. § 89)	хочѣшь		хотѣть	<i>wish</i>
хохочѹ	хохочѣшь		хохотать	<i>laugh loud</i>
шепчѹ	шепчѣшь		шептать	<i>whisper</i>
топчѹ	топчѣшь		топтать	<i>trud (trans.)</i>
прячу	прячѣшь		прятать	<i>hide (trans.)</i>
ш + (=с, х + -ju) (=с, х + -je-)				
машѹ ⁷	машѣшь		махать	<i>wave</i>
пахѹ	пахѣшь		пахать	<i>plough</i>
чесѹ ⁸	чесѣшь		чесать	<i>comb</i>

¹ e. g. умерѣть = *to die*.³ e. g. простерѣть = *to extend*.⁵ e. g. прочѣсть = *to read through*.⁷ Also has махаю, махаешь.⁸ Cf. the impersonal reflexive чешется = *it itches*.² e. g. заперѣть = *to close*.⁴ Also spelt ростѹ, ростѣшь, &c.⁶ e. g. приобрѣсті = *to obtain*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
пишѹ	пи́нешь	писáть	write
пляшѹ	плѣ́нешь	плѣсáть	dance
щ + (= ск + -ju) (= ск + -je- and т + -ju) and т + -je-)			
трепещѹ	трепѣ́нешь	трепетáть	tremble
ищѹ	и́щешь	искáть	look for
ропщѹ	ро́пщешь	роптáть	murmur
л +			
колѣблю	колѣ́блешь	колебáть	rock
мелю (cf. § 89)	мѣ́лешь	молóть	grind (corn)
стелю	стѣ́лешь	стлáть	spread
внемлю ¹	внѣ́млешь	внимáть	heed
дремлю	дрѣ́млешь	дремáть	slumber
колѹ	кóлешь	колóть	pierce
полѹ	пóлешь	полóть	rake
сыплю	сы́плешь	сыпáть	scatter
шлю (cf. p. 150)	шлѣ́шь	слáть	send
р +			
борѹсь (cf. § 100)	бóрѣшься	борóться	struggle
порѹ	пóрешь	порóть	unstitch
а +			
даю	да́ешь	давáть	give
лаю	лáешь	лáять	bark
дѣлаю	дѣ́лаешь	дѣлáть	do, make
знаю	знáешь	знáть	know
-знаю ²	-зна́ешь	-знавáть	(recognize)
играю	игрáешь	игрáть	play
таю	тáешь	тáять	thaw melt
читаю	читáешь	читáть	read
-стаю ³	-ста́ешь	-ставáть	(become)
-лучаю ⁴	-лучáешь	-лучáть	(receive)

and very many others.

¹ Also has present внимáю, &c.

² e.g. узнавáть = to recognize.

³ e.g. уставáть = to grow tired, and numerous other compounds.

⁴ e.g. получáть = to receive.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
і +			
гнѣю	гнѣшь	гнить	<i>rot</i>
вопѣю	вопѣшь	вопѣять ¹	<i>wail</i>
о +			
вою	воешь	выть	<i>howl</i>
мою	моешь	мыть	<i>wash (trans.)</i>
ною	ноешь	ныть	<i>ache</i>
пою	поешь	пѣть	<i>sing</i>
рою	роешь	рыть	<i>dig</i>
крою	кроешь	крыть	<i>cover</i>
у +			
торгую	торгуешь	торговать	<i>trade</i>
жую	жуешь	жевать	<i>chew</i>
кую	куешь	ковать	<i>forge</i>
сую	судешь	сновать	<i>weave</i>
сѣтую	сѣтуешь	совѣтъ	<i>poke</i>
танцую	танцуешь	танцовать	<i>advise</i>
чую	чуешь	чѣять	<i>dance</i>
ночую	ночуешь	ночевать	<i>scent</i>
пѣтую	пѣтуешь	пѣчевать	<i>pass the night</i>
			<i>treat</i>
and many others, including those formed from non-Russian words (of which the infinitive usually ends in -ировать), e.g.			
аплодирую	аплодируешь	аплодировать	<i>applaud</i>
формирую	формируешь	формировать	<i>form</i>
ѣ +			
бю	бѣшь	бить	<i>hit</i>
вю	вѣшь	вить	<i>wind</i>
лю	лѣшь	лить	<i>pour</i>
пю	пѣшь	пить	<i>drink</i>
шю	шѣшь	шить	<i>sew</i>
ѣ +			
вѣю	вѣешь	вѣять	<i>waft</i>
-дѣюсь ² (cf. § 100)	-дѣешься	-дѣяться	<i>(hope)</i>

¹ Has alternative form воплѣю, воплѣшь, воплѣть (class II).² надѣюсь, надѣешься, надѣяться = *to hope*.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>	
бѣлѣю	бѣлѣешь	бѣлѣть	<i>show white</i>
имѣю	имѣешь	имѣть	<i>have, possess</i>
смѣю	смѣешь	смѣть	<i>dare</i>
смѣюсь (cf. § 100)	смѣешься	смѣяться	<i>laugh</i>
умѣю	умѣешь	умѣть	<i>know how to</i>
спѣю ¹	спѣешь	спѣть	<i>ripen</i>
старѣю	старѣешь	старѣть	<i>grow old</i>
брѣю ²	брѣешь	брѣть	<i>shave</i>
грѣю	грѣешь	грѣть	<i>warm</i>
зрѣю ³	зрѣешь	зрѣть	<i>ripen</i>
сѣю	сѣешь	сѣять	<i>sow</i>
-тѣю ⁴	-тѣешь F	-тѣять	<i>(plan)</i>
ю +			
блюю	блюешь	блѣвать	<i>vomit</i>
клюю	клюешь	клевать	<i>peck</i>
плюю	плюешь	плевать	<i>spit</i>
воюю	воюешь	воевать	<i>make war</i>
горюю	горюешь	горевать	<i>mourn</i>
я +			
ваю	ваешь	вѣять	<i>sculpt</i>
гуляю	гуляешь	гулять	<i>walk</i>
-виняюсь ⁵ (cf. § 100)	-виняешься	-виняться	<i>(excuse)</i>

CLASS II.

(Inf. любить)	(Inf. видѣть)
люблю = <i>I love</i>	вижу = <i>I see</i>
любимъ	видишь
любить	видитъ
любимъ	видимъ
любите	видите
любятъ	видятъ

¹ Not to be confused with спю, спѣть a compound of пѣть.

² Also spelt брѣю, &c.

³ Not to be confused with зрю, зрѣть (class II) = *to see*.

⁴ затѣю, &c. = *to plan, contrive*.

⁵ извиняться = *to excuse oneself*.

(Inf. лежать)

лежѹ = *I lie, am lying*

лежишь

лежитъ

лежимъ

лежите

лежать

(Inf. спать)

сплю = *I sleep, am sleeping*

спишь

спитъ

спимъ

спите

спять

(Inf. говорить)

говорю = $\begin{cases} I \text{ speak, am speaking} \\ I \text{ say, am saying} \end{cases}$

говоришь

говоритъ

говоримъ

говорите

говорять

(Inf. платить)

плажѹ = *I pay*платишь¹платитъ¹платимъ¹платите¹платять¹

(Inf. учить)

учѹ = *I teach*

учишь

учитъ

учимъ

учите

учать

(Inf. слышать)

слышу = *I hear*

слышишь

слышитъ

слышимъ

слышите

слышать

Thus are conjugated the presents of the following verbs and others:

*Present.**Infinitive.*

б +

люблю

любишь

любитъ

love

в +

ловлю

ловишь

ловитъ

catch

¹ The accented a in all these five persons is usually pronounced like accented o in the case of this verb.

*Present.**Infinitive.*

(г + becomes ж)
(д + becomes ж
in 1st pers.
sing.)

	д +		
лажу	ладишь	лāдѣть	<i>agree</i>
глажу	гладѣшь	гладѣть	<i>stroke</i>
вижу	видѣшь	видѣть	<i>see</i>
сижу	сидѣшь	сидѣть	<i>sit</i>
вожу	водишь	водѣть	<i>lead</i>
хожу	ходишь	ходѣть	<i>go (sc. on foot)</i>
гожусь (cf. § 100)	годишься	годѣться	<i>be of use</i>
горжусь („)	гордишься	гордѣться	<i>be proud</i>
гляжу	глядѣшь	глядѣть	<i>look</i>

ж + (= г +)

лежу	лежишь	лежāть	<i>lie</i>
дрожу	дрожишь	дрожāть	<i>tremble</i>
держу	держишь	держāть	<i>keep, hold</i>
—	бѣжишь (cf. § 89)	бѣжāть	<i>run</i>

(з + becomes ж
in 1st pers.
sing.)

	з +		
лажу	лāзишь	лāзить	<i>clamber</i>
вожу	вōзишь	вōзить	<i>convey</i>

(к + becomes ч)

л +			
велю	велѣшь	велѣть	<i>command</i>
болѣть	болѣть (impersonal)	болѣть	<i>ache</i>
молюсь (cf. § 100)	мōлишься	молѣться	<i>pray</i>

м +

шумлю	шумѣшь	шумѣть	<i>make a noise</i>
-------	--------	--------	---------------------

н +

виню	винѣшь	винѣть	<i>blame</i>
гоню	гонѣшь	гонѣть	<i>chase</i>

п +

сплю	спишь	спать	<i>sleep</i>
терплю	терпишь	терпѣть	<i>endure</i>
тороплюсь	торопишься	торопѣться	<i>hurry</i>

(cf. § 100)

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Infinitive.</i>
p +			
говори́ю	говори́шь	говори́ть	<i>speak, say</i>
гори́ю	гори́шь	гори́ть	<i>burn (intrans.)</i>
смотре́ю	смотре́шь	смотре́ть	<i>look (at)</i>
кури́ю	кури́шь	кури́ть	<i>smoke</i>
(с + becomes ш in 1st pers. sing.)	с +		
кра́шу	кра́сишь	кра́сить	<i>paint (sc. walls)</i>
вишу́	внѣси́шь	внѣси́ть	<i>hang (intrans.)</i>
ношу́	но́сишь	но́сить	<i>wear, carry</i>
(т + becomes ч or щ in 1st pers. sing.)	т +		
плачу́	пла́тишь ¹	пла́тить	<i>pay</i>
лечу́	лѣти́шь	лѣтѣ́ть	<i>fly</i>
верчу́	вѣрти́шь	вѣртѣ́ть	<i>turn, twist</i>
блещу́	блести́шь	блестѣ́ть	<i>shine</i>
—	хотѣ́ть, &c. (cf. § 89)	хотѣ́ть	<i>wish</i>
пущу́	пу́стишь F	пу́стить	<i>allow, let go</i>
-сѣщу́ ²	-сѣ́тишь F	-сѣ́тить	<i>(visit)</i>
(х + becomes ш) ч + (= к +)			
кричу́	кричи́шь	крича́ть	<i>shout</i>
молчу́	молчи́шь	молча́ть	<i>be silent</i>
учу́ ³	учи́шь	учи́ть	<i>teach</i>
ш + (= х +)			
слышу́	слы́шишь	слы́шать	<i>hear</i>
	and very many others.		
о +			
бою́сь (cf. § 100)	бои́шься	боя́ться	<i>fear</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стои́ть	<i>cost, be worth</i>
стою́	стои́шь	стоя́ть	<i>stand</i>

¹ N.B. The а in all the persons of the present of this verb except the 1st sing. is usually pronounced like accented о.

² посѣ́тить = *to visit*.

³ The reflexive учи́ться = *to learn*.

§ 89.

Irregular Verbs.

These are not really irregular at all, but merely the remains of an old conjugation.

3rd sing. есть = *is*

3rd plur. суть = *are*

are all that is left of the present of the verb БЫТЬ = *to be* (cf. §§ 81, 112).

ѣмь = *I eat, I am eating*

(Inf. ѣсть)

Sing. { 1 ѣмь
2 ѣшь
3 ѣсть

Plur. { 1 ѣдимъ
2 ѣдите
3 ѣдятъ

N.B. For the 2nd sing. and plur. кѹшати is more often used.

дамь = *I shall give*

(Inf. дать)

Sing. { 1 дамь
2 дашь
3 дастъ

Plur. { 1 дадимъ
2 дадите
3 дадутъ

[вѣмь = *I know*, obsolete except in the phrase Богъ вѣсть = *God knows*, still sometimes used; a part, the imperative sing., still survives in the very common conjunction вѣдь = *for*, equivalent to the French *donc* or *mais voyons*.]

The following two verbs are partly irregular, and as they are very common deserve special attention :

бѣгѹ = *I am running*

(Inf. бѣжать)

Sing. { 1 бѣгѹ
2 бѣжишь
3 бѣжитъ

Plur. { 1 бѣжимъ
2 бѣжите
3 бѣгутъ

хочѹ = *I want, wish*

(Inf. хотѣть)

хочѹ
хочешь
хочетъ

хотѣмъ
хотѣте
хотѣтъ

The very common present

Sing.	1	ѣду = <i>I am going</i> (sc. on horseback or in any form of conveyance but not on foot)
	2	ѣдешь
	3	ѣдетъ
Plur.	1	ѣдемъ
	2	ѣдете
	3	ѣдутъ

has an infinitive ѣхать.

молѡтъ = *to grind*, pres. мелѡ, мелешь, may also be classed as irregular.

§ 90.

The Past.

As mentioned on p. 146 the past in Russian is a tense only in name. In reality it is a past participle active which formerly was used with the help of the present of the verb БЫТЬ = *to be*, as a compound perfect tense like the German *ich bin gewesen*. When this present became obsolete the past participle came to be used alone as the past tense and is now not felt to be a participle at all. It is formed from the infinitive, the general rule being to cut off the last two letters (-ть or -ти) and substitute :

-лъ	for the masc. sing.	} all three persons
-ла	„ fem. sing.	
-ло	„ neut. sing.	
and -ли	„ masc. fem. and neut. plur.	all three persons.

In the singular it must always agree in gender with the subject of the sentence, whatever person it be, except, of course, that the neuter sing. in -ло is only used for the 3rd pers. sing.

The personal pronouns must be prefixed as required, e. g. я, ты, онъ, она, оно for the sing., according to gender, and мы, вы, они, онѣ for the plur., but they are often omitted.

There is absolutely no difficulty in forming the past from any verb the infinitive of which ends in

-ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ить, or -отъ.

This includes all the verbs in class II and most of those in class I. The only difficulty is in the accent. This sometimes falls on the ending and sometimes not; it is best learnt by observation and practice.

Examples are given of the pasts of verbs in class II, and of those of class I whose infinitives end as indicated above:

1, 2, 3 <i>Sing.</i>	1, 2, 3 <i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
М. знать } F. знала } N. знало }	знали	знать = <i>know</i>
М. смѣялся } F. смѣялась } N. смѣялось }	смѣялись	смѣяться = <i>laugh</i>
М. видѣть } F. видѣла } N. видѣло }	видѣли	видѣть = <i>see</i>
М. мыть } F. мыла } N. мыло }	мыли	мыть = <i>wash (trans.)</i>
М. пить } F. пила } N. пило }	пили	пить = <i>drink</i>
М. боролся } F. боролась } N. боролось }	боролсь	бороться = <i>struggle</i>

In the case of the verbs of class I, all those of which the infinitive ends in -ать, -ять, -ѣть, -ыть, or -ить are formed in exactly the same way as those just mentioned, e.g. сталъ, стала, стало, стали; былъ, была, было, были; дѣлъ, дѣла, дѣло, дѣли; жилъ, жила, жило, жили, from стаять, дѣть, быть, and жить. In the case of the others, i.e. of those the stem of which ends in a consonant and the infinitive in -ти, -зти, -зть, -сти, -сть, -еть, -ѣть, -ечь, -ичь, -очь, -ячь, and those with infinitives in -нуть, the formation of the past is a little more difficult.

One reason is that the infinitive sometimes disguises the end of the stem, and it is to the stem (ending in a consonant) that the endings of the past have to be added, and another is that some of the stems undergo phonetic changes when followed by the -лъ of the past. The stem can always be found in the 2nd sing. of the present by cutting off the personal endings -ешь or -нешь.

Stems ending in -с, -з, -к, -т, -б, -р lose the -л- of the masculine singular past (those in -р being formed from the infinitive stem, e.g. from *теp-* and not from *тp-*), e.g.

M. нёсѣ	}	несѣ	нести = <i>carry</i>
F. несла́			
N. несло́			
M. вёзѣ	}	везѣ	везти = <i>convey</i>
F. везла́			
N. везло́			
M. тёкѣ	}	теклѣ	течь = <i>flow</i>
F. текла́			
N. текло́			
M. могѣ	}	моглѣ	мочь = <i>be able</i>
F. могла́			
N. могло́			
M. грёбѣ	}	гребѣ	гребти = <i>row</i>
F. гребла́			
N. гребло́			
M. тёрѣ	}	тёрли	терѣть = <i>rub</i>
F. тёрла			
N. тёрло			

Stems ending in -д, -т lose these consonants before all the endings beginning with л, e.g.

M. вѣлѣ	}	велѣ	вести = <i>lead</i>
F. вела́			
N. вело́			
M. мѣлѣ	}	мелѣ	мести = <i>sweep</i>
F. мела́			
N. мело́			

Of the verbs whose infinitives end in -нуть, the majority form their past in the ordinary way, e.g.¹

M. трону́лѣ	}	тронули	трону́ть = <i>touch</i>
F. трону́ла			
N. трону́ло			

¹ N.B. двину́ть when compounded with the preposition, воз-, inserts again the *r* of its stem, viz. *воздвигну́ть* = *to erect*, the past of which is *воздвигъ*, *воздвигла*, &c.; but not when compounded with other prepositions. *Исчѣзну́ть* = *to disappear* has both *исчѣзъ* and *исчѣзну́лѣ*.

but those verbs of this class which have so-called inchoative meaning, i. e. denote a process of any sort, lose the syllable -н- and add the terminations direct to the real stem (after stems ending in -х, -с, -к, -з the -л- falls off), e. g.¹

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	сохъ	сохли	сохнуть = <i>become dry</i>
F.	сохла		
N.	сохло		
M.	кисъ	кисли	киснуть = <i>grow sour</i>
F.	кисла		
N.	кисло		
M.	мокъ	мокли	мокнуть = <i>grow wet</i>
F.	мокла		
N.	мокло		
M.	стылъ	стыли	стынуть = <i>grow cold</i>
F.	стыла		
N.	стыло		

The pasts of the following verbs of class I must be mentioned individually, being somewhat unexpected; to them are added those of the irregular verbs:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M.	-чѣлъ	-чили	-честъ = (<i>read</i>)
F.	-члѧ		
N.	-члѡ		
M.	сѣлъ	сѣли	сѣсть = <i>sit down</i>
F.	сѣла		
N.	сѣло		

¹ гибнуть = *to perish*, has an alternative form гинуть; the past of the first is either гибъ, гибла, or гибнуль, &c., that of the second гинуль, &c., and in compounds, e. g. погибнуть, only погибъ, погибла, &c. Several other verbs of this category have both forms of past, but all have the shorter form as given above.

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>
M. росъ	}	росли	расти = <i>grow</i>
F. росла			
N. росло			
M. клять	}	кляти	клясть = <i>curse</i>
F. кляла			
N. кляло			
M. лёгъ	}	легли	лечь = <i>lie down</i>
F. легла			
N. легло			
M. жёгъ	}	жгли	жечь = <i>burn (trans.)</i>
F. жгла			
N. жгло			
M. -шибъ	}	-шибли	-шибѣть = (<i>hit</i>)
F. -шибла			
N. -шибло			
M. ѣлъ	}	ѣли	ѣсть = <i>eat</i>
F. ѣла			
N. ѣло			
M. далъ	}	дали	дать = <i>give</i>
F. дала			
N. далó			
Notice especially			
M. шёлъ	}	шли	идти = <i>go</i>
F. шла			
N. шло			

хотѣть	has	хотѣлъ	хотѣла	хотѣло
хотѣли				
бѣжѣть	"	бѣжѣлъ	бѣжѣла	бѣжѣло
бѣжѣли				
ѣхать	"	ѣхалъ	ѣхала	ѣхало
ѣхали				
быть	"	былъ	была	было
были				
молóть	"	молóлъ	молóла	молóло
молóли				

§ 91.

The Future.

The future in form is exactly the same as the present, and has no special endings of its own. It is a peculiarity of Russian that the present tenses of all the so-called perfective verbs have future meaning. This will be explained amply in §§ 101, 104.

The future can also be formed by using the form *буду, будешь = I shall be, thou wilt be, &c.* (of the verb *быть = to be*), together with the infinitive of any of the so-called imperfective verbs. The difference in meaning between these two forms of the future will be explained in § 104.

§ 92.

The Conditional.

This is formed by adding the particle *бы* (often contracted to *бъ*) to the past of any verb.

This particle is really a part of the verb *быть = to be*, which originally possessed a complete conditional tense, long since quite obsolete. This particle *бы* can be placed before or after the verb, the only rule being that as it is an enclitic it cannot begin a sentence, and therefore if placed before the verb the personal pronoun which is otherwise often omitted must be used. In meaning the conditional can be either past or future, according to the context.

Example:

хотѣлъ-бы = I should have liked or I should like (inf. хотѣть = to wish).

The particle can either follow the verb thus:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
M.	хотѣлъ-бы	хотѣли-бы
F.	хотѣла-бы	
N.	хотѣло-бы	

all of which forms can of course be preceded by the requisite personal pronouns; or it can precede it, in which case the personal pronouns are essential:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
M.	я бы хотѣлъ	мы } бы хотѣли
	ты бы хотѣлъ	
	онъ бы хотѣлъ	
		вы } бы хотѣли
		они }

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
F.	я бы хотѣла ты бы хотѣла она бы хотѣла	мы вы они } бы хотѣли
N.	оно бы хотѣло	они бы хотѣли

§ 93.

The Imperative.

The endings of the imperative are :

2nd sing.	-и,	-ь
2nd plur.	-ите,	-ьте

The endings -и, -ите are added to the present stems of all those verbs in class I which end in a consonant and have the accent on the ending of the 1st sing. of the present, e.g.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	
идѹ	иди ! идите !	} = go !
пишѹ	пиши пишите	
берегѹ	береги ¹ берегите	} = watch !

If the accent is not on the ending of the 1st sing., then -ь, -ьте are added, e.g.

бѹду	бѹдь бѹдьте	} = be !
сѹду	сѹдь сѹдьте	
плачѹ	плачь плачьте	} = weep !

If, however, the present stem ends in two consonants, then, although the accent be on the root, the endings -и, -ите are added,² e.g.

крикну	крикни крикните	} shout !

¹ The very common reflexive берегись, берегитесь = take care !

² But N.B. сыплю, сыпь, сыпьте = scatter !
and внемлю, внемли, внемлите = heed !

The endings -и, -ите are added to all those present stems which end in a vowel, wherever the accent be, and as a diphthong is formed, the и appears as й, e.g.

дѣлай	} = <i>do!</i>	пой	} = <i>sing!</i>
дѣлайте		пойте	
крой	} = <i>cover!</i>	дай	} = <i>give!</i>
кройте		дайте	
советуй	} = <i>advise!</i>		
советуйте			

Notice that the imperatives of the five verbs бить, вить, лить, пить, and шить are somewhat different, viz.:

бей	} = <i>hit!</i>	пей	} = <i>drink!</i>
бейте		пейте	

Similarly the verbs of class II take one or the other pair of endings according to where the accent is on the 1st sing. of the present. In the case of these verbs it is important to remember that the stem is to be found in the 2nd sing. of the present, and not always in the 1st, e.g.

спи	} = <i>sleep!</i>
спите	
сиди	} = <i>sit!</i> (i. e. <i>don't get up</i>)
сидите	
слышь	} = <i>hear!</i>
слыньте	
брось	} = <i>throw!</i> (sc. <i>give over!</i>)
бросьте	

The following imperatives are irregular:

from лягу ляжешь, inf. лечь

imper.	лягъ	} = <i>lie down!</i>
	лягте	

from ѣмъ ѣшь, inf. ѣсть (кушай(те) = *partake!* is more often used)

imper.	ѣшь	} = <i>eat!</i>
	ѣшьте	

from ѣду ѣдешь, inf. ѣхать

imper.	поѣзжай	} = <i>start! go! drive!</i>
	поѣзжайте	

N.B. An anomalous 1st plur. of the imperative is often formed colloquially by adding the ending -re on to the 1st plur. of the present, e.g.

(по)идѣмте = *let us go!*

поговорѣмте = *let's have a little chat!*

though as a rule the 1st plur. of the present is used alone to express *let us*.

The 3rd sing. and 3rd plur. of the imperative is expressed by using the word пускай (= 2nd sing. imperat. from пускай = *to let*) or пусть (= 2nd sing. imperat. from пусть = *to let*), followed by the *perfective* present, e.g.

пускай придѣтъ = *let him come*

пускай стойтъ = *let them stand*

пусть скажетъ = *let him tell*.

For the use of the imperative in conditional clauses cf. § 106.

§ 94.

The Infinitive.

The infinitive ends in -тъ, -чь, -ти, or -чи, preceded by various vowels and consonants; when the accent rests on the infinitive ending itself (which it does in a small minority of all the Russian verbs) then the ending is -ти (-чи), otherwise it is -тъ (-чь).

As examples of all possible varieties of infinitives have been given in § 87, it is unnecessary to repeat them here.

§ 95.

The Gerund.

The present gerund is in most cases formed from the third person plural of the present by cutting off the last three letters, viz. -ють, -утъ, or -ятъ and adding -я, e.g.

неся́ = *carrying* from несутъ

читая́ = *reading* „ чита́ють

говоря́ = *speaking* „ говоря́тъ

сидя́ = *sitting* „ сидя́тъ

стоя́ = *standing* „ стоя́тъ

глядя́ = *looking* „ глядя́тъ.

The following are formed somewhat irregularly:

давая́ = *giving* from даю́тъ

-знавая́ = *recognizing* „ -знаю́тъ

-ставая́ = *standing* „ -стаю́тъ.

N.B. The present gerund from хотѣть = *they wish* has acquired the meaning *although* and is almost always used as a conjunction in this sense.

When the 3rd plural of the present ends in -утъ or -атъ preceded by ж, ч, ш, or щ then the present gerund ends not in -я, but in -а, e. g.

пла́ча = <i>weeping</i>	from	пла́чутъ
и́ща = <i>seeking</i>	„	и́щутъ
мо́лча = <i>being silent</i> ¹	„	мо́лчатъ
ле́жа = <i>lying down</i>	„	ле́жатъ

There is another form of the present gerund which is formed by cutting off the last two letters of the 3rd pl. present (-тъ) and adding -чи. This form is very commonly used by the peasants and in popular poetry, but in literature only a few verbs have it; from the verb быть = *to be*, it is, however, the only form of the gerund ever used, viz.:

бѹдучи, from бѹдутъ.

The past gerund is formed from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense' by cutting off -лъ and adding -въ or -вши, e. g.

бывъ	from	былъ
чита́въ or	}	„ чита́лъ
чита́вши		
ѣ́вши	„	ѣ́лъ.

Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -ши, e. g.

лѣ́гши	from	лѣ́гъ
вѣ́сши	„	вѣ́съ.

Those pasts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -ши, e. g.

вѣ́дши from вѣ́лъ (inf. вѣ́стѣ).

Notice especially:

ше́дши from ше́лъ (inf. итѣ́).

¹ Used abverbially = *in silence*.

§ 96.

The Participles.

The present participle active is formed, like the present gerund, from the 3rd plural of the present tense by cutting off the last two letters -тъ and adding -щій, -шая, -щее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій, хоро́шая, хоро́шее, q. v.

E. g. from лю́бятъ (inf. любі́ть), pres. part. act. любя́щій = *loving*
from веду́тъ (inf. ве́стї), pres. part. веду́щій = *leading* (sc. to)

from зна́ють (inf. знатѣ), pres. part. зна́ющій = *knowing* (sc. who knows).

It must be noticed that the participle, present in form, of the verb бѹду = *I shall be*, viz. бѹдущій, has imperfective future meaning, and commonly means *next*, or *the next*; the neuter бѹдущее is used substantively = *the future*.

§ 97. The past participle active is formed, like the past gerund, from the masc. sing. of the past 'tense', by cutting off -лъ and adding -вшій, -шая, -шее, which word is then declined exactly like хоро́шій.

E. g. from любі́лъ (inf. любі́ть), past part. любі́вшій, &c. = *having loved*

from ѣ́лъ (inf. ѣ́сть), past part. ѣ́вшій, &c. = *having eaten*

from бы́лъ (inf. бы́ть), past part. бы́вшій which is always used to express *former* or *late* (though, N.B., not *the late*, which is покойный). Those pasts which lose the -лъ in the masc. sing. add -шій, -шая, -шее.

E. g. from ўмерѣ́ъ (inf. умерѣ́ть), past part. умерѣ́вшій, &c. = *having died, dead*.

Those parts in which a final -д, -т of the stem has fallen out before the -лъ in the masc. sing. replace the dental and add -шій, &c.

E. g. from ве́лъ (inf. ве́стї), past part. ве́дшій, &c. = *having led*

from шѣ́лъ (inf. итѣ́), past part. шѣ́дшій, &c. = *having gone*

from па́лъ (inf. па́сть) there are two forms: па́дшій and па́вшій = *having fallen*.

§ 98. The present participle passive is formed from the 1st plur. of the present tense, the final -мъ of which is turned into -мый, -мая, -мое, the word thus formed being declined like бѣ́лый; e. g. from чита́емъ (inf. чита́ть), pres. part. pass. чита́емый, &c.; from ви́димъ (inf. ви́дѣть), pres. part. pass. ви́димый, &c.; from любі́мъ (inf. любі́ть), pres. part. pass. любі́мый, &c. (= *favourite*).

A few verbs of class I with stems ending in consonants form the present participle passive irregularly in -омый, &c.

E. g. from несѡмъ (inf. нести), pres. part. pass. несѡмый, &c.

from ведѡмъ (inf. вести), pres. part. pass. ведѡмый, &c.

from искѡтъ = *to seek*, pres. part. pass. искѡмый, &c.

§ 99. The past participle passive is formed from the infinitive in two different ways. One is by cutting off the -тъ of the infinitive and adding -нъ, -на, -но for the short or predicative and -(н)ный, -(н)ная, -(н)ное for the long or attributive form, which word is then declined like бѣлый.

E. g. from сдѣлать = *to make*

past part. pass. сдѣланъ, -на, -но; -ны; сдѣланный, &c.

from потерѣтъ = *to lose*

past part. pass. потерѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; потерѣнный, &c.

from дать = *to give*

past part. pass. данъ, дана, дано; даны; данный, &c.

from осмо́трѣтъ = *to inspect*

past part. pass. осмо́трѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; осмо́трѣнный, &c.

Verbs of Class II with inf. in -нть form the past part. pass. as follows:

from обвинѣтъ = *to accuse*

past part. pass. обвинѣнъ, -на, -но; -ны; обвинѣнный, &c.

from ужѡлить = *to sting*

past part. pass. ужѡленъ, -на, -но; -ны; ужѡленный

from рѡнить = *to wound*

past part. pass. рѡненъ, -на, -но; -ны; рѡненный

from учѣтъ = *to teach*

past part. pass. (short form not used) учѣный (= *learned, a savant*).

The past participle passive of those verbs of class II, the 1st person sing. of the present of which is affected by the following palatal vowel (cf. § 87), is formed from the 1st person sing. of the present in the following way:

from запла́тить = *to pay*

1st sing. pres. заплачу́ (т + ю = чу)

past part. pass. запла́ченный (pronounced запла́ченный)

from сади́тъ = *to set, plant*

1st sing. pres. сажу́ (д + ю = жу)

past part. pass. саже́нный

from *скосить* = *to mow*
 1st sing. pres. *сосу́* (с + ю = шу)
 past part. pass. *ско́шенный*

from *купить* = *to buy*
 1st sing. pres. *куплю́*
 past part. pass. *ку́пленный*.

Notice especially:

from *обидеть* = *to offend*
 past part. pass. *оби́женный*, &c.

A few verbs of this class which have presents in -*шу* form their past participles passive with *ш*.

E. g. from *обратить* = *to turn*
 past part. pass. *обращённый*
 from *просвѣтить* = *to enlighten*
 past part. pass. *просвѣщённый*
 from *посѣтить* = *to visit*
 past part. pass. *посѣщённый*
 and from *отмстить* = *to avenge oneself*
 past part. pass. *отомщённый*.

Many verbs of class I whose stems end in a consonant form their past participles passive from the second person sing., cutting off the ending -*ешь* and adding -*ёнъ*, &c., for the predicative, -*ённый*, &c., for the attributive form.

E. g. from *вести* = *to lead*
 2nd sing. pres. *ведёшь*
 past part. pass. *ведённы́й*
прочесть = *to read through*
 2nd sing. pres. *прочтёшь*
 past part. pass. *прочтённы́й*
стричь = *to shear, cut (hair)*
 2nd sing. pres. *стрижёшь*
 past part. pass. *стрижённы́й*
жечь = *to burn (trans.)*
 2nd sing. pres. *жжёшь*
 past part. pass. *жжённы́й*
 and others.

The other way of forming the past participle passive is by cutting off the -ь of the infinitive and adding -ъ, -а, -о for the short or predicative, and -ый, -ая, -ое for the long or attributive form. This form is by far the less common of the two.

E. g. from	мыть = <i>to wash</i>
past part. pass.	мытый, &c.
from	бить = <i>to hit</i>
past part. pass.	битый, &c.
from	проклясть = <i>to curse</i>
past part. pass.	проклятый, &c.
from	грѣть = <i>to heat</i>
past part. pass.	грѣтый, &c.
from	тереть = <i>to rub</i>
past part. pass.	тёртый, &c.
from	заперѣть = <i>to shut</i> (c. g. a building)
past part. pass.	запертый, &c.

Other common verbs which form their past participles passive in this way are:

начать = <i>to begin</i>	жать = <i>to reap</i>
нажить = <i>to earn</i>	мять = <i>to crush</i>
занять = <i>to occupy, to borrow</i>	одѣть = <i>to dress</i>
покрыть = <i>to cover</i>	пѣть = <i>to sing</i>
жать = <i>to press</i>	брить = <i>to shave</i>

and all verbs in -нуть,

e. g. from	протянуть = <i>to stretch forth</i>
past part. pass.	протянутый, &c.

§ 100.

The Reflexive Verb.

This is formed by the addition of -ся (or -сь), a reduced form of the reflexive pronoun себя, to all parts of the verb, as follows:

купаться = *to bathe* (imperfective and intransitive).

Present.

я	купаюсь
ты	купаешься
онъ, она, оно	купается
мы	купаемся
вы	купаетесь
они, онѣ	купаются

Past.

M. купáлся	} Plur. купáлись
Sing. F. купáлась	
N. купáлось	

Future.

бúду купáться, &c.

Conditional.

купáлся-бы, &c.

*Imperative.*купáйся
купáйтесь*Present Gerund.*

купáясь

Past Gerund.

купáвшись

Present Participle.

купающ́ийся, &c.

Past Participle.

купáвшийся, &c.

Ся is added whenever the part of the verb ends in a consonant or in *ь* or *й*; *сь* when it ends in a vowel. Ся is added in the participles throughout, whether preceded by vowel or consonant.

§ 101.

The uses of the Verb.

In order to use the verb correctly it is necessary to know not only the way it is conjugated but also what aspects it possesses.

This is where the real difficulty begins. It will have been noticed that, compared with other languages, Russian possesses very few tenses in the grammatical sense of the word; this want is supplied by the aspects.

The aspects are different forms of the same verb; the same verb acquires a different meaning according to its aspect. The aspects are formed by altering the verb itself either by prefixing some preposition or by lengthening or otherwise altering the root itself; the personal endings remain unaltered and each aspect of the verb has a more or less complete set of forms, i.e. present, imperative, infinitive, &c.

There are two main divisions of the aspects of the Russian verb:

1. imperfective
- and 2. perfective.

The verbs themselves are called imperfective or perfective according to the aspect in which they are used in any particular case, i.e. a verb is said to be imperfective, or is said to be used in the imperfective aspect, and every verb must necessarily belong

to one or the other division, i.e. must be either imperfective or perfective.

The difference in meaning between these two aspects is that when any one uses an imperfective verb the action described by that verb is in the mind's eye of the speaker INCOMPLETE, or, if in the past, must have been of uncertain duration.

When, on the other hand, any one uses a perfective verb, then the action is either COMPLETE or, if in the future, the speaker must have its completion in his mind's eye.

In English there is of course also variety of aspects, but it is expressed not by altering the verb itself but by the use of auxiliary verbs or adverbs; for instance, *I go*, *I am going*, *I used to go*, *I often go*, *I was going* are imperfective, whereas *I went*, *I am gone*, *I shall go* are perfective.

The majority of simple Russian verbs, i.e. those which are not compounded with any preposition, are imperfective, but from the fact that a given verb is compounded with a preposition it by no means follows that that verb is perfective. Nevertheless it is true that the commonest way of turning an imperfective into a perfective verb is by prefixing to it a preposition.

Now the curious thing is that when a preposition is used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb, that preposition loses its original meaning.

Further, while there is always one preposition in particular which when prefixed to a verb both makes the verb perfective and loses its own original meaning, on the other hand, all the other prepositions when prefixed to the same verb both make it perfective and retain their original meaning, thus altering the meaning of the verb as well.

The difficulty is to know which is the particular preposition in each case which merely makes a given verb perfective, and as it is sometimes one preposition and sometimes another, the only thing for the beginner to do is to make a list of the commonest verbs and learn them by heart, putting down the simple (imperfective) verb and the form of the same verb compounded with that preposition which makes the verb perfective, while allowing the verb to retain its meaning but losing its own.

One of the prepositions most frequently used for transforming an imperfective into a perfective verb is *no*, which in the process

quite loses its meaning of *along* or *over*, and merely defines the space of time during which the action takes place, e.g.

смотре́ть (imperfective) = *to look*

посмотре́ть (perfective) = *to give a look*.

It has already been indicated that not all simple verbs are imperfective and conversely that not all verbs compounded with prepositions are perfective; these categories of verbs will be examined later.

There follow now paradigms of one or two very common verbs in couples, first the simple (imperfective) and then the compound (perfective) verb. It will be noticed that not both aspects of the same verb have an equally complete paradigm. This, as will be explained, is in the nature of things, and is invariably the case.

First the paradigms are given, then remarks on the use of the various parts of the two aspects:

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{дѣлать} \\ \text{сдѣлать}^1 \end{array} \right\} = \text{to do, to make}$$

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	дѣлаю	— (cf. § 102)
past	дѣлалъ	сдѣлалъ
future	буду дѣлать	сдѣлаю
conditional	дѣлалъ-бы	сдѣлалъ-бы
imperative	дѣлай	сдѣлай
infinitive	дѣлать	сдѣлать
pres. ger.	дѣлая	—
past ger.	дѣлавъ	сдѣлавъ
pres. part. act.	дѣлающий	—
past part. act.	дѣлавшій	сдѣлавшій
pres. part. pass.	дѣлаемый	—
past part. pass.	дѣланный	сдѣланный

¹ = съ + дѣлать.

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{писать} \\ \text{на + „} \end{array} \right\} = \text{to write}$$

	<i>Imperfective.</i>	<i>Perfective.</i>
present	пиш ^у	— (cf. § 102)
past	пис ^а лъ	напис ^а лъ
future	буду пис ^а ть	напиш ^у
conditional	пис ^а лъ-бы	напис ^а лъ-бы
imperative	пиши	напиши
infinitive	пис ^а ть	напис ^а ть
pres. ger.	—	—
past ger.	пис ^а въ	напис ^а въ
pres. part. act.	пиш ^у щ ^{ий}	—
past part. act.	пис ^а вш ^{ий}	напис ^а вш ^{ий}
pres. part. pass.	—	—
past part. pass.	пис ^а нный	напис ^а нный

§ 102. The Present (imperfective).

Russian possesses only one present, while English has two: я пиш^у = (1) *I write* (sc. *it is my custom or profession to write*) and = (2) *I am writing* (sc. *at this moment*). Both these meanings are of course imperfective; when one says я пиш^у = *I write*, or я пиш^у = *I am writing*, the speaker does not naturally envisage the termination of his activity. An example of the use of the imperfective present:

что вы д^елаете? = *what are you doing?*

я пиш^у пис^ьмо = *I am writing a letter.*

The imperfective present is frequently used in Russian illogically, instead of the future, as in English; e.g. in telegrams, letters, &c.:

при^езжаю за^втра = *I am arriving to-morrow* (при^езжаю is an imperfective present).

The historic present is often used in narration instead of the past.

Use of the Present in subordinate sentences.

The imperfective present is used in all cases where it is used in English; after verbs of *declaring, feeling, &c.* The subordinate sentence is always introduced by *что*, e. g.

я говорю, что онъ врётъ = *I say that he is lying*

я думаю, что онъ любитъ её = *I think he loves her*

ты знаешь, что я тебя люблю = *thou knowest that I love thee.*

In this connexion it should be noticed that after the verb *видѣть* the so-called paratactic construction is very common in Russian; this is especially frequent in narration. By omitting the *что* it gives the impression of two principal sentences instead of a principal and a subordinate sentence, e. g.

видѣть — летѣть къ нимъ птица = *they see a bird flying towards them* (lit. *they see — a bird is flying towards them*).

Russian is much stricter in the correct expression of time, however, and the present is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences where in English we use the past although we mean the present, e. g.

I did not know that this was so = я не зналъ, что это такъ (lit. *I did not know that this [is] so*)

he told me that he was writing a book = онъ сказалъ мнѣ, что пишеть книгу (lit. = *he told me that he is writing a book*)

she thought he loved her = она думала, что онъ её любитъ (lit. *she thought he loves her*)

and in these cases it would be a very bad mistake to use the past in the subordinate clause.

In conditional clauses the imperfective present is used whenever the condition refers to the actual present; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *если* = *if* (sometimes by *эжели*), and the antithesis in the principal sentence is often expressed by the pronoun to used adverbially, e. g.

если вы хотите, то скажите ему = *if you wish, then tell him*

сдѣлайте это для ней, если вы её любите = *do this for her if you love her.*

When the condition refers to the future the perfective present (= perfective future, q.v.) is usual, though in the cases of some

verbs the imperfective present is used illogically for the future, as in English, e. g.

если можете, то приходите завтра = *if you can, then come to-morrow.*

In concessive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English; the subordinate sentence is introduced by хотя = *although* (sometimes reduced to хоть), не смотря на то, что = *in spite of the fact that*, and the antithesis in the principal sentence is expressed by но = *but*, однако = *nevertheless*, всётаки = *all the same*, or by the enclitic -таки = *yet*,

хотя всё говорят что это правда, я имь всётаки не вѣрю = *although all say that this is true (the truth), all the same I don't believe them.*

In relative clauses—*whoever*, in sentences where the present is necessary, is expressed by the simple relative, e. g.

кто говоритъ это, врётъ = *whoever says this, lies.*

Whoever, whatever, and however are also expressed by the relative with the negative particle ни, which however does not make the sentence negative,

что онъ ни дѣлаетъ, всё ему удастся = *whatever he does, he succeeds in everything*

какъ вы ни стараетесь, вы не сумеете это сдѣлать = *however much you try you will not be able to do this.*

If the relative sentence is negative the ordinary negative particle не is used and not ни,

кто не знаетъ этого человѣка, тотъ не можетъ понять почему его такъ уважаютъ = *whoever does not know this man, cannot understand why people respect him so.*

In causal clauses the imperfective present is very common; the subordinate clause is introduced by потому, что = *because* or такъ какъ = *since* (in letter-writing these are often abbreviated to п. т. ч. and т. к.),

она цѣлуетъ его по тому, что она его любитъ = *she kisses him because she loves him*

такъ какъ вы не хотите сказать мнѣ, я спрошу его = *since you do not wish to tell me, I'll ask him.*

In consecutive clauses the imperfective present is used as in English ; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *что*, e. g.

ОНЪ ТАКЪ БОЛЕНЪ, ЧТО Я НЕ МОГУ ЕГО ОСТАВИТЬ = *he is so ill that I cannot leave him.*

In temporal clauses the subordinate sentences are introduced by *когда* = *when* (often answered by *тогда* = *then*), *пока* = *while*, *между тѣмъ какъ*, *въ то время какъ* = *while*,

КОГДА Я ПИШУ, Я НЕ ЛЮБЛЮ ЧТОБЫ СО МНОЙ ГОВОРИЛИ = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me*

СДИТЕ СО МНОЙ ПОКА Я ОДѢВАЮСЬ = *sit with me while I am dressing.*

In comparative clauses the subordinate sentence is introduced by *какъ* = *how* answered by *такъ*, or *такъ и* = *thus*

КАКЪ ДУМАЕТЪ, ТАКЪ И ГОВОРИТЬ = *as he thinks, thus (too) he speaks.*

The Present (perfective).

It is one of the greatest peculiarities of the Russian verb that the formal present of every perfective verb has future meaning, so that while every perfective verb has a tense which is present in form, it is in meaning always a definite future (cf. § 104).

§ 103.

The Past (imperfective).

This is the equivalent of the imperfect, and its use connotes that the action was more or less habitual or that the period of time during which it lasted is in the mind's eye of the speaker indefinite.

Я ПИСАЛЪ = *I was writing, or I used to write.*

Examples of the use of this tense :

ЧТО ВЫ ДѢЛАЛИ КОГДА Я ВОШЁЛЪ ВЪ КОМНАТУ ? = *what were you doing when I entered the room ?*

Я ПИСАЛЪ ПИСЬМО = *I was writing a letter*

ПРѢЖДЕ ОНА ПИСАЛА МНОГО = *formerly she used to write a lot.*

The use of the imperfective past in subordinate sentences is common in temporal, concessive, and comparative clauses, but presents no difficulties.

It is important to remember that in Russian the present is often used in a subordinate sentence where we use the past.

For the use of *было* with the perfective present (= perfective future), cf. § 104.

The Past (perfective).

This is the equivalent of the aorist and its use connotes that the action is completed; it can never be used for any action that is habitual, frequentative, or indefinite:

я написа́лъ = *I wrote*, or *I have written*, or *I had written*.

Examples of the use of this tense:

я сдѣлалъ это нарочно = *I did this on purpose*

я написа́лъ твоёму́ отцу́ письмо́ = *I have written your father a letter*

что вы сдѣлали? = *what have you done?*

There is one curious use of the perfective past which, owing to its prevalence and peculiarity, deserves special mention. The perfective past of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of быть, viz. было, to convey the meaning that an action was on the point of being completed and was only just prevented; it is the Russian way of saying *was on the point of*, *was just about to* . . . , e.g.

онъ началъ было приподниматься на постѣли чтобъ встать . . . = *he was on the point of beginning to raise himself on the bed, in order to get up* (when some one addressed him and he stopped where he was)

не дожидаясь отвѣта онъ пошёлъ было вонъ = *without waiting for an answer he was just going to leave the room* (when he was stopped)

Алѣша сталъ было отъ ликёра отказываться = *Alesha was about to refuse the liqueur*

я было сказа́лъ ему́, а онъ уже по́ѣхалъ = *I was just going to tell him, but he had already gone.*

Although this construction usually implies an unfulfilled intention it is sometimes used when the action was really accomplished, but was interrupted at the very moment of completion.

Another idiomatic construction with much the same meaning is *чуть было не* with the perfective past, e. g.

онъ чуть было не всталъ съ постѣли = *he almost got up from the bed* (sc. *but didn't*)

я чуть было не упалъ = *I very nearly fell.*

This is in fact the usual way of saying *nearly* followed by a verb, as the adverb *nearly* (почт́а) is almost exclusively used with nouns and adjectives.

The use of the Imperfective Past where that of the Perfective Past is to be expected.

This is very common and for the foreigner immensely increases the difficulty of correct expression. It is most frequent in negative sentences; negation of an action seems to the Russian to demand an imperfective verb. E. g.

я не писа́лъ ему́ may mean: *I was not writing to him*; but it may also mean, and usually does: *I have not written to him*.

Very common phrases are:

вы мне́ давно́ не писа́ли = *you haven't written to me for a long time*

я никогда́ не ви́даль его́ (imperfective) = *I have never seen him*
(N.B. In Russian two negatives do not make an affirmative)

я не слы́жала её (imperfective) = *I have not heard her* (sc. never).

But where the negation refers to one particular event, the perfective may be used, e. g.

не я э́то сде́лать = *it was not I (who) did this*

я не у́зналь васъ = *I didn't recognize you*.

In interrogative sentences also, where the question covers a long period of time, the imperfective is also frequently used (-ли is the interrogative particle):

писа́ли-ли вы	} когда́-нибу́дь ? = <i>have you ever written, done, seen,</i> <i>heard ?</i>
де́лали-ли вы	
ви́дали-ли вы	
слы́хали-ли вы	

In general it may be said that in negative and interrogative sentences the imperfective is, in the nature of things, more usual than the perfective aspect.

A most unexpected use of the imperfective past is made in some cases where the action is quite definite and the most obvious aspect to use would seem to be the perfective. These are cases in which the speaker who uses the imperfective instead of the perfective aspect wishes by so doing to give a slightly indefinite tone to what he is saying; by using the imperfective instead of the

perfective he makes a suggestion, as it were, instead of a statement. To the beginner this seems a gross inconsistency, but it is really a very subtle refinement.

For example, one often hears Russians say :

ОНЪ МНѢ ПИСАЛЪ ОБЪ ЭТОМЪ

when one definite letter is referred to and the meaning can only be : *he wrote to me about this*, or *he did write to me*, &c.; in this case the use of the imperfective may connote hostility or incredulity in the mind of the speaker, or it may be merely intentional vagueness.

Another very common instance is :

ОНЪ ГОВОРИЛЪ МНѢ, ЧТО . . . = *he told me, that . . .*

where a perfective verb would be natural ; in this case there is an English equivalent, for we often say : *he was telling me* when we mean *he told me*.

The imperfective past is used where one would expect the perfective past particularly frequently in the case of the following verbs :

ХОДИТЬ and its compounds, ЪЗДИТЬ, compounds of ЪЗЖАТЬ, and НОСИТЬ, ВОДИТЬ and ВОЗИТЬ and their compounds, amongst others.

These are all verbs of motion and their use in such cases usually implies a stay of short duration and subsequent return to the point of departure, e.g.:

ВЪ ПРОШЛОМЪ ГОДѢ МЫ ЪЗДИЛИ ВЪ РОССІЮ = *last year we went to Russia (for a trip)*

МЫ ВЧЕРА ХОДИЛИ ВЪ ТЕАТРЪ = *yesterday we went to the theatre*

СЕЙЧАСЪ ПРИЪЗЖАЛЪ КО МНѢ ОБОЛѢНСКІЙ И ПРИВОЗИЛЪ ПИСЬМО, ТОЛЬКО ЧТО ПОЛУЧЕННОЕ ИМЪ ОТЪ БРАТА ДМИТРІЯ . . .

Obolenski has just come to (see) me and has brought a letter just received by him from (his) brother Demetrius.

The use of the Perfective Past as an Imperative.

In the case of two verbs the perfective past is used as an imperative ; these are :

ПОШѢЛЪ	} fr. inf. ПОЙТИ = to go (on foot) and
ПОШЛА	
ПОШЛО	
ПОШЛИ	

ПОЊХАЛЪ, &c., fr. inf. ПОЊХАТЬ = to go (sc. in any way except on foot)

It must be noticed that the verb of course agrees with the object addressed, e. g.

пошла собака! = *be gone, be off* (addressing a dog).

The use of the Perfective Past in subordinate sentences.

The perfective past is used in subordinate sentences after verbs of *declaring*, &c., when the event really refers to the past, e. g.

я уже сказа́лъ вамъ, что написа́лъ письмо́ = *I have already told you that I have written the letter*

but it is important to remember that whenever the action is still going on, even though the principal sentence is in the perfective past, the verb in the subordinate sentence must be in the present or the future (cf. § 102).

я ему́ сказа́лъ, что не люблю́ его́ = *I told him that I didn't like him.*

In relative, concessive, temporal, comparative, and consecutive clauses the imperfective and perfective past are of course both common, but its use presents no difficulties; the perfective past is common in temporal clauses beginning with *as soon as* (какъ то́лько), *before* (прежде́ чѣмъ, передъ тѣмъ какъ), *after* (послѣ того́ какъ), *hardly — when —* (то́лько что — какъ —), *as soon as ever* (чуть), *until* (пока не):

какъ то́лько при́халъ, я захвора́лъ = *as soon as I arrived, I fell ill*
онъ сдѣла́лъ это́ передъ тѣмъ, какъ я ему́ написа́лъ = *he did this before I had written to him*

онъ написа́лъ это́ послѣ́ того́, какъ получи́лъ мое письмо́ = *he wrote this after he had received my letter*

то́лько что я прише́лъ, какъ онъ у́меръ = *hardly had I come, when he died*

ты чуть воше́лъ, я вмигъ узна́ла = *thou hadst barely entered, I at once recognized [thee].*

§ 104.

The Future (imperfective).

The imperfective future presents no difficulties; it is a compound tense and is formed by *бѹду* (= *I shall be*) and the imperfective infinitive. It is always used when any future action is referred to the completion of which is not envisaged by the speaker.

It must be remembered that it is only the imperfective infinitive which can be used after *бѹду*; to use a perfective infinitive after

бúду is one of the worst mistakes a foreigner can make. An example of the tense is given in full:

я бúду писáть
 ты бúдешь писáть
 онъ, она бúдетъ писáть
 мы бúдемъ писáть
 вы бúдете писáть
 онѣ, онѣ бúдутъ писáть
 = *I am going to write* (sc. indefinitely).

An example of the use of the imperfective future :

что вы бúдете дѣлать послѣ завтрака ? = *what are you going to do after lunch* (= *in the afternoon*) ?

я бúду писáть, читáть = *I am going to write, read*

вы бúдете писáть мнѣ ? = *you will write to me?* (sc. *more than once*)
 бúду = *I will*.

Стáну, стáнешь, &c. (from стать = *to become, to take up one's stand*), is also used followed by an imperfective infinitive to form this same tense, instead of бúду, but it is much commoner in the written than in the spoken language. It is particularly common in negative sentences.

The use of the imperfective future in subordinate sentences does not present any difficulties, but cf. § 102.

The Future (perfective).

This is in form exactly the same as the present, and is in theory the present tense of the perfective aspect, while in fact it always has future meaning. It is used when the completion of any future action is contemplated by the speaker. The use of this tense is at first the most puzzling for the beginner.

Examples:

я напишú емú теперь = *I shall write to him now*

я сдѣлаю это завтра = *I shall do this to-morrow*.

The imperfective present and the perfective future can of course be used together, e. g.

я посмотрю, что онъ тамъ дѣлаетъ = *I shall have a look, what he is doing there*

while

я смотрю, что онъ дѣлаетъ = *I am watching, what he is doing*.

There is one use of the perfective future which is very idiomatic and requires special notice. The perfective future of any verb can be combined with the neuter singular of the past of *быва́ть* (the imperfective frequentative form of *быть* = *to be*), viz. *быва́ло*, to convey the idea of a perfective or definite action which used to take place often or customarily in the past:

заидёт она́ быва́ло ко мнѣ чай пить = *she used often to look in on me to have tea* (заидёт = *she will look in on*, perfective)

онъ быва́ло ска́жетъ мнѣ: 'Принеси́ стака́нъ воды́' = *he would often say to me: 'Bring me a glass of water.'*

Быва́ло can also be used with the imperfective present to express an imperfective habitual action in the past, but this construction is not so common.

The perfective future is also used in narration like a historic present, e.g.

Татья́на то вздохне́тъ, то о́хне́тъ = *at one moment Tatyana would sigh, at another she would groan.*

It is also frequently used where one would expect *I cannot* followed by a perfective infinitive, e.g.:

не разберу́ ниче́го, всё вздоръ = *I can't make out a word, it's all nonsense* (lit. *I shall not be able to make out*).

Use of the Future in subordinate clauses.

The future is often used in Russian in subordinate sentences, where in English we use the past or the verb *would, should*, e.g. after verbs of *declaring, &c.*:

He said that he would be there, or that he was going to be there =
онъ сказа́лъ, что бу́детъ тамъ (lit. = *he said that he will be there*)

I knew that he would do this, or that he was going to do this =
я зна́лъ, что онъ э́то сдѣлае́тъ (= *I knew that he will do this*)

She did not know that I was going to write = она́ не зна́ла, что
я напи́шу

&c.

In relative clauses the perfective future is used after *кто ни* = *whoever*, *что ни* = *whatever*:

что вы ни ска́жете, я вамъ не пове́рю = *whatever you may say, I shall not believe you.*

The use of the perfective future is especially common in temporal clauses with the meaning of the future perfect where in English illogically use the present, e.g.

напишете, какъ только приѣдете = *write as soon as you arrive*
(lit. *shall arrive*)

подумайте хорошенько, передъ тѣмъ какъ сдѣлаете это = *reflect well before you do this* (lit. *will do*)

скажемъ вамъ всё послѣ того, какъ вернемся = *we shall tell you everything after we return* (lit. *shall return*).

N.B. какъ is often used alone with the meaning *when*. *Until* is usually expressed by пока не, though не is sometimes omitted, e.g.

я не напишѹ, пока не получѹ отъ него письмо = *I shall not write, until I have a letter from him*.

The perfective future is often used in conditional clauses where we use the present illogically:

если онъ сдѣлаетъ это, я закричѹ = *if he does this* (lit. *will do*)
I shall scream.

§ 105. The Conditional (imperfective and perfective).

The conditional, as already explained in § 92, is not a separate tense in form, but is merely compounded of the past and the particle бы. It can be formed from the imperfective as well as from the perfective past, but it is far more commonly formed from the latter.

The peculiarity of the tense from the syntactical point of view is that it can refer to the future as well as to the past, e.g.

я бы сдѣлалъ = *I should have done, or I should do*

что вы бы написали? = *what would you have written? or what would you write?*

это было-бы невозможно = *that would have been impossible, or that would be impossible*.

Other uses of the Conditional.

The conditional is very common in relative sentences beginning with *whoever, whatever*, expressed in Russian by the relative pronouns кто что, followed by the бы of the conditional and the negative particle ни:

кто бы это ни написалъ, я ему скажѹ .. = *whoever wrote this, I shall tell him*

что бы вы ни сдѣлали, ничего не поможетъ = *whatever you do, nothing will help*

что бы это ни стоило, надо это сдѣлать = *whatever it cost, we must do this*

что бы ни случилось, поѣдемъ = *whatever happens, we shall go.*

The conditional is used in unfulfilled conditional sentences, both in the principal and in the subordinate sentences; in the latter it is joined to the word *если* (= *if*) and is usually reduced to *бъ*, e.g.

я бы сдѣлать это, еслибы могъ = *I should have done this if I had been able*

еслибы она хотѣла, она бы написала = *if she had wished (to), she would have written.*

But it must be carefully observed that if the condition is still capable of fulfilment either in the present or the past, these tenses are used in Russian and not the conditional, e.g.

если можете, напишите теперь = *if you can, write now*

я буду очень радъ, если вы сдѣлаете это. = *I should be very glad if you did this (lit. = I shall be very glad if you will do this).*

The conditional is used in final clauses where the subject of the subordinate is not the same as that of the principal sentence; *бы* is always joined to the conjunction *что* which introduces the subordinate sentence, e.g.

я пишу ему, чтобы онъ узналъ правду = *I am writing to him in order that he may learn the truth*

онъ дѣлаетъ это, чтобы мы замѣтили его = *he is doing this in order that we may notice him*

она помогла ему, чтобы онъ потомъ помогъ ей = *she helped him in order that he might later help her.*

The conditional is used in concessive clauses if the sense is hypothetical, e.g.

хотя-бы зная, что вы тамъ, я бы не могъ придти = *even though I had known you were there I should not have been able to come.*

The conditional is used after all verbs of wishing, commanding, and praying, both affirmative and negative; the subordinate sentences are introduced by *чтобы* or *чтобъ*, e.g.

я хочу, чтобы онъ это сдѣлалъ = *I wish him to do this (lit. I wish that he would do this)*

она́ хочетъ, чтобъ я ей написа́лъ = *she wishes me to write to her*
 (. . . чтобъ я ей писа́лъ would mean *to write more than once,*
often)

онъ приказа́лъ, чтобы́ вы пошли́ къ нему́ = *he ordered you to go to him*

она́ проси́ла, чтобы́ мы это сдѣла́ли = *she begged us to do this.*

The conditional is often used after verbs of declaring, feeling, and believing when the verb in the principal sentence is negated; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы* or *чтобъ*, e.g.

я не говорю́, чтобы́ это было́ такъ = *I do not say, that this is so*

я не думаю́, чтобы́ онъ это сдѣла́лъ = *I do not think that he did it*

я не вѣрю́, чтобы́ было́ опа́сно = *I don't believe that it is dangerous*

когда́ я пишу́, я не люблю́ чтобы́ со мной говори́ли = *when I write I don't like people to talk to me.*

In conversation, however, the present and past are often used instead of the conditional, and when the subordinate sentence refers to the future, then the future only is used, e.g.

я не думаю́, что бу́детъ холо́дно = *I don't think that it will be cold.*

The conditional, negated, is often used after verbs of fearing (*боя́ться*) expressing a positive fear; the subordinate sentence is introduced by *чтобы́* or *какъ-бы*, e.g.

я бою́сь, чтобы́ вы не простуди́лись = *I am afraid that you will catch cold*

я бою́сь, какъ-бы онъ не узна́лъ = *I am afraid he will find out*

though *что* followed by the perfective future can also be used in such cases, and must be if the fear is negative, e.g.

я бою́сь, что онъ мнѣ не напи́шетъ = *I am afraid that he will not write me.*

The conditional is also used invariably after certain negative expressions, e.g.

невозмо́жно, чтобы́ это было́ пра́вда = *it is impossible that this is true* (lit. *the truth*)

невыбро́йтно, чтобы́ онъ написа́лъ мнѣ = *it is improbable that he would write me, or that he will write.*

The particle *бы* is sometimes used by itself in certain expressions elliptically, e.g.

вотъ-бы хорошо! = *there, wouldn't that be nice!*

For the use of *бы* with the infinitive cf. § 107.

§ 106. The Imperative (imperfective and perfective).

The imperative is used in Russian as in English. The difference between the imperfective and the perfective imperative is that the former implies a command of a more general nature, while the latter refers to the immediate present, e.g.

смотри, смотрите! = *look out (sc. take care)!*

посмотри, посмотрите! = *look here!*

слушайте меня! (inf. слушать) = *listen to me (sc. take my advice)!*

слушайте! (inf. слушать) = *listen!*

Very often the imperfective imperative is used when it is a question of polite request rather than of a peremptory command; this is especially so in the case of the verb *to take*, inf. брать (imperfective), and взять (perfective), e.g.

берите это = *take this*

is more polite than

возьмите, though the latter is often used.

The same holds good of the verb *to hand, to serve*, inf. подавать (imperfective), подать (perfective), e.g.

подавай(те) обед! = *serve the dinner!*

is more polite than

подай(те) мне счёт! = *give (lit. hand) me the bill!*

The imperatives of the verb *to allow, to let*, inf. пускать (imperfective), пустить (perfective), followed by the 3rd sing. of the perfective future, are used to express the 3rd sing. of the imperative (cf. § 93), e.g.

пусть он пускай скажет вамъ = *let him tell you*

пусть сдѣлаетъ = *let him do it*

пусть напишетъ = *let him write.*

The imperative *давай(те)* is very commonly used colloquially with the meaning *let's*, e. g.

давай(те) играть въ карты! = *let's have a game of cards!*

to which the answer usually is:

давай(те) = [*yes*] *let's!*

The imperative *дай(те)* is often used with the meaning *let*, e. g.

дай(те) мнѣ говорить! = *let me speak.*

In prohibitions the imperfective is used, e. g.

не давай(те) ей говорить! = *don't let her speak.*

In negative commands the imperfective imperative is almost invariably used, even when the prohibition only covers a definite act or period of time, e. g.

не пиши(те) ему! = *don't write to him!* (= either *now*, or *in future*)

не смотрите! = *don't look!*

не говори(те) ему! = *don't tell him!*

не говори(те)! = *don't talk about it!*

(for the use of the infinitive in commands cf. § 107).

An exception is the verb

to forget, inf. *забывать* (imperfective), *забыть* (perfective)

of both of which the imperative is quite common, e. g.

не забывай(те) меня! = *don't forget me*

but *не забудь(те) что я вамъ сказалъ!* = *don't forget what I told you!*

не забудь(те)! = *don't forget!*

не забудь(те) написать мнѣ! = *don't forget to write to me!*

(cf. *незабúдра* = *forget-me-not*).

Use of the Imperative in conditional sentences.

The imperative is frequently used in Russian in unfulfilled conditional sentences; in this construction the imperative can be combined with any noun or pronoun, e. g.

будь этотъ домъ дешевле, я бы купилъ его = *if this house had been cheaper, I should have bought it* (lit. = *be this house cheaper*).

In this construction the perfective imperative is always used in spite of the negative:

не случись тамъ лодка, я бы утонулъ = *if a boat hadn't happened [to be] there, I should have been drowned*

не сдѣлай онъ этого, она бы пришла = *if he had not done this, she would have come*

скажи я словó, онъ бы и написалъ = *if I had said the word, he would have written*

чужого не желай—своего не теряй = *if you don't covet other people's goods, you won't lose your own.*

There is a very idiomatic use of the imperative which is especially common in narration and deserves mention. This is a combination of the imperative of the perfective verb *взяться* = *to appear* (lit. *to take oneself*), viz. *возьмись* with the words *откуда ни* = *whencesoever*, e. g.

вдругъ, откуда ни возьмись, заяцъ! = *suddenly, as if from nowhere, there appeared a hare!*

Notice also the following idiomatic uses of the imperative:

того и смотри, что онъ упадѣтъ! = *I am afraid that* (sc. *at any moment or before we know where we are*) *he will fall* (lit. = *look out!*)

поминай какъ звали! = *you'll never see [him] again* (lit. = *remember how they called him, sc. his name*)

кажись (instead of *кажется*) = *it seems, one would think.*

Another idiomatic use of the imperative is with the conjunction *хоть*, when it acquires the meaning *you may as well* . . .

если вы не поможете въ нашей просьбѣ, то ужъ не знаемъ, какъ п быть: просто хоть въ петлю ползай! = *if you don't help us in our request, we simply shan't know what to do: we may as well go and hang ourselves!* (lit. *climb into the noose*)

ничего нельзя съ этимъ сдѣлать, хоть брось = *nothing can be done with this, you may as well fling it away.*

Sometimes *хоть* = *even though* (= *хотѣ*) in this same construction:

хоть убей, не скажу = *even though you kill me, I shall not tell.*

§ 107. The Infinitive (imperfective and perfective).

The difference in meaning between the two aspects of the infinitive has already been explained; it remains to give some examples of the various uses of the infinitive.

In expressions of a general character the imperfective infinitive is always used, e. g.

писать книги неприятно = *to write books is unpleasant*

while if a single event is referred to the perfective is of course necessary, e. g.

сколько у него денег? трудно сказать = *how much money has he? it is difficult to tell.*

The following idiomatic use of the infinitive should be noticed:

ничего делать = *there is nothing to be done*

онъ пьетъ отъ ничего делать = *he drinks because he has nothing to do (lit. from doing nothing)*

говорить ничего (or ничего и говорить)! = *there's nothing more to be said!* (sc. *that goes without saying*)

(cf. § 51)

ужь такъ и быть = *such is fate, or very well then, let's make the best of it!*

стало-быть = *consequently . . . or in that case, I suppose . . .*

After verbs of *beginning, continuing, ceasing, finishing, &c.*, the imperfective is used, e. g.

уже начали играть = *they have already begun to play*

онъ продолжалъ читать = *he continued to read*

они перестали говорить = *they ceased talking*

я кончилъ писать = *I have finished writing*

and of course all the more when these verbs are negated.

After the verb *to know how to*, inf. уметь (imperfective), суметь (perfective), the imperfective and perfective infinitives respectively are used, e. g.

онъ уметь делать фокусы = *he knows how to do tricks*

сумете-ли вы это сделать? = *will you know how to do this?*

After the verb *to have time to*, inf. успѣвать (imperfective), успѣть (perfective), the perfective is naturally always used, e.g.

я каждый день успѣваю написать пять писемъ = *every day I manage to write five letters*

успѣете-ли вы это сдѣлать сегодня? = *shall you have time to do this to-day?*

After the verb *to be able*, inf. мочь (imperfective),¹ both aspects are used, according to the sense, e.g.

можете-ли вы это сдѣлать? = *can you do this?*

я не могу говорить (imperfective) = *I can't speak* (sc. *am physically unable*)

я не могу сказать (perfective) = *I can't say*

я не могъ писать = *I could not write* (sc. *was physically unable*)

я не могъ написать = *I could not write* (sc. *just then, that once*), or *I have been unable to write* (sc. *till now*)

The perfective future of this verb is supplied as a rule by the perfective verb:

сумѣть = *to know how to*,

but this again is not used where it is a question of surmounting physical difficulties. In this case the Russians as often as not use the imperfective present могу, &c., illogically with future meaning, just as we do in English, e.g.

я могу придти завтра = *I can come to-morrow* (sc. *shall be able to*).

The imperfective future of мочь is not used; its place is taken by the phrase

бѣду въ состояннн + inf. = *I shall be in a position to ...*

After the verb *to wish*, inf. хотѣть (imperfective), either aspect can be used, e.g.

я хочу писать = *I wish to write* (sc. *be an author*)

я хочу написать письмо = *I wish to write a letter*

я не хочу говорить (imperfective) = *I don't want to talk*

я не хочу сказать (perfective) = *I don't want to say*

я хотѣлъ говорить = *I wanted to speak*

я хотѣлъ сказать = *I meant to say.*

¹ N.B. The perfective aspect of мочь is смочь, pres. смогу = *I shall be able*, but this is very seldom used; whenever it is, it implies the surmounting of great physical difficulty.

After verbs such as любить = *to like*, предпочитать = *to prefer*, не любить = *to dislike*, the imperfective infinitive is of course the more usual.

After verbs of *refusing, agreeing, &c.*, either aspect can be used, though the perfective is the commoner.

Use of the Infinitive instead of the Future.

This is common in such phrases as :

что-же дѣлать? = *what are we to do? (what is to be done?)*

написать-ли ему? = *shall I write to him?*

что написать? = *what shall I write?*

пойти и сказать ему = *I shall go and tell him (or let us . . .)*

какъ намъ быть? = *how are we to manage?*

зачѣмъ продать? = *why are you (or we) going to sell? (= why sell?)*

сказать вамъ = *shall I tell you?*

какъ вамъ сказать = (lit. = *how shall I tell you?*) *how shall I put it?*

Use of the Infinitive with the conditional particle.

This occurs in such phrases as :

посмотрѣть-бы? = *shall we have a look?*

Often it is merely the verb было that has been omitted, e.g.

хорошо-бы поѣхать = *it would be nice to go*

попробовать-бы? = *shall we have a try (or a taste)?*

Use of the Infinitive instead of the Imperative.

This is especially common in public notices, e.g.

ѣхать шагомъ! (imperfective) = *drive at walking speed!* (cf. *aller au pas!*)

никого не пускать! (imperfective) = *don't let any one go!*

наплевать! = *spit!* (sc. *take no notice of it!*)

The infinitive плевать can even be used in place of a finite verb, e.g.

я плевать на твоего хозяина! = *I don't care in the least about your master!*

Use of the Infinitive in subordinate sentences.

In final clauses the infinitive is used when the subject of the subordinate is the same as that of the principal sentence (cf. § 105),

e. g.

я пишу́ ему́, чтобы́ узнать правду = *I am writing to him in order to find out the truth*

онъ дѣлаетъ это, чтобы́ помочь мнѣ = *he is doing this in order to help me.*

In conditional clauses the infinitive is very common, e. g.

если́ ему́ написать, онъ сдѣлаетъ сей-часъ = *if we write to him, he will do it at once*

если́ вамъ сказать, вы не повѣрите = *if I tell you, you won't believe [me].*

Sometimes the *если* is omitted, and the infinitive used in the principal as well as in the subordinate sentence, e. g.

много́ желать — добра́ не видать = *if you wish for much, you'll see no good*

пойти́ — такъ пойти́! = *if we are going, then let's go!*

A very curious idiomatic use of the infinitive is mentioned here, as it is at first extremely puzzling to the foreigner; it is often, though not always, in the form of an answer to a question, and consists of the infinitive followed by the past or present of the same verb, while in meaning it always implies dissatisfaction or the non-fulfilment of a possibility, e. g.

Question :

слыхали-ли вы про́ это? = *have you heard about this?*

Answer :

слыхать-то слы́халъ, но не вѣрю = *oh yes, I have heard, but I don't believe it.*

Question :

видали-ли вы царя́? = *have you seen the tsar?*

Answer :

видать-то видать! = *oh yes, I've seen him (sc. but never spoken to him)*

говорить-то она́ говоритъ, а ничего́ не дѣлаетъ = *she talks a lot, but does nothing*

умѣть-то я умѣю, но я не хочу́ = *I know how to [do it], but I don't want to.*

§ 108. The Gerund (imperfective and perfective).

The gerund is used in Russian as in other languages to avoid the complication of an explanatory (usually subordinate) sentence.

The present gerund is naturally formed only from imperfective verbs; the past gerund from both imperfective and perfective. Whenever a gerund from a perfective verb does have the ending of the present gerund, viz. -я, it has perfective (past) meaning, e.g. from

inf. увидѣть = *to perceive*

past perfective gerund

увидѣвши }
and увидя } = *having perceived*.

Examples of the use of the Gerunds.

бѣдучи въ городѣ, мы зашли къ вамъ = *being in the town, we looked you up*

прочитавъ письмо, онъ поѣхалъ = *having read the letter, he departed*

говоривъ три часа, онъ сѣлъ на своё мѣсто = *having spoken for three hours, he sat down in his place*.

Some gerunds are very commonly used to express attitude, e.g.

писавъ лежа = *to write while lying down*

пѣвъ сидя = *to sing sitting*

говорить стоя = *to speak standing up*.

The following idioms should be noticed :

молча = *in silence*

мало погодя }
or немного погодя } = *after a little* (lit. = *having waited a little*)
нѣхотя = *unwillingly*.

Some gerunds have quite lost their original meaning and are used as adverbs or conjunctions :

from хотѣть = *to wish*

хотя = *although*

(N.B. willingly is охотно)

from зрѣть = *to look*

зря = *at random, without reflection, to no purpose*

from *смотре́ть* = *to look*

несмотря на + acc. = *in spite of*

смотря = *all according*

e. g. *смотря какъ* = *that's just as it may happen*

смотря по какой цѣнѣ . . . = *according to the price at which . . .*

and from *умѣть* = *to know how to*, the popular form *умѣючи* = *having the knowledge*, e. g.

это надо сдѣлать умѣючи = *you must have the knack to do this*.

§ 109. The Participles (imperfective and perfective).

The participles are little used in conversation but are very common in literature.

There are naturally no present participles formed from perfective verbs. Past participles active are formed from almost all verbs of both aspects ; past participles passive are formed from all perfective (transitive) verbs and from a considerable number of imperfective (transitive) verbs.

As regards the use of the participles it may be mentioned that some of them are used as nouns, e. g.

<i>для курищихъ</i>	= <i>for smokers</i>
<i>для некурищихъ</i>	= <i>for non-smokers</i>
<i>будущее</i>	= <i>the future</i>
<i>въ будущемъ</i>	= <i>in the future</i>
<i>подлежащее</i>	= <i>the subject (gram.)</i>
<i>сказуемое</i>	= <i>the predicate „</i>
<i>насекомое</i>	= <i>insect</i>

while in general it may be said that the present participles both active and passive are far more commonly used as pure adjectives without being considered as participles at all, e. g.

слѣдующій = *following* is always used for the next

въ слѣдующемъ году = *next year*

свѣдущій = *knowing, learned*

онъ очень свѣдущъ по + dat. = *he is very learned in . . .*

настоящій = (1) *present (of time)*, = (2) *real*

будущій = *future*

любимый = *favourite*

зависимый = *dependent*

независимый = *independent*.

Notice the idiom :

повидимому = *apparently*.

Present participles passive beginning with не- correspond to our e.g. in — *able*

e.g. неумолимый = *inexorable*

неоцѣнимый = *invaluable*.

From several verbs two forms of participle are in use, the regular present participle in -щій (which is phonetically not Russian but Old Bulgarian) and the purely adjectival form in -чий (which is the original Russian form of the present participle);

e.g. from горѣть = *to burn* (intrans.)

горящій = *burning*

горячий = *hot* (esp. of *water, food, &c.*).

Notice the following present participles which are very common in letter-writing :

многоуважаемый (or -ая) . . .

глубоко ————— (or -ая) . . . = *much or deeply respected*

уважающий (or -ая) Васъ

глубоко ————— (or -ая) Васъ = *(deeply) respecting you*

любящий (or -ая) Васъ = *your loving*.

The past participle active, too, is but rarely used as a participle. One or two forms are very commonly used as adjectives or nouns, e.g.

бывшій = *former*

прошедшій = *past*¹ (esp. in grammar).

Notice

сумасшедшій = *madman*

from сойти съ ума = *to go mad* (lit. *to go off one's mind*).

The past participle passive is by far the most commonly used of all the participles, and even is not rare in conversation. This participle also often takes the place of the passive, e.g.

къмъ эта книга была переведена? = *by whom was this book translated?*

¹ Though the forms

прошлый = *last*

прошлое = *the past*

newly-formed from the perfective past прошедъ are far commoner.

кѣмъ эта пьеса написана? = *by whom is this play written?*

она одѣта въ чёрномъ = *she is dressed in black.*

In this case also many participles are almost entirely used as adjectives, e.g.

проклятый = *accursed*

вышеупоминутый = *above-mentioned.*

Notice the idioms:

занято = *occupied* (of places in train, &c.)

заперто = *shut* (of buildings)

биткомъ набито = *chock-full.*

§ 110. The Reflexive Verb and the expression of the Passive.

The reflexive verb can sometimes be used, as well as the passive participles, to express the passive, but as a matter of fact phrases which in other languages are in the passive are in Russian very often expressed in the active, e.g.

he is very much liked would be always translated *его очень любятъ*

he is hated = *его очень не любятъ*

this is not done = *этого не дѣлають*

though the phrase *это не дѣлается* is also common

this paper is little read = *эту газету мало читають* or *эта газета мало читается.*

As a matter of fact, reflexive verbs in Russian are often merely the intransitive forms of otherwise transitive verbs, e.g.

мыть = *to wash* (trans.)

мыться = *to wash* (intrans.)

купать = *to bathe* (trans.)

купаться = *to bathe* (intrans.)

продолжать = *to continue* (trans.)

продолжаться = *to continue* (intrans.)

родиться = *to be born*

(родить = *to bear child*)

but N.B.

онъ продолжаетъ писать = *he continues to write.*

Some transitive verbs when used intransitively require the complete reflexive pronoun instead of the abbreviated form -ся, e.g.

чувствовать	= to feel (trans.)
чувствовать себя	= to feel (intrans.)
я себя чувствую нехорошо	= I don't feel well
как вы себя чувствуете?	= how do you feel?

Many reflexive verbs which are intransitive have no corresponding transitive form, e.g.

сморгаться = to blow one's nose	признаться = to confess
улыбаться = to smile	казаться = to seem
смеяться = to laugh	оставаться = to remain
становиться = to become	случаться = to happen.
надбаться = to hope	простудиться = to take cold

бояться = to fear is both transitive and intransitive.

The verbs

правиться = to please	любоваться = to admire
касаться = to touch, concern	наслаждаться = to enjoy

are looked upon as intransitive, and take the first the dative, the second the genitive, and the last two the instrumental.

A few reflexive verbs are only used impersonally:

смеркается = it is growing dark
мнѣ хочется = I want to . . .
мнѣ нездоровится = I don't feel well
мнѣ не спится = I can't get to sleep, I don't sleep well
мнѣ снится = I see in my dream, (he) appears to me in my dream
чешется = it itches
разумется = it is understood, of course.

Notice the curious use of the impersonal verb:

приходится (lit. = it comes itself)

1. = one has to

приходится играть = one has to play

(мнѣ) пришлось заплатить = (I) had to pay

что придется намъ сдѣлать? = what shall we have to do?

2. = stands in relation to (me) + inst.

она приходится мнѣ двоюродной сестрой = she stands in the relationship of first cousin to me = she is my first cousin.

§ 111.

Impersonal Verbs.

Besides the impersonal reflexive verbs already mentioned, a few others, the use of some of which is peculiar, may be noticed here. Some do not call for comment, e. g.

болѣть = *it hurts*

у меня голова болѣть = *my head aches*

„ зубъ „ = *my tooth* „ (this can of course also be used in the plural)

подморáживаетъ = *it is beginning to freeze.*

It is freezing is usually expressed merely by the noun морóзъ = *frost* (sc. *there is a frost*), e. g.

сегодня морóзъ = *it is freezing to-day*

similarly сегодня оттепель = *it is thawing.*

It is raining can only be expressed by:

дождь идѣть (= *rain is going*)

дождь льётъ = *it is pouring*

cf. снѣгъ идѣть = *it is snowing*

градъ идѣть = *it hails*

молнія сверкаетъ = *the lightning is flashing*

громъ гремитъ = *the thunder is thundering.*

These phrases are expressed in the past and the future as follows:

вчера шёлъ дождь = *yesterday it rained*

ночью выпалъ снѣгъ = *there has been a fall of snow in the night*

пошёлъ дождь = *it has started raining*

вчера былъ сильный морóзъ = *yesterday there was a hard frost*

будетъ дождь = *it is going to rain (there will be of rain)*

не будетъ дождя = *it is not going to rain*

пересталъ дождь = *the rain has stopped.*

The impersonal verb can also be used, e. g.

выпало много снѣгу (gen.) = *much snow has fallen (it has fallen out much of snow)*

замело or занесло доро́гу снѣгомъ = *the road has got covered with snow.*

To smell (intrans.) is expressed as follows:

пахнетъ хорошо = *it smells nice*

пахнетъ розами = *it smells of roses*

and by a curious impersonal use of the verb нести = *to carry*

отъ него несётъ духами = *he smells of scent* (lit. = *it carries with scents from him*).

To suffice:

хватаетъ (imperfective) = *it suffices*

хватить (perfective) = *it will suffice*

недостаётъ = *it wants*

e.g. недостаётъ мнѣ егó = *I miss him*.

Notice the following:

достаточно } = *that is enough*
довольно }

можно = *one may*

можно сказать = *one may say*

можно говорить = *talking is allowed*

можно? = *may one?*

нельзя = *one may not, it is impossible*

нельзя сказать = *one can't say*

but N.B. неизвестно = *one can't tell* (sc. *know*)

известно, что . . . = *it is well known that*

возможно } = *it is possible*
можетъ быть }

возможно, что откажется = *it is possible that he will refuse*

можетъ быть онъ знаетъ = *perhaps he knows*

the latter phrase is very commonly transposed: быть можетъ

невозможно = *it is impossible*

невозможно, чтобы онъ не знаетъ = *it is impossible that he does not know*

должно быть = lit. *it must be*, but comes to mean *it is probable, I expect*

должно быть, онъ знаетъ = *I expect he knows*

стало быть = lit. *it has become* (or *begun*) *to be*, but comes to mean *consequently, I suppose*

стало быть, вы егó не любите? = *then I suppose (I must conclude that) you don't love him?*

стало быть — такъ! = *I suppose it is so*

не стало + gen. = *there is no more of*

у него не стало денегъ = *his money came to an end*

надо = *it is necessary*

мнѣ надо́ это сдѣлать сегодня́ = *I must do this to-day*

не надо́ = *one must or need not, don't*

не надо́ написать сегодня́ = *it is not necessary to write (the letter) to-day*

ска́зать вамъ? = *shall I tell you?*

нѣтъ, не надо́ = *no, don't*

ну́жно = *it is necessary*

не ну́жно = не надо́

слѣ́дуетъ = *it is proper, ought (lit. = follows)*

не слѣ́дуетъ = *it is not correct*

вамъ слѣ́довало-бы . . . = *you ought to . . .*

Notice the impersonal use of the verb *to begin*:

начина́етъ темнѣть = *it is beginning to grow dark*

but когда́ начина́ется конце́ртъ? = *when does the concert begin?*

Other common impersonal expressions are:

предсто́итъ мнѣ + inf. = *I have got to . . .*

оста́ется мнѣ + inf. = *it remains for me to . . .*

состо́итъ (изъ or въ) = *it consists (of)*

состо́ится = *it will take place.*

§ 112. How to express the verb *to be*.

The present tense of the verb *быть* = *to be* has long since become obsolete; it is either omitted absolutely or its place is taken, in writing by a long hyphen, in speaking by a pause, e.g.

я англича́нинъ = *I am an Englishman*

это — мой сы́нъ = *this is my son*

whether the pause is made or not entirely depends on how much emphasis the speaker wishes to put in the subject of the sentence.

Notice the fact that the phrases *this is, that is, there are, those are*, are usually expressed by *это* irrespective of the number and gender of the predicate, e.g.

это́ моя́ жена́ = *this is my wife*

это́ мои́ дѣ́ти = *these are my children*

unless of course special emphasis is laid on the pronoun, e.g.

тѣ́ кни́ги е́го, а э́ти — мои́ = *those books are his, but these are mine.*

Here is, here are are often expressed by *вотъ*, e.g.

вотъ мой домъ = *here is my house*,

вотъ can also mean *over there is*; if very remote distance is pointed to *вонъ тамъ* can be used.

The 3rd sing. of the present is still very commonly used in certain cases, e.g.

тѣ есть = *that is (to say)*

т. е. = *i. e.*

Combined with *у* and a pronoun it is the commonest way of saying *have*, e.g.

у меня есть = *I have*

у него есть = *he has*

though as often as not in these cases the verb *есть* is omitted.

In shops, restaurants, &c., when asking a question, *есть* must be used, e.g.

Question :

есть у васъ икра = *have you any caviare?*

Answer :

есть = *we have*,

the negative answer is always

нѣтъ or *нѣту* = *we have not*.

Нѣтъ is really a contraction of *не есть*, and has come to be the ordinary word for *no*; it also means *there is not* and thus *have not*, e.g.

у меня нѣтъ = *I have not*

у меня нѣтъ отца = *I have no father*.

То есть is sometimes added the interrogative particle *-ли*, though *есть* by itself, if the voice is inflected accordingly, is quite sufficient to indicate the question.

Есть-ли is apt to sound like *если* (= *if*), and *если* is in fact a corruption of *есть-ли*.

Нѣтъ-ли у васъ? is also a very common way* of saying *have you got?*

Найдётся-ли у васъ? from *найти* (= *to find*) is also much used to express the same thing.

Есть is also used for *there is, there are* in such cases as:

есть такіе люди, которые не любятъ икры = *there are such people, who don't like caviare*

есть многія вещи, о которыхъ я бы хотѣлъ съ вами поговорить = *there are many things about which I should like to talk to you*
 въ этой книгѣ есть много хорошаго = *in this book there is much that is good.*

The 3rd sing. *есть* and the 3rd pl. *суть* are also used in emphatic declarations or definitions; it should be noted, however, that *суть* is very little used, and that *есть* can be used for any of the three persons singular or plural, e.g.

Тургеневъ любить русскихъ какъ онѣ *есть* = *Turgenev loved the Russians as they are*

жизнь *есть* трудъ для будущаго поколѣнія = *life is labour for the next generation.*

Owing to the fact that *есть* is so seldom used, single adverbs acquire the meaning of whole sentences, e.g.

холодно	= <i>it is cold</i>
тепло	= <i>it is warm</i>
жарко	= <i>it is hot</i>
можно	= <i>it is possible</i>
надо	= <i>it is necessary</i>
мнѣ холодно	= <i>I am cold, &c.</i>

The 3rd sing. of the present of *быва́ть*, the imperfective frequentative of *быть*, is often used:

это часто *быва́етъ* = *that often happens*

это никогда не *быва́етъ* = *that never happens*

онъ у насъ *быва́етъ* = *he sometimes comes to see us.*

The past tense of *быть* does not call for special mention. It is often used to express the idea of visits, e.g.

я *былъ* у нихъ вчера = *I went to see them yesterday.*

The neuter is often used impersonally:

тамъ было двѣдцать *человѣкъ* = *there were twenty people there.*

(For other uses of *было* and *бывало* cf. §§ 103, 104.)

The future *бúду* presents no difficulties. Notice the idiom:

бúдетъ! = *enough!*

(For uses of the future, conditional, imperative, and infinitive of *быть* cf. §§ 104-107.)

§ 113. Various forms of Imperfective and Perfective Verbs.

It has already been remarked that most perfective verbs are formed from imperfective verbs by prefixing a preposition to the latter, and that the preposition used for this purpose loses its meaning. It is impossible to tell which preposition in each particular case is used for the particular purpose of making the imperfective verb perfective, as various prepositions are thus used, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
смотреть	<i>to look</i>	посмотрѣть
писать	<i>to write</i>	написать
дѣлать	<i>to do</i>	сдѣлать
знать	<i>to know</i>	узнать
and others.		

The only thing that can be said is that *по* is used in an infinitely greater number of cases for this purpose than any other preposition. But it must be remembered that while one preposition merely makes the imperfective verb perfective and loses its own meaning, all the other prepositions when compounded with the same verb *both make the verb perfective and endow it at the same time with their own special meaning*. For instance:

разсмотреть = *to examine closely*
 приписать = *to ascribe, to add in writing*
 передѣлать = *to do over again, to alter*.

These verbs, as has been remarked, are perfective; the imperfective verbs corresponding to them in meaning, i. e. compounded with the same preposition, are the so-called frequentative imperfective verbs, which form a subsidiary category of imperfective verbs. These verbs are frequentative (or iterative) for the most part only in name; the large majority of them are quite ordinary imperfective verbs. Their peculiarity is that even when they are preceded by a preposition they do not, like other verbs, become perfective. They remain imperfective, forming the ordinary imperfective verb corresponding to a perfective verb which has been made perfective by having a preposition added to it and at the same time been altered in meaning by that preposition. These frequentative imperfective verbs are all formed by some alteration of the stem of the verb, either by lengthening it or by

altering the vowel which precedes the infinitive ending. These verbs seldom occur in their simple form, i. e. uncompounded with a preposition, but one or two are quite commonly used, e. g.

бы́вать (from быть) = *to be often*

это́ быва́етъ = *that sometimes happens*

я у нихъ быва́ю = *I am in the habit of going to see them*

говори́вать (from говори́ть) = *to be in the habit of saying*

онъ такъ говори́валъ = *he often used to say so.*

Such verbs are really frequentative in meaning. But in the great majority of cases, i. e. when compounded with prepositions, they are merely ordinary imperfective verbs. They may have frequentative meaning, but this as a rule has to be specially expressed by the addition of some such word as *часто* = *often*. E. g. забыва́ть is theoretically the frequentative imperfective from забы́ть (perfective) = *to forget*; я забыва́ю *may* mean *I often* (or *always*) *forget*, but on the other hand it may mean merely *I am forgetting*. Similarly разгово́ривать = *to converse* is theoretically a frequentative imperfective from говори́ть, but it may mean either *I converse* or *I am conversing*. For this reason it is better not to label these verbs *frequentative* or *iterative*, but to call them what they are in the great majority of cases, viz. *compound imperfective verbs*, in order to differentiate them effectively from the large number of imperfective verbs which are simple and from the perfective verbs the majority of which are compound, while some are simple.

It is now time to examine the various ways in which these compound imperfective verbs are formed.

In a large number of cases they are formed by the insertion of the syllable -ыв- or -ив- between the stem of the verb and the infinitive ending. Compound imperfectives from almost all verbs ending in -ать and from many others besides are formed thus and belong to this category. Verbs of this formation which in their original form contain the vowel o in their stems, usually, but not necessarily, change this to a in the compound imperfective. The verbs are here arranged in series of four, e. g.

1. пыта́ть = *to try* = simple imperfective.

2. попы́татъ = *to try* = compound perfective with loss of meaning by preposition.

3. испытать = *to experience* = compound perfective with retention of meaning by preposition.

4. испытывать = compound imperfective with retention of meaning by preposition. *It must of course not be imagined that the particular compound perfective, with retention of meaning by the preposition, is in each example here given the only compound perfective formed from that verb.* In the case of some verbs such compounds are very numerous; the examples here given are chosen at random, but they include only verbs that are commonly used:

Imperfective.

писать	<i>to write</i>
приписывать	<i>to ascribe</i>
дѣлать	<i>to do</i>
передѣлывать	<i>to alter</i>
смотреть	<i>to look</i>
разсматривать	<i>to examine</i>
читать	<i>to read</i>

прочитывать *to read through*

искать	<i>to search</i>
взыскивать	<i>to exact</i>
работать	<i>to work</i>
зарабатывать	<i>to earn</i>
слушать	<i>to listen</i>
подслушивать	<i>to overhear</i>
ломать	<i>to break</i>
проламывать	<i>to break through</i>
строить	<i>to build</i>
устанавливать	<i>to arrange</i>
смеяться	<i>to laugh</i>
осмѣивать	<i>to deride</i>
красть	<i>to steal</i>
обкрадывать	<i>to rob</i>
тянуть	<i>to pull</i>
стягивать	<i>to tighten, close</i>

Perfective.

написать
приписать
сдѣлать
передѣлать
посмотрѣть
разсмотрѣть
почитать
прочитать
прочесть
alternative verbs
identical in meaning

поискать
взыскать
поработать
заработать
послушать
подслушать
сломать
проломать
построить
устроить
засмеяться
осмеять
украсть
обокрасть
потянуть
стянуть

Those verbs of class II, the 1st sing. of whose present is affected by the personal ending -ю (which changes into -y, cf. §§ 87, 88), are similarly affected in their compound imperfective forms, though no longer belonging to the same class, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
проси́ть	<i>to request</i>	попроси́ть
спра́шивать	<i>to ask (a question)</i>	спроси́ть
дави́ть	<i>to squash</i>	подави́ть
зада́вливать	<i>to throttle</i>	задави́ть

From a number of perfective verbs the compound imperfectives are formed by inserting -ва- between the stem and the infinitive ending, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
бítiь	<i>to hit</i>	побítiь
уби́вать	<i>to kill</i>	уби́ть
пѣ́ть	<i>to sing</i>	спѣ́ть
запѣ́вать	<i>to strike up a song</i>	запѣ́ть
пи́ть	<i>to drink</i>	вы́пить
пропи́вать	<i>to spend on drink</i>	пропи́ть
кры́ть	<i>to cover</i>	покры́ть
раскры́вать	<i>to uncover, open, discover</i>	раскры́ть
мы́ть	<i>to wash (trans.)</i>	вы́мыть
умыва́ться	<i>to wash (intrans.)</i>	умы́ться

Notice especially the verbs (for other simple perfective verbs cf. § 114):

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
дава́ть	<i>to give</i>	да́ть
pres. даю́		pres. дамъ
дѣ́вать	<i>to put</i>	дѣ́ть
pres. дѣ́ваю		pres. дѣ́ну

and быва́ть = *to be often, to happen* (from бы́ть = *to be*).

Some verbs of this category cannot be formed in complete series in this way, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
зна́ть	<i>to know</i>	узна́ть
узна́вать	<i>to learn (news), to recognize</i>	

Imperfective.

pres. узнаю

узнаешь

—

*to take one's stand*¹

уставать

to grow tired

pres. устаю

and many other very common compounds

болеть

to be ill

commonly used only as impersonal }

болит

it aches

заболеть

*to fall ill**Perfective.*

pres. узнаю

узнаешь

стать

pres. стану

устать

pres. устану

заболит

Those verbs which, both in their imperfective and perfective aspects, have no preposition, i.e. do not require a preposition to form their perfective aspect, can of course also be compounded with any preposition in both aspects, the preposition always retaining its meaning, e.g.

Imperfective.

давать

to give

подавать

to hand, serve

продавать

to sell

придавать

to add

передавать

to hand over

издавать

to edit, publish

раздавать

to distribute

воздавать

to reward

выдавать

to deliver

подаваться

to submit

сдавать

to deliver

создавать

to create

задавать

to set (e.g. questions)

додавать

*to complete**Perfective.*

дать

подать

продать

придать

передать

издать

раздать

воздать

выдать

поддаться

сдать

создать

задать

додать

(N.B. Many of the compounds here given have other meanings besides those given here, and of course the same applies to other verbs.)

¹ For its other meanings cf. p. 214.

Imperfective.

дѣвать	<i>to put</i>
одѣвать(ся)	<i>to dress</i>
надѣвать	<i>to put on</i>
раздѣвать(ся)	<i>to undress</i>
переодевать(ся)	<i>to change dress</i>
задевать	<i>to catch hold of</i>
(-ставать)	<i>to take one's stand</i>
переставать	<i>to cease</i>
заставать	<i>to find (sc. at home)</i>
доставать	<i>to obtain</i>
оставаться	<i>to remain</i>
вставать	<i>to get up (sc. from bed)</i>
разставаться	<i>to part (intrans.)</i>

Perfective.

дѣть
одѣть(ся)
надѣть
раздѣть(ся)
перодеѣть(ся)
заѣть
стать
перестать
застать
достать
остаться
встать
разстаться

Verbs with infinitives in -чь, -зть, -сти form their compound imperfectives by adding -ать to their stem, e.g.

Imperfective.

мочь	<i>to be able</i>
помогать	<i>to help</i>
влекать	<i>to drag</i>
привлекать	<i>to attract</i>

Perfective.

смоть
помочь
повлечь
привлечь

The verb ѣсть forms its compound imperfective as follows:

Imperfective.

ѣсть	<i>to eat</i>
сѣдять	<i>to eat up, consume</i>
надоѣдать(intrans.)	<i>to importune</i>

Perfective.

поѣсть
сѣсть
надоѣсть(intrans.)

The cognate verb to dine:

Imperfective.

обѣдать

Perfective.

{ пообѣдать
 отобѣдать

is from the noun обѣда = dinner.

Verbs of which the stem contains two adjacent consonants insert *ы* or *и* between these in the compound imperfective, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
слать ¹	<i>to send</i>	послать
pres. шлю		
высылать	<i>to banish</i>	выслать
жать	<i>to press</i>	пожать
pres. жму		
прижимать	<i>to squeeze</i>	прижать
звать	<i>to call</i>	позвать
pres. зову		
называть	<i>to name</i>	назвать
тереть	<i>to rub</i>	потереть
pres. тру		
оттирать	<i>to wipe</i>	обтереть
жечь	<i>to burn (trans.)</i>	сжечь
pres. жгу		
зажигать	<i>to light, kindle</i>	зажечь
ждать	<i>to wait</i>	
pres. жду	<i>to await</i>	
ожиждать	<i>to expect</i>	
пождать	<i>to wait (for)</i>	подожждать
дождаться	{ <i>to attain by waiting</i> <i>to await until (arrival)</i> }	дождаться

There are several verbs of this kind which are never used except in composition, e.g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
умирать	<i>to die</i>	умереть
		pres. умру
начинать	<i>to begin</i>	начать
		pres. начну

¹ This verb has an imperfective frequentative of its own, *посылать* = *to send*.

The verb *-ять* (only used in composition with prepositions, cf. § 88) forms its compound imperfectives as follows:

Imperfective.

[имать]	
внимать	<i>to attend, hear</i>
занимать	<i>to occupy, to borrow</i>
нанимать	<i>to hire</i>
N.B. понимать	<i>to understand</i>
поднимать	<i>to lift</i>
(or подымать)	
принимать	<i>to accept</i>
снимать	<i>to take off (clothes)</i>
	<i>to photograph</i>
N.B. —	<i>to take</i>
cf. § 117	
[взимать = <i>to levy money</i>]	
поймать	<i>to catch</i>

Perfective.

[-ять]	
внять (pres. not used)	
занять	
pres. займý	
займёшь	
нанять	
pres. наймý, &c.	
понять	
pres. поймý	
поймёшь, &c.	
поднять	
pres. поднимý	
поднимёшь, &c.	
принять	
pres. примý	
примёшь, &c.	
снять	
pres. снимý	
снимёшь	
взять	
pres. возьмý	
возьмёшь	
cf. § 117	

In the case of this verb, the stems of which are *-им-* and *-ъм-*, the *н* between the preposition and the stem is explained by the fact that certain prepositions, e.g. *съ* and *въ*, originally ended in a nasal, which was dropped after such forms as *снять* had become crystallized. On the analogy of these forms, the *н* was inserted between the preposition and the stem in other compounds of this verb.

The pasts of all these perfectives are *зánять, зaniлá, зáпiлo*; *зáняли: пóняли, пoнялá, пoнялo*; *пóняли, &c.*, i.e. they are, as to be expected, formed from the infinitive.

§ 114.

Perfective Simple Verbs.

Not all perfective verbs are compound. There is a fair number of simple verbs which are already perfective in themselves without the prefixing of any preposition.

Such verbs are

дать = *to give*

дѣть = *to put*

стать = *to take one's stand, to become, to begin.*

Besides these there are two categories of simple verbs which are perfective; the first contains verbs of various classes, most of them very common:

Imperfective.

бросать	<i>to throw</i>
кончать	<i>to finish</i>
ложиться	<i>to lie down</i>
лишать	<i>to deprive</i>
падать	<i>to fall</i>
прощать	<i>to forgive</i>
———ся	<i>to say good-bye</i>
пускать	<i>to let (go)</i>
рѣшать	<i>to decide</i>
скакать	<i>to leap</i>
становиться	<i>to become</i>
ступать	<i>to step</i>
садиться	<i>to sit down</i>
хватать	<i>to seize</i>
являться	<i>to appear</i>

Perfective.

бро́сить
ко́нчить
лечь
ли́шить
пасть
прости́ть
———ся
пусти́ть
рѣ́шить
ско́чить
стать
ступи́ть
сѣсть
хвяти́ть
яви́ться

Of one verb the imperfective aspect is compounded with a preposition, while the perfective aspect is a simple verb, viz.

покупать	<i>to buy</i>	купи́ть
----------	---------------	---------

These verbs being perfective when they are simple, are none the less perfective when compounded with a preposition. Of the corresponding simple imperfective verbs, some when compounded with a preposition become perfective and require the formation of a compound imperfective, others remain imperfective.

Imperfective.

ступать	<i>to step</i>
поступать	<i>{ to enter (an institution) }</i> <i>{ to behave }</i>
решать	<i>to decide</i>
разрешать	<i>to permit</i>
являться	<i>to appear</i>
объявлять	<i>to declare</i>
	<i>but</i>
бросать	<i>to throw</i>
выбрасывать	<i>to throw out</i>
становиться	<i>to become</i>
останавливаться	<i>to stop</i>
садиться	<i>to sit down</i>
пересаживаться	<i>to change trains</i>

Perfective.

ступить
поступить
решить
разрешить
явиться
объявить
бросить
{ выбросить
{ выбросать
стать
остановиться
сесть
пересесть

The other category contains a number of verbs ending in -нуть, which by means of this ending connote a single (definitive, perfective) action, e. g.

Imperfective.

глядеть	<i>to look</i>
двигать	<i>to move (trans.)</i>
кричать	<i>to cry out</i>
кидать	<i>to fling</i>
махать	<i>to wave</i>
плевать	<i>to spit</i>
совать	<i>to shove</i>
трогать	<i>to touch</i>
шептать	<i>to whisper</i>

Perfective.

глянуть
двинуть
крикнуть
кинуть
махнуть
плюнуть
сунуть
тронуть
шепнуть

It is important not to confuse these with other simple verbs ending in -нуть which are imperfective, e. g. тянуть = *to pull*, which are made perfective in the ordinary way, viz. by prefixing a preposition, потянуть, крѣпнуть = *to grow strong*, compound perfective окрѣпнуть. These verbs in -нуть being perfective are naturally also perfective when compounded with a preposition; the corresponding simple imperfective verbs are usually lengthened by the already familiar process (insertion of -ыв- or -ив-) to form the corresponding compound imperfective, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
глядѣть	<i>to look</i>	гляну́ть ¹
взгля́дывать	<i>to look up</i>	взгляну́ть
совать	<i>to shove</i>	суну́ть
высовывать	<i>to shove out</i>	высуну́ть
трогать	<i>to touch</i>	трону́ть
дотро́гиваться	<i>to come into (physical) contact with</i>	дотро́нуться
крича́ть	<i>to cry out</i>	крикну́ть
вскри́кивать	<i>to scream</i>	вскри́кнуть
Notice		
кида́ть	<i>to fling</i>	кину́ть
прики́дываться	<i>to pretend to be but</i>	прикину́ться
покида́ть	<i>to abandon</i>	покину́ть
and		
висѣ́ть	<i>to hang (intrans.)</i>	повисну́ть

Some verbs only used in composition with prepositions cannot be formed in complete series, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
обманыва́ть	<i>to deceive</i>	обману́ть
вздыха́ть	<i>to sigh</i>	вздохну́ть
исчеза́ть	<i>to disappear</i>	исчезну́ть
привыка́ть	<i>to grow accustomed to</i>	привыкну́ть
отвыка́ть	<i>to disaccustom oneself to</i>	отвыкну́ть

§ 115. Imperfective Compound Verbs.

Conversely not all compound verbs are perfective. We have already seen that the prefixing of a preposition does not necessarily make a verb perfective, e. g. разгово́ривать = *to converse*, уби́вать = *to kill*, покупа́ть = *to buy*, поступа́ть = *to behave*. Besides these there is a very large number of compound imperfective verbs which form a class by themselves. These correspond in meaning to a series of compound perfective verbs ending mostly

¹ A perfective verb погля́деть also exists.

in -ить or -ѣть and belonging to class II. The corresponding compound imperfectives are formed not by lengthening the root with additional syllables, but by altering the infinitive ending from -ить or -ѣть to -ать, thus making them verbs of class I. In the course of this alteration the phonetic changes observable in the 1st sing. of the present of verbs of class II (palatalization of the last consonant of the stem and substitution of the ending -у for -ю, e. g. вижу from видѣть, or insertion of л, e. g. люблю from любить) are reproduced throughout the whole of the compound imperfective owing to the influence of the palatal vowel я, which in certain cases becomes а (i. e. -ять, &c., become -ать, &c.).

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
встрѣчать	to meet	встрѣтить
воображать	to imagine	вообразить
выражать	to express	выразить
навѣщать	to visit	навѣстить
объяснять	to explain	объяснить
ошибаться	to be mistaken	ошибиться
отвѣчать	to answer	отвѣтить
перемѣнять	to change	перемѣнить
повторять	to repeat	повторить
получать	to receive	получить
позволять	to permit	позволить
посѣщать	to visit	посѣтить
ударять	to strike (trans.)	ударить
убѣждать	to convince	убѣдить
употреблять	to use	употребить
Notice вѣшать	to hang (trans.)	повѣсить
	and many others.	

In the case of a few verbs which are used in their simple forms it is possible to form the already familiar complete series of four, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
сѣвить	to put	посѣвить
оставлять	to leave	оставить

and many other very common compounds.

Compound Imperfectives formed by change of accent.

In the case of a few verbs the form of the compound imperfective differs from that of the simple imperfective (except for the addition of the preposition) only in the position of the accent, e. g.

Imperfective.

па́даты

to fall

пропа́даты

*to get lost**Perfective.*[пасть]¹

пропа́сть

notice also the very common verbs

попа́даты

to hit upon, to happen on

попа́сть

сы́пать

to scatter

посы́пать

pres. сы́плю, сы́плюшь

pres. посы́плю, посы́-

плюшь

засы́пать

to cover by strewing

засы́пать

pres. засы́паю

pres. засы́плю, засы́-

плюшь

notice also the very common variations of this verb

засы́пать

to fall asleep

засну́ть

просы́паться

to awake

просы́тся

двѣ́гать

to move (trans.)

двѣ́нуть

pres. двѣ́гаю

and двѣ́жу

подвѣ́гать

to move up to (trans.)

подвѣ́нуть

sometimes the r is retained in the perfective

воздвѣ́гать

to erect

воздвѣ́гнуть

бѣ́гать

to run

побѣ́гать

избѣ́гать

to avoid{ избѣ́жать
избѣ́гнуть**§ 116. Simple Imperfective Verbs with two forms.**

There is a certain number of simple imperfective verbs which have two distinct forms, distinct, though cognate in meaning. They are both equally imperfective, but while one describes an action that is actually in progress, the other connotes potentiality

¹ The compound perfective упа́сть, pres. упаду́ (compound imperfective упа́даты), is more commonly used than пасть.

or habit. The former are called *actual simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *concrete*), the latter *potential simple imperfectives* (sometimes called *abstract*). A good example is the verb *to go* (sc. *on foot*); to express this there are two distinct imperfective verbs:

1. идти (sometimes spelt идти́)
2. ходить.

The first means *actually to go* or *to be going*, the second *potentially to go* or *to be in the habit of going*. Examples:

куда вы идёте? = *where are you going?* (sc. *now*)

ходите-ли вы в театр? = *do you go to the theatre?* (sc. *ever or often*)

я иду гулять = *I am going for a walk*

я уже хожу = *I can now walk* (sc. *after an illness*).

The verb *to fly* is:

1. летѣть
2. летать

вотъ летѣтъ аэроплѣнъ! = *there is an aeroplane flying!*

птицы летаютъ = *birds fly*.

The verb *to carry* is:

1. нести
2. носить

почтальонъ несётъ вамъ писмо = *the postman is bringing you a letter*

я всегда ношу калоши = *I always wear galoshes*.

These verbs are the following:

<i>Actual.</i>			<i>Potential.</i>
inf.	блестѣть	<i>to shine</i>	блистѣть
pres.	{ блещу		блистаю
	{ блестѣшь		блистаешь
inf.	бѣжать	<i>to run</i>	бѣгать
pres.	{ бѣгу		бѣгаю
	{ бѣжишь		бѣгаешь
inf.	везти	<i>to convey</i>	возить
pres.	{ везу		вожужу
	{ везёшь		возинешь

	<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
inf.	вести́	<i>to lead</i>	води́ть
pres.	{ веду́		вожу́
	{ веде́шь		води́шь
	гна́ть	<i>to drive, chase</i>	гона́ть
	гоню́		гоня́ю
	гони́шь		&c.
	идти́	<i>to go (on foot)</i>	ходи́ть
	иду́		хожу́
	иде́шь		ходи́шь
	летѣ́ть	<i>to fly</i>	лета́ть
	лечу́		лета́ю
	лети́шь		&c.
	лома́ть	<i>to break</i>	лома́ть
	ломлю́		лома́ю
	ломи́шь		&c.
	лѣзть	<i>to climb, clamber</i>	ла́зить
	лѣзу́		ла́зю
	лѣзе́шь		ла́зешь
	нести́	<i>to carry, bear</i>	носи́ть (to wear)
	несу́		ношу́
	несе́шь		носи́шь
	плыть	<i>to float, swim</i>	пла́вать (to swim)
	плыву́		пла́ваю
	плыве́шь		&c.
	ползти́	<i>to crawl</i>	полза́ть
	ползу́		полза́ю
	ползе́шь		&c.
	сади́ть	<i>to set, plant</i>	сажа́ть
	сажу́		сажа́ю
	сади́шь		&c.
	ѣ́хать	<i>to go (in any way</i>	ѣ́здить
	ѣ́ду	<i>except on foot, e.g.</i>	ѣ́зжу
	ѣ́дешь	<i>by train or on horseback)</i>	ѣ́здишь

Two verbs belonging to this category are defective, viz.

<i>Actual.</i>		<i>Potential.</i>
ВІДѢТЬ	<i>to see</i>	ВІДѢТЬ
ВІЖУ		
ВІДЫШЬ (sometimes contracted to ВПШЬ)		
СЛЫШАТЬ	<i>to hear</i>	СЛЫХАТЬ
СЛЫШУ		
СЛЫШИШЬ		

The presents of the potential imperfectives of these verbs are not used; the infinitives and the pasts are, on the other hand, quite common, especially in negations and interrogations, e.g.

ЕГО НЕ ВИДѢТЬ = *he is not to be seen* (sc. *I can't see him*)

СЛЫХАЛИ-ЛИ ВЫ ЭТОГО ПѢВЦА? = *have you ever heard this singer?*

When these verbs are compounded with prepositions it is usually the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with loss of meaning by the preposition, though such are also sometimes formed by the *potential imperfective*. It is also the *actual imperfective* which forms the *compound perfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition. On the other hand, it is the *potential imperfective* which forms the *compound imperfective* with retention of meaning by the preposition:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
летѣть (actual)	<i>to fly</i>	полетѣть
летать (potential)		
перелетать	<i>to fly over</i>	перелетѣть
вести	<i>to lead</i>	повести
водѣть		
проводить	{ <i>to lead through</i> <i>to spend (time)</i> }	провести
везти	<i>to convey</i>	повезти
возить		
привозить	<i>to bring (in a conveyance)</i>	привезти

Imperfective.

нести́	to carry
носить	to wear
приноси́ть	to bring (by hand)
идти́	to go (on foot)
ходи́ть	
приходи́ть	to come (on foot)
находи́ть	to find
проходи́ть	to pass

Perfective.

понести́
поноси́ть ¹
прине́сти
пойти́
сходи́ть ²
прийти́ (or приде́ти)
найти́
пройти́

Needless to say, both forms of all these verbs have many other compounds besides those given here.

The two verbs *ви́дѣть* and *слы́шать* have the following perfectives:

Imperfective.

ви́дѣть	to see
вида́ть	
слы́шать	to hear
слыха́ть	

Perfective.

увидѣ́ть
увида́ть
услы́шать
услыха́ть

The presents of *увидѣ́ть* and *услы́шать* are very common, being the ordinary (perfective) futures of *ви́дѣть* and *слы́шать*, e.g.

я уви́жу его́ за́втра = *I shall see him to-morrow.*

The presents of *увида́ть* and *услыха́ть* are never used. Their pasts on the other hand are quite common, and it is to be noticed that there is no essential difference in meaning between

увида́лъ and уви́дѣль

¹ This verb is seldom used, the perfective future of *нести́* (without idea of any particular direction) is *понести́*; from *носить* (which usually, but not always, means *to wear*) the imperfective future is naturally *бѣду носить*, while *I shall wear* (= *I shall put on*) is *надѣну* from *надѣть*.

² *сходи́ть* has a special meaning, viz. *to go, with the implication of speedy return*, e.g.

я схожѹ́ на почту́ = *I shall just run round to the post (and shall be back soon).*

There is also an imperfective verb *сходи́ть* (perfective *сойти́*) = *to come or go off*, e.g.

онъ сходи́тъ съ ума́ = *he is going off his head*
сходи́ться, сойти́сь = *to foregather.*

or between

услыхать and услышать.

Notice the compounds:

Imperfective.

завидовать

ненавидѣть

предвидѣть

to envy

to hate

to foresee

Perfective.

позавидовать

возненавидѣть

(only imperfective),

Two verbs deserve special mention, viz. бѣжать and ѣхать; these form their compound perfectives from the actual imperfective, but the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the potential imperfective but from yet a third imperfective form of the word, only used in composition:

Imperfective.

бѣжать

бѣгать

перобѣгать

to run

to run across

избѣгать

убѣгать

прибѣгать

to avoid

to run away

{	to run to
	to have recourse to

ѣхать¹

ѣздить

пріѣзжать

уѣзжать

to go (except on foot)

to arrive

to depart

Perfective.

побѣжать

побѣгать

перобѣжать

{	избѣжать and
	избѣгнуть

убѣжать

прибѣжать

прибѣгнуть

поѣхать

съѣздить²

пріѣхать

уѣхать

плыть and лѣзть have the same peculiarity, forming their compound imperfectives not with the verbs плавать and лазить but with -плыва́ть and -лѣза́ть; they are not given in full here, because they are of much less common occurrence.

¹ ѣхать and ѣздить form parallels to идти and ходить, e.g.

я ѣду въ Лондонъ = I am travelling to London

я каждый годъ ѣзжу въ Россію = I travel to Russia every year.

² съѣздить forms a parallel to сходить and means to take a journey and come back soon, e.g.

вчера мы съѣздили къ знакомымъ = yesterday we drove to see some acquaintances (sc. we didn't stay long or we came home again the same day).

It has already been mentioned that the *potential imperfectives* are not often used to form the *compound perfectives*, but usually to form the *compound imperfectives*, e. g. *перелетать*, *проводить*, &c. But we have seen that they can be so used, e. g. *сходить*, *съездить*. Besides these there are, however, numerous instances of the use of the *potential imperfectives* to form a *compound perfective*; in such cases the corresponding compound imperfective is formed not from the actual imperfective but by the already familiar process of the insertion of -*ив*- or -*ив-*, or by some other alternative form. It is to be noticed that several potential imperfectives which are in themselves intransitive become transitive when they enter this category of compound perfectives. For the sake of lucidity the verbs are repeated in full:

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
нести́	<i>to carry</i>	понести́
носить	<i>to wear</i>	поносить
приноси́ть	<i>to bring (by hand)</i>	принести́
изна́шивать	<i>to wear out (materials, clothes)</i>	износи́ть
notice also		
выно́сить	<i>to carry out, to endure</i>	вынести́
вына́шивать	<i>to wear out (clothes)</i>	выноси́ть
вести́	<i>to lead</i>	повести́
води́ть		
прово́дить	<i>to spend (time)</i>	провести́
провожа́ть	<i>to accompany (walking)</i> <i>to see off (at station)</i>	} проводи́ть
идти́	<i>to go (on foot)</i>	
ходи́ть		пойти́
уходи́ть	<i>to go away</i>	сходи́ть
уха́живать ¹		уйти́
ѣ́хать	<i>to go (except on foot)</i>	уходи́ть ²
ѣ́здить		поѣ́хать
разъѣ́жаться	<i>to depart in different directions</i> <i>to miss one another on the road</i>	съѣ́здить
разъѣ́живать	<i>to wear out (the road with traffic)</i>	разъѣ́хаться
		разъѣ́здить

¹ = *to flirt with* or *to nurse*; construction: *за* + instrumental.

² = *to waste (money)*, *to wear out (a horse)*.

and somewhat anomalously

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
изъѣзжать	{ to travel over all parts of, visit exhaustively }	изъѣздить

Notice the causative verbs :

расти	to grow (intrans.)	вырасти
выращать	to make grow	вырастить
and поить = to water (animals)		
from пить = to drink.		

§ 117.

Anomalous Verbs.

A few simple imperfective verbs have as compound perfectives corresponding to them in meaning verbs from other stems ; these are :

<i>Imperfective.</i>		<i>Perfective.</i>
брать	to take	взять
pres. берѹ		pres. возьмѹ
берѣшь		возьмѣшь
бить	to hit	ударить
pres. бью		pres. ударю
бьѣшь		ударишь
класть	to put	положить
pres. кладѹ		pres. положѹ
кладѣшь		положишь
ловить	to catch	поймать
pres. ловлю		pres. поймѹ
ловѣшь		поймаешь
говорить	to say, tell	сказать
pres. говорю		pres. скажѹ
говоришь		скажешь

Several of these verbs have compound perfectives or imperfectives formed from the same stem as well as those given here, but it has so happened that e. g. the verb сказать has come to be the regular perfective corresponding in meaning to говорить ; there is a perfective verb поговорить, but it means to have a little talk, while

сказать and говорить both mean *to say* or *tell* (говорить can also mean *to talk*). It is thus possible to form fuller though incomplete series of these verbs, e. g.

<i>Imperfective.</i>			<i>Perfective.</i>	
брать	= to take	←	собрать	= to collect
собирать	= to collect		взять	= to take
взимать	= to levy money	←	побить	= to hit a little
бить	= to hit		убить	= to kill
убивать	= to kill		ударить	= to hit
ударять	= to hit	←		
класть	= to put			
укладывать	= to pack (trans.)		уложить	= to pack (trans.)
_____ся	= " (intrans.)		_____ся	= " (intrans.)
полагать	= to suppose	←	положить	= to put
				= to suppose

Notice the idioms:

полагается? = *is it included (in the price)?*

ПОЛОЖИМЪ = *let us suppose*

ЛОВИТЬ = to catch
 НАЛОВАЛИВАТЬ = to catch a lot

←

НАЛОВИТЬ = to catch a lot
 → ПОЙМАТЬ = to catch

Cf. the cognate verb

понимать	= to understand	понять	= to understand
говорить	= to say, tell, talk	поговорить	= to talk a little
разговаривать	= to converse	уговорить	= to persuade
уговаривать	= to try to persuade	отговорить	= to dissuade
отговаривать	= to try to dissuade	отказать(ся)	= to refuse
отказывать(ся)	= to refuse	указать	= to point out
указывать	= to point out	оказать(ся)	= to turn out to be
оказываться	= to turn out to be	приказать	= to order
приказывать	= to order	заказать	= to „ , register
заказывать	= „	наказать	= to punish
наказывать	= to punish	доказать	= to prove
доказывать	= to prove	показать	= to show
показывать	= to show	разсказать	= to relate
разсказывать	= to relate	сказать	= to tell, say
сказывать	= „		

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

[Cf. *кажется* = { *it seems*,
 sc. I think

казалось = *it seemed*

показалось = *it seemed*]

Certain verbs are only perfective, e.g.

очутиться = *to find oneself suddenly anywhere*

очнуться = *to wake up anywhere*

состояться = *to take place.*

Others are only imperfective, e.g.

зависеть = *to depend*

значить = *to mean*

недоумевать = *to be perplexed,*
 to hesitate

нуждаться = *to need*

повиноваться = *to submit to*

подлежать = *to be open to* (e.g.
 doubt)

подражать = *to imitate*

покровительствовать = *to protect*

предстоять = *to be imminent*

предчувствовать = *to have a pre-*
 sentiment of

преследовать = *to persecute*

принадлежать = *to belong*

содержать = *to contain, maintain*

содействовать = *to help, contri-*
 bute to (morally)

сожалеть = *to regret*

состоять = *to consist*

сочувствовать = *to sympathize*

стоять = *to cost*

Others can be used as imperfectives or perfectives, having only the one form, e.g.

велеть = *to order, command*

жениться = *to marry (of the man only)*

ранить = *to wound.*

Some verbs, apparently perfective, are derived from compound nouns, e.g.

*Imperfective.**Perfective.*

разумется *it is understood*
(*разумъ*)

забьется *to trouble about anything*
(*забота*)

наследоватъ *to inherit*
(*наследникъ*)

позабьется

унаследоватъ

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION WITH VERBS, NOUNS, ETC.

§ 118. The following is not intended to be a complete list of all the various meanings acquired or lent by prepositions in composition; such a list to be exhaustive would require a whole book to itself.

Here only some of the most important varieties of meaning are given as a help to the beginner, who is often puzzled by the apparently numberless compound words. It is important to remember that most of the prepositions can be used merely to make a perfective out of an imperfective verb. Also that in many cases besides this the original meaning of the preposition is barely apparent. In beginning to read Russian it is always helpful to cut off the preposition or prepositions of any unfamiliar compound word, when the root (and the meaning) will often become clear.

There are five prepositions which are only used in composition, viz. *воз-, вы-, нпз-, пере- (пре-), and раз-*.

ВОЗ- (ВЗ-)

The meaning is originally *up*, e.g.

воздвигать ipfv. = *to erect*

but this often lapses, e.g.

возражать ipfv. = *to reply*

возразить pfv. = „

sometimes it merely forms the perfective :

возненавидеть pfv. = *to conceive hatred for*

возможно = *it is possible.*

When the word with which it is compounded begins with a vowel it sometimes, though by no means always, contracts to *вз-*, e.g.

взойти pfv. = *to rise (of the sun, &c.)*

взять pfv. = *to take*

but *pres. возьмý* = *I shall take*

взмóрье = *deep water* (at sea, as opposed to the shallow water of an estuary).

If the word with which it is compounded begins with к, х, п, т, it becomes *во-*, e. g.

восходъ солнца	= sunrise
востокъ	= the East
Воскресѣніе	= Sunday (Resurrection)
воспрещать ipfv. }	= to forbid
воспретитъ pfv. }	

it sometimes appears as *в-* before words beginning with these same consonants:

всходить ipfv. = to rise
вскричать pfv. = to scream.

Care must be taken not to mistake *во-* for *въ* in composition with words beginning with з, с.

БЫ-

usually = *out*, e. g.

выходить ipfv. = to go out (on foot)
выйти pfv. = " "
выходъ = exit
выставка = exhibition

it sometimes means *thoroughly*

высѣкать } = to thrash thoroughly
высѣчь }
выздоровѣть pfv. = to get thoroughly well

sometimes merely to form the perfective

выпить pfv. = to drink (sc. to drink to the end)
--

in composition with *нести* and *носить* cf. § 116.

A peculiarity of this preposition in composition with verbs is that when it makes the verb compounded with it perfective it attracts and holds the accent throughout, while if the compound verb is imperfective the accent remains on the stem of the verb, e. g.

выражать ipfv. }	= to express
выразить pfv. }	

Imperfective.

выѣзжать	to drive out
выѣзживать	to break in horses

Perfective.

выѣхать
выѣздить

Cf. also in composition with *нести* and *носить* § 116.

НИЗ-

= *down*

низвергать ipfv. }
 низвергнуть pfv. } = *to cast down, to abase.*

пере-

generally = *over, across, afresh*

переходить ipfv. }
 перейти pfv. } = *to cross on foot*
 переѣзжать ipfv. } = *to cross (by boat or rail)*
 переѣхать pfv. } = *to move (into a new house)*

перемена = *change (e. g. in the weather)*переписка = *correspondence*перевоз = *ferry*перевод = *translation*перевал = *watershed*

It can imply excess :

пересолить = *to over-salt.*

Another form of this preposition is

пре-

which is also used to express the ideas *round, over, or across.*

pretворить ipfv. }
 pretворить pfv. } = *to transform, convert*
 предавать ipfv. }
 предать pfv. } = *to hand over to, to betray*

преданный = *devoted*преступление = *transgression, crime*препятствие = *obstacle*предель = *boundary, region*превышать ipfv. = *to surpass (trans.)*презирать ipfv. = *to despise*

прерывать ipfv. }
 прервать pfv. } = *to interrupt*

преимущество = *advantage*Notice непременно = *without fail.*

In composition with other prepositions :

превосходить ipfv. }
 превзойти pfv. } = *to excel*
 превосходительство = *Excellency*
 превосходно! = *excellent!*
 преподавать ipfv. }
 преподать pfv. } = *to teach, lecture on.*

In composition with adjectives it lends superlative meaning, e.g.

прекрасный = *very beautiful, splendid*

(the original meaning of красивый was *bright*) cf. § 59.

раз-

usually = *asunder, dis-, di-*

разводъ = *divorce*
 разменять pfv. = *to change (money)*
 размеръ = *dimension*
 раздѣлять ipfv. }
 раздѣлить pfv. } = *to divide, distribute*
 разбивать ipfv. }
 разбить pfv. } = *to break (e.g. glass or china).*

It can also as it were *amplify* any activity, e.g.

разговаривать ipfv. = *to converse*
 разговоръ = *conversation*
 рассказывать ipfv. }
 рассказать pfv. } = *to narrate*
 рассказъ = *a tale*
 развратить = *depravity*
 разводить ipfv. = *to breed.*

It often corresponds to our *un-*:

раздѣваться ipfv. }
 раздѣться pfv. } = *to undress oneself*
 развитіе = *development (lit. unwinding)*
 развалины = *ruins*
 разстраивать ipfv. }
 разстроить pfv. } = *to unsettle, upset (morally).*

It sometimes means *quite*, e.g.

я не разслы́шать = *I didn't quite hear*.

Notice the following :

умъ = *mind*

разумъ = *intellect*

у́мный = *clever*

разу́мный = *sensible (with common sense)*

разсче́тъ = *calculation*

разсе́янный = *absent-minded*.

The *ъ* is retained before palatal vowels, e.g.

разве́хаться pfv. = *to break up (of a party)*.

When *и* follows it becomes *ы*, e.g.

разыска́ть from разъ + иска́ть.

Before *к, х, п, т, ц, ч, ш, щ* раз- becomes рас-

расхо́ды = *expenses*.

Occasionally, usually when the accent falls on it, раз- becomes роз-, e.g.

ро́злить, ро́злила = *to pour out (tea), to spill*

alternative past of разли́ть pfv., the other being разли́ть, &c.

ро́спеcание по́ездовъ = *time-table of trains (on the wall)*.

In composition with other prepositions :

распрода́жа = *sale (in shops)*

расположе́ние = *disposition, temperament*

распоряже́ние = *disposition (control), arrangement*

распростра́нение = *propagation*.

The other prepositions used in composition are :

безъ

= (*without*), *dis-*, *un-* (this never changes to *бес-*)

безпоко́ить ipfv. } = *to disturb*

обезпоко́ить pfv. }

безуслóвно = *unconditionally, absolutely*

безкоры́стный = *disinterested*

безпоко́йный = *anxious*

безобра́зный = *horrible, disgraceful (lit. having no pattern, sc. unlike anything)*.

When **и** follows it becomes **ы**:

БЕЗЫМѢННЫЙ = *nameless*
(безъ + ѣмя).

ВЪ (Во)

= *in, into*

ВХОДИТЬ (ВЪ) ipfv. }
ВОЙТИ (ВЪ) pfv. } = *to enter*
ВХОДЪ = *entrance*

ВВОДИТЬ ipfv. }
ВВЕСТИ pfv. } = *to introduce (e. g. a custom)*

ВЛЮБИТЬСЯ (ВЪ) pfv. = *to fall in love with*

ВКЛЮЧИТЕЛЬНО = *inclusively*.

Notice

ВСТАВАТЬ ipfv. }
ВСТАТЬ pfv. } = *to get up (from bed)*
ВНИМАНИЕ = *attention*.

The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e. g.

ВЪѢХАТЬ pfv. = *to ride or drive into*.

ДО

= *up to, to the end, pre-*

ДОХОДИТЬ (ДО) ipfv. }
ДОЙТИ (ДО) pfv. } = *to reach (on foot)*
ДОѢХАТЬ (ДО) pfv. = *to reach (except on foot)*

ДОХОДЪ = *income*

ДОГОВОРЪ = *treaty*

ДОКАЗАТЕЛЬСТВО = *proof*

ДОПОТОПНЫЙ = *antediluvian*

ДОКЛАДЪ = *lecture (on anything)*

ДОСТАТЬ = *to obtain*.

ЗА

= *behind*

ЗАХОДЪ СОЛНЦА = *sunset*

ЗАКАТЪ " "

It has many uses not obviously though indirectly connected with this meaning :

заходить къ ipfv. }
зайти къ pfv. } = to call on, look in on

задержка = delay

заложить = to mortgage

закладъ = pledge, wager

заказъ = order (for anything, e. g. goods)

заказное письмо = registered letter

заплатить pfv. = to pay

(платить ipfv.)

заставлять ipfv. }
заставить pfv. } = to compel

заставать ipfv. }
застать pfv. } = to find (any one, e. g. at home)

за often gives the meaning: to start doing anything, e. g.

засмѣяться = to break into laughter

which is the perfective of

смѣяться = to laugh

запѣть pfv. = to burst into song

заговорить pfv. = to start talking.

With a reflexive verb it can mean to forget oneself, be lost in doing anything :

зачитаться pfv. = to read till you lose sense of time and place.

ИЗЪ (ИЗО)

= out

издавать ipfv. }
издать pfv. } = to edit, publish

издание = edition, publication

изложение = exposition.

The *ъ* is retained before soft vowels, e. g.

изъяснение = explanation.

When *и* follows it becomes *ы*, e. g.

изысканный = exquisite, far-fetched.

Before *к, х, п, т, ч, ц* it becomes *из* :

исходъ = *issue* (out of a difficulty)

исполнять ipfv. }
исполнить pfv. } = *to fulfil*

исключёніе = *exception*

исключительно = *exclusively*.

между

= *inter-* (but never with verbs)

международный = *international*.

на

= *on to*

находить ipfv. }
найти pfv. } = *to find* (to come upon)

надѣжда = *hope* (something put on)

надѣяться = *to hope*.

Notice

наслѣдникъ = *heir*

насморкъ = *cold* (in the head)

наука = *science*

народъ = *people, nation*

наложеннымъ платежѣмъ = *pay on delivery*

настоящій = *present, actual, real*

наступающій = *coming, imminent*

намѣреніе = *intention*.

Often with the meaning of *to do anything to the full, or largely*

наѣсться pfv. = *to eat one's fill*

накупить pfv. = *to buy a quantity of*

наслаждаться ipfv. = *to enjoy oneself*

начитанный = *well-read*.

Preceded by a negative it expresses the idea *not to be able to have enough of*

ненаглядный = *that one cannot feast one's eyes on long enough*

ненасытный = *insatiable*.

НАДЪ= *over*на́дпись = *inscription*принадлежа́ть ipfv. = *to belong*.**О (об- обо)**= *about*обходи́ть ipfv. }
обойти́ pfv. } = *to go round*необходи́мый = *essential*обду́мывать ipfv. }
обду́мать pfv. } = *to think over*о́шибка = *mistake (= missing the mark)*.

This meaning is often not apparent :

обижа́ть ipfv. }
обиде́ть pfv. } = *to offend (lit. look round)*о́печатка = *misprint*огово́рка = *reserve, limitation*о́бѣдъ = *dinner*огоро́дъ = *kitchen-garden*.The *ъ* is retained before a palatal vowel, e. g.объясне́ние = *explanation*.When *н* follows it becomes *н*, e. g.о́бщесъ = *inquiry, search*.**ОТЪ (ото)**= *away from*отходи́ть (отъ) ipfv. }
отойти́ (отъ) pfv. } = *to go away from*о́ттепель = *a thaw*о́тлично! = *excellent!*отрѣ́зать = *to cut off*sometimes *ото-* as in *отосла́ть* = *to send away*.The *ъ* is retained before soft vowels, e. g.отѣ́здъ = *departure*.When *н* follows it becomes *н*, e. g.отыска́ть = *to find by dint of searching*.

по

The commonest use is to make imperfective verbs perfective ; in doing so it usually connotes that the action will be of less duration or of less importance than that expressed by the simple imperfective verb, e. g.

поговорить	= to talk a little
потанцовать	= to dance a little
посмеяться	= to laugh a little.

But in a large number of cases it has lost all trace of its original meaning, e. g.

посылать ipfv.	} = to send
послать pfv.	
получать ipfv.	} = to receive
получить pfv.	
посещать ipfv.	} = to visit.
посетить pfv.	

Notice the following very common words, all compounded with по :

походъ	= campaign
похожъ (на)	= like (adj.)
похороны	= funeral
постель	= bed (specifically bedding)
поступокъ	= act, behaviour
посуда	= crockery
потеря	= loss
подержанный	= second-hand
посль	= after
последний	= last
последствие	= consequence
последовать (за) pfv.	= to follow after
and hundreds of others.	

Ср. слѣдующій	= next
вслѣдствіе + acc.	= as a result of
слѣдовать (за) ipfv.	= to follow after
слѣдить (за) ipfv.	= to follow.

ПОДЪ (ПОДО-)= *under*

подходить (къ) ipfv. }
 подойти (къ) pfv. } = *to approach*

поднимать } ipfv. }
 or подымать } pfv. } = *to lift*
 поднять pfv.

поддѣльный = *counterfeit*подходящій = *suitable*поддержка = *support*поджигательство = *incendiarism*подозрѣвать ipfv. = *to suspect*подозрительный = *suspicious*.The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e.g.подъѣздъ = *porch, entrance*.When **и** follows it becomes **ы**, e.g.подыскать = *to match* (e.g. colours), *assort*.**(передъ)****пред-**= *fore (fore-), pre-*

предсказывать ipfv. }
 предсказать pfv. } = *to foretell*

предварительный = *preliminary*

предпочитать ipfv. }
 предпочесть pfv. } = *to prefer*

предложёние = *offer, suggestion*.

Notice:

предпринимать ipfv. }
 предпринять pfv. } = *to undertake*
 предприятие = *undertaking*.

The **ъ** is retained before soft vowels, e.g.предъявлёние = *presentation (of a claim)*.When **и** follows it may be written **ы**, e.g.предыдущій = *preceding*.

съ (so)

= (1) *with* (2) *from*

- (1) сравнѣніе = *comparison*
 сходство = *resemblance*
 состоять (изъ, въ) ipfv. = *to consist (of)*
 соглашаться (съ) ipfv. } = *to agree (with)*
 согласиться (съ) pfv. }
 (2) снимать ipfv. } = { *to take off (clothes) to take*
 снять pfv. } { *(photographs)*
 ссылка = *exile*.

Sometimes the meaning is not apparent:

- считать ipfv. } = *to count, consider*
 считать pfv. }
 счётъ = *bill, account*
 насчётъ = *to the account of, as regards,*
 on account of
 соборъ = *cathedral*
 сомнѣваться ipfv. = *to doubt*
 съѣсть pfv. = *to eat*.

The ъ is retained before soft vowels, e.g.

съѣздъ = *meeting, assembly*.

When п follows it becomes ы, e.g.

сѣщикъ = *spy*.

у

= *away*

- уходить ipfv. } = *to go away (on foot)*
 уйти pfv. }
 уѣзжать ipfv. } = *to depart (e.g. by rail)*
 уѣхать pfv. }
 убирать ipfv. } = *to clear away*
 убрать pfv. }

But this primary meaning is often lost :

уставать ipfv. } = *to grow tired*
устать pfv. }

уходъ = *looking after, care for*

уѣздъ = *district*

уборная (sc. комната) = *lavatory*

указывать (на) ipfv. } = *to point to*
указать (на) pfv. }

указъ = *decree*

униженіе = *humiliation*

умирать ipfv. } = *to die*
умереть pfv. }

удобно = *convenient, comfortable*

угодно = *agreeable*

какъ вамъ угодно = *just as you like.*

убогій = *poor, lowly*

удовлетворять ipfv. } = *to satisfy*
удовлетворить pfv. }

used reflexively = *to be satisfied*

удовольствие = *pleasure*

укладывать ipfv. } = *to pack (trans.)*
уложить pfv. }

used reflexively = *to pack (intrans.)*

употреблять ipfv. } = *to use (cf. p. 220)*
употребить pfv. }

used reflexively = *to be in use*

уговаривать = *to try to persuade*

уговорить = *to succeed in persuading*

уговоръ = *agreement, stipulation*

увидѣть	} = perfectives of	видѣть
увидать		видать
узнать		знать
услышать		слышать
услыхать		слыхать

INTERJECTIONS

§ 119.

а! ба! ахъ! охъ! = *ah! oh!* (surprise); ой! = *oh!* (fright).

ай! эй! = *hi! hullo!* (attracting attention or expressing delight)

ага! оро! эгэ! = *aha!* (triumph); *r* in these words sounds like *h*.

тфу! тьфу! (imitative of the action of spitting) = *ugh! pooh!*

(disgust); чортъ возьми! = *devil take it! damn!*

ба́тюшки (*little fathers*)! ма́тушки (*little mothers*)! express horror and amazement.

на! = *here you are, take this!* вотъ! = *voici!* or *voilà* (cf. p. 116).

ну! ну-ка! = *well!* вонъ! = (1) *there it is over yonder!* (2) *away!*

-ка! (e.g. дай-ка сюда = *come, give it here*; 'ну, прочти-ка, вотъ' = *'come along here and just read this through'*)

-то! (cf. pp. 63, 111)

-те! (cf. p. 170)

ура! = *alas!* ура! = *hurrah!*

чу! штъ! тсъ! = *hush!* шабашъ! = *stop! easy! steady!*

ей-Богъ! ей-ей! = *by God! sc. in very truth* (asseveration).

че́стное сло́во! = (*my*) *word of honour!*

Го́споди! Бо́же мой! = (*Good*) *Lord! My God!* (both used as frequently as *Mon Dieu* in French)

да здра́вствуетъ...! = *long live...! vive...!*

... доло́й! = *down with...!* прочь! = *away! awant!*

вотъ-те-разъ! = *there's a nice thing! there's a fine set-out!*

вотъ — такъ —! = *that's what I call a fine...!*

вотъ соба́ка, такъ соба́ка! = *some dog, what!*

предста́вь(те)! скажи́(те)! = *just think! fancy that!* (cf. p. 251).

неужели! неужто! нешто! развѣ! = *is it possible!*

ещѣ-бы! = *I should say so! not half!*

какъ бы не такъ! = *I don't think!*

здра́вствуйте (imperative of здра́вствовать, pronounce *zdrástye*, lit. *be well*), какъ вы пожива́ете? = *how do you do, how are you?*

добра́е у́тро (seldom used)! здоро́во! = *good morning!* (cf. p. 250).

поко́йной (or споко́йной) но́чи (genitive after желаю вамъ understood, cf. p. 121)! = *good-night!*

до-свида́нiя! = *au revoir!* (lit. *till seeing again*)

проща́йте! = *good-bye!* but, N.B., про́стите! = *forgive! excuse me!*

¹ и *пу* + imperfective infinitive = *and (he) began to...!*

There are many interjections abbreviated from and often used instead of verbs, e. g.: баць! хлопъ! = *bang!* бухъ! = *flop!* нымытъ! = *off he dashed!* Cf. also idioms on pp. 66, 76, 103, 111, 112, 115-118, 120, 122, 128, 170, 192-198, 208, 251.

RELATIONSHIPS

§ 120.

прадѣдъ = <i>great-grandfather</i>	прабабушка = <i>great-grandmother</i>
дѣдъ (дѣдушка) = <i>grandfather</i>	бабушка = <i>grandmother</i>
дядя (дядюшка) = <i>uncle</i>	тѣтя (тѣтушка) = <i>aunt</i>
отецъ (батьюшка, тѣтя, &c.) = <i>father</i> (cf. p. 46)	мать (матушка, мама, &c.) = <i>mother</i> (cf. p. 54)
родители = <i>parents</i>	дѣти = <i>children</i> (cf. p. 55)
сынъ (сыночекъ) = <i>son</i> (cf. p. 48)	дочь (дочка) = <i>daughter</i> (cf. p. 54)
братъ (братецъ) = <i>brother</i> (cf. p. 48)	сестра (сестрица) = <i>sister</i> (cf. pp. 49-51)
племянникъ = <i>nephew</i>	племянница = <i>niece</i>
внукъ (внучекъ) = <i>grandson</i>	внучка = <i>granddaughter</i>
двоюродный братъ or кузенъ = <i>cousin</i> (masc.)	двоюродная сестра or кузина = <i>cousin</i> (fem.)
зять ¹ = <i>son-in-law</i> or <i>brother-in-law</i> (<i>sister's husband</i>)	невестка ¹ = <i>daughter-in-law</i> or <i>sister-in-law</i> (<i>brother's wife</i>)
шуринъ ¹ = <i>brother-in-law</i> (<i>sister's husband</i>)	сноха ¹ = <i>daughter-in-law</i>
дѣверъ ¹ = <i>brother-in-law</i> (<i>husband's or wife's brother</i>)	зодѣвца ¹ = <i>sister-in-law</i> (<i>husband's sister</i>)
свойкъ ¹ = <i>wife's sister's husband</i>	своиченица ¹ = <i>sister-in-law</i> (<i>wife's sister</i>)
свѣкоръ ¹ = <i>father-in-law</i> (<i>husband's father</i>)	свекровь ¹ = <i>mother-in-law</i> (<i>husband's mother</i>)
тестъ ¹ = <i>father-in-law</i> (<i>wife's father</i>)	тѣща ¹ = <i>mother-in-law</i> (<i>wife's mother</i>)

¹ Russians themselves get mixed up in the correct use of these quaint terms and frequently say *beau-fils*, *beau-frère*, *belle-fille*, *belle-sœur*, *beau-père*, *belle-mère* instead, only discriminating generation and sex.

(в)ѣтчимъ = <i>step-father</i>	мáчеха = <i>step-mother</i>
пáсынокъ = <i>step-son</i>	пáдчерица = <i>step-daughter</i>
сватъ = <i>match-maker</i> (masc.)	свáха = <i>match-maker</i> (fem.)
женíхъ = <i>bridegroom</i>	невѣста = <i>bride</i>
мужъ = <i>husband</i> (cf. pp. 48, 144)	женá = <i>wife</i> (cf. pp. 133, 135)
кумъ = <i>gossip</i> (<i>co-god-parent</i> , masc.)	кумá = <i>gossip</i> (<i>co-god-parent</i> , fem.)

MEASURES AND WEIGHTS

§ 121.

MONEY

100 копѣекъ (отъ копѣекъ) = 1 рубль (about 2s. in normal times)
(cf. pp. 103, 104).

DISTANCE

1 верста ($\frac{2}{3}$ of a mile)	= 500 сажéнямъ (dative, cf. p. 130)
1 сáжень (7 feet, a fathom)	= 7 фýтамъ (футъ = <i>foot</i>)
" "	= 3 аршíнамъ
1 аршíнъ ($2\frac{1}{3}$ feet)	= 16 вершкáмъ
" "	= 28 дюймáмъ
1 вершóкъ = $1\frac{3}{4}$ inches,	1 дюймъ = 1 inch.

SPACE

1 десяти́на = $2\frac{1}{10}$ acres; the other measures preceded by the
adjective квадратный = square.

WEIGHT

1 бёрковецъ ($360\frac{2}{3}$ lb.)	= 10 пудáмъ
1 пудъ ($36\frac{1}{10}$ lb.)	= 40 фунтáмъ
1 фунтъ ($\frac{9}{10}$ lb. <i>avoirdupois</i>)	= 32 лóтамъ
1 лóть (.45 oz.)	= 3 золотникáмъ
1 золотникъ (65.8 grains)	= 96 дóлямъ
1 дóля = .68 grain.	

RUSSIAN ABBREVIATIONS

§ 122.

- до Р. X. (до Рождества Христова) = *B. C.*
 по Р. X. (по Рождестве Христовомъ) = *A. D.*
 н. с. (новаго стіля) = *new style*
 с. с. (старога стіля) = *old style* } *cf. p. 132*
 п. м. (прошлаго мѣсяца) = *ult.*
 с. м. (сего мѣсяца) = *inst.*
 б. м. (будущаго мѣсяца) = *prox.*
 г. ог г-нъ (господинъ) = *Mr.*
 гжа. (госпожа) = *Mrs. or Miss*
 гг. (господа) = *Messrs. or Mr. and Mrs.*
 и др. (другіе от другія) }
 и пр. (прочее от -іе от чія) } = *and others, &c.*
 и т. д. (такъ далѣе) }
 и т. п. (тому подобное) } = *and so forth, and so on, cf. pp. 131, 250.*
 т. е. (то-есть) = *that is, i. e.*
 напр., нпр. (на-примѣръ) = *for example, e. g.*
 м. б. (можетъ быть) = *maybe, perhaps*
 п. т. ч. (потому-что) = *because*
 т. к. (такъ-какъ) = *since, inasmuch as*
 т. н. (такъ называемый) = *so-called, aforesaid*
 вм. (вмѣсто) = *instead of*
 см. (смотри) = *see, v.*
 ср. (сравни) = *compare, cf.*
 стр. (страница) = *page*
 гл. (глава) = *chapter*
 ж. д. (желѣзная дорога) = *railway*
 ст. (станція) = *station*
 губ. (губернія) = *government, province*
 с. (село) = *village*
 г. (городъ) = *town*
 р. (рѣка) = *river*
 к., коп. (копейка) = *kopeks*
 р., руб. (рубль) = *ruble*

ADDENDA

§ 44, p. 56.

There are a few indeclinable neuter nouns, such as пальто (*paleot*) = *overcoat*, шоссе (*chaussée*) = *high-road*, all ending in vowels; also surnames in -о, such as Шевченко (those in -но are of Little Russian origin) and such names as Дурновó, Живáго, and Мертвáго (pronounced -ágo, cf. p. 32); surnames in -ичъ, e.g. Живковичъ, have no feminine forms.

§ 48, p. 64, Obs. 11.

The expression не то is used in the following idioms:

я не то хотѣлъ сказать = *I didn't mean that*

не то, чтобы + conditional, or + adjective = *not exactly*.

не то . . . , не то . . . = *not exactly . . . , not exactly . . .*

это ужé не то = *it is no longer the same thing*.

не то, or a то, used by itself at the beginning of a sentence = *or else*.

§ 53, p. 74, Obs. 7.

The difference between какой and каковъ is this: какой = *of what kind, which sort*, e.g. это какое вино? = *what kind of wine is that?* каковъ = *of what quality, how do you like*, e.g. каково вино? = *how do you like this wine?* The pronoun таковъ is used commonly in the following idiom и былъ таковъ! = *and off he went (disappeared)!* The full forms каковóй and таковóй are seldom used, their meaning is much the same as какой and такой, but they are used rather as pure pronouns, referring to a noun in a previous sentence, and not as adjectives. Таковъ-то = *such and such*, cf. p. 144. Какой-нибудь and какой-то correspond in meaning to кто-нибудь, кто-то, какъ-нибудь, какъ-то, e.g. какой-нибудь городъ = *any town (you like to mention)*, въ какомъ-то царствѣ = *in a certain kingdom (opening of fairy-tale)*.

§ 55, p. 80.

The instrumental singular of names of places in -въ and -во is, not -вѣмъ, but -вомъ, e.g. за Кіевомъ = *beyond Kíev*, подъ Кіевомъ = *near (lit. under) Kíev*, nom. sing. Кіевъ.

The locative singular of names in -овъ, -ово, -евъ, -ево, -ынъ, -ыно, -инъ, -ино, when they are surnames or place-names is, not -омъ, but -ѣ, as in the case of nouns, e.g. о Лѣрмонтовѣ, Пушкинѣ и Тургѣневѣ = *about Lermontov, Púshkin, and Turgénev*, въ Кіевѣ и въ Царѣынѣ = *in Kiev and Tsaritsyn*.

§ 71, p. 107.

Notice the common idiom:

никуда не годітся = *it is no good at all* (cf. p. 159).

§ 72, p. 109.

Notice:

нынѣ	} <i>nowadays, also =</i>	пока (cf. p. 118) can be and is
нынче		
(adj. нынѣшній = <i>of nowadays</i>).		<i>the time being</i>

§ 73, p. 111.

Notice:

даромъ = <i>free, gratis</i>	очевидно = <i>evidently</i>
вѣроятно = <i>probably</i>	впрочѣмъ = <i>for the rest, however</i>
вмѣстѣ = <i>together</i>	слóвно = <i>exactly like, just as if</i>
точь-въ-точь = <i>exactly like, just as if</i> (lit. dot-to-dot).	
такъ-то такъ! = <i>that may be, that's all very well!</i>	
такъ и (+ verb) = ' <i>simply</i> ', ' <i>just as if</i> ', e.g. глаза у него такъ и горятъ = <i>his eyes are simply burning</i> .	
такъ, followed by a verb, may also mean: (1) <i>unintentionally</i> , (2) <i>gratis, for nothing</i> .	

§ 74, p. 114.

Notice: отчасти = *partly*

итогъ: = *total*:

(This curious word is really и + тогъ, gen. sing. of to, = *and of that*; it is put at the foot of a bill, summing up the items, and from it has been formed a noun итогъ = *a total*, подвести итогъ = *to reckon up the total of*, lit. to, a bill.)

Forcible colloquial equivalents of очень are: здорово (not to be confused with здорово, p. 245), and больно = *properly, extremely, not half*; не больно = *not particularly*.

Other common comparative adverbs are:

дальше = *further* (и такъ дальше, и т. д. = *and so forth*)

дольше = *longer*

раньше = *earlier* (cf. заранее = *beforehand, betimes*).

§ 78, p. 118.

A subordinate clause in Russian is often preceded by a correlative pronoun in the principal sentence, which is not needed in English, and is puzzling at first sight, e. g.: дѣло въ томъ, что я не могу прийти = *the point is that I can't come*, analogously: для того, чтобы—за тѣмъ, чтобы—съ тѣмъ, чтобы = *in order that, между тѣмъ, какъ = while, послѣ того, какъ = after, передъ тѣмъ, какъ (but прежде, чѣмъ) = before, до тѣхъ поръ,¹ пока не = until, съ тѣхъ поръ, какъ = since*. According to Russian orthography a comma should always precede the conjunction, even in the phrase по тому, что = *because*, though this rule is not always observed. When что beginning a clause = *what* (and not *that*) it is often accented что́, as on p. 187.

§ 106, p. 193.

Notice the following idiomatic uses of the imperative:

пожалуй (from пожаловать)! = *by all means, I expect, I dare say, I shouldn't wonder* (used as an interjection in conversation).

(N.B.—пожалуйте = *be so good*, used more by shop-attendants and servants.)

помилуйте (from помиловать) = *goodness gracious, I say, look here, no really* (used as a remonstrance in conversation).

скажите (often followed by пожалуйста)! = *you don't mean to say so!*

рассказывай! = *go on!*

сдѣлайте одолженіе! = *by all means, with pleasure, certainly* (lit *make the loan*, said when acceding to a request or granting a favour).

позвините! = *excuse me! I beg your pardon!*

¹ The words 'до тѣхъ поръ' are often omitted in this phrase, not being essential to its meaning.

§ 109, p. 202.

Notice:

закрѣто = *it is shut*свободно = *it is free*открѣто = *it is open*запрещено = *it is forbidden.*

§ 112, p. 208.

Notice that состоятъ is also used with the meaning 'to be', e.g.:
 я состою председателемъ (inst., cf. p. 141) этого общества =
I am the president of this society.

How to express ONE.

This is most frequently expressed by the 2nd person singular, e.g.

ничего не поймѣшь = *one can't understand a word* (for this use
 of the perfective future cf. p. 188). After когда and если
 in such expressions either the present or the future may
 be used, e.g.

когда подумаешь . . . = *when one thinks . . .*если на это смотришь = *if one looks at this.*The perfective future is frequently used after *whenever, if ever.**One* can also be rendered by the infinitive, e.g.

много желать, добра не видать = *if one wishes (too) much, one
 sees no good* (proverb), волковъ бояться, въ лѣсъ не ходить =
if one fears wolves, one mustn't go to the forest (proverb).

если сказать всю истину = *if one were to say the whole truth.*

The reflexive verb, the 3rd person plural of the present tense
 and the passive participles are also used to express *one*, cf. p. 110.

§ 117, p. 230.

Notice that не велѣтъ = *to forbid*, e.g.:Богъ лѣниться не велѣтъ = *God forbids (us) to be idle.*докторъ мнѣ не велѣлъ вставать = *the doctor forbade me to
 get up.*

INDEX OF RUSSIAN WORDS AND PHRASES

(N.B. After verbs *i.* = *imperfective*, *pf.* = *perfective*; the numbers refer to the PAGES.)

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| a (conjunction), 62, 115, 249. | блевать (<i>i.</i>), 157. | бросить (<i>pf.</i>), 217, 218. |
| авось, 118. | блестеть (<i>i.</i>), 160, 222. | брось(те), 169, 194. |
| алтынъ, 103. | ближе, 84. | брызгать (<i>i.</i>), 152. |
| американецъ, 56. | близко, 105. | будеть ! 208. |
| американка, 56. | близъ, 119, 127. | будто, 118. |
| англичанинъ, 48. | блистать (<i>i.</i>), 222. | будто-бы, 118. |
| англичанка, 56. | блості (<i>i.</i>), 152. | буду, 152, 178, 187. |
| английскій, 74. | Богъ, 32, 33, 49, 82, 143, 245. | будучи, 171, 199. |
| Англія, 50. | Боже, 49, 245. | будущее, 200. |
| апплодировать (<i>i.</i>), 156. | Божій, 82. | будущій, 102, 133, 172, 200. |
| аршинъ, 49, 145. | бокъ, 47, 144. | будь (=if), 193. |
| баринъ, 56, 116. | болить, 125, 159, 204, 213. | будь, 168. |
| барыня, 56, 116. | больше, 85, 113. | будьте, 168. |
| барышня, 51. | больше всего, 113. | бухъ, 246. |
| басня, 51. | большею частью, 139. | -бы, 66, 107, 108, 167, 189-92, 197. |
| батюшка, 246. | большій, 79. | бывало, 69, (with perfective future) 188. |
| баць, 246. | большой, 73, 74, 85, 87. | бывать (<i>i.</i>), 208, 210, 212. |
| башня, 51. | болѣе, 83. | бывшій, 172, 200. |
| без- (prefix), 235, 236. | болѣть (<i>i.</i>), 159, 213. | было (unfulfilled intention), 183. |
| безпокоить (<i>i.</i>), 235. | бороться (<i>i.</i>), 155, 163. | быть, 152, 171, 172, 195, 208, 210, 212. |
| безпрестанно, 110. | бойсь, 59, 121, 191. | бью, 156. |
| безуслóвно, 111. | бояться (<i>i.</i>), 59, 121, 160, 203, 252. | бѣгать (<i>i.</i>), 221, 222, 226. |
| безъ, 99, 118, 123, 235. | братъ, 48, 246. | бѣгу, 151, 161, 222. |
| бей(те), 169. | братъ (<i>i.</i>), 154, 228, 229. | бѣжать (<i>i.</i>), 151, 161, 222, 226. |
| берегъ(сь), 168. | брѣмя, 55. | бѣлый, 72. |
| берегу, 151. | брести (<i>i.</i>), 152. | бѣлѣть (<i>i.</i>), 157. |
| берегъ, 47, 136, 144. | брить (<i>i.</i>), 157, 175. | в- (prefix), 236. |
| беречь (<i>i.</i>), 151. | бросать (<i>i.</i>), 217, 218. | вашъ, 61, 62. |
| беру, 150, 154, 228. | | |
| биткомъ, 202. | | |
| бить, 156, 175, 212, 228, 229. | | |
| благодарить (<i>i.</i>), 134, 135. | | |

- ваять (*i.*), 157.
 вверхъ, 108, 134.
 вдоль, 118, 161.
 вдругъ, 110.
 веду, 152, 223.
 веждъ, 106.
 вести (*i.*), 152, 164, 222, 224.
 вѣтъ, 164, 171.
 велѣть (*i. and pf.*), 159, 230, 252.
 вернуться (*pf.*), 189.
 верста, 133, 247.
 вертѣть (*i.*), 160.
 верхомъ, 139.
 весенний, 78.
 весна, 133.
 весной, 139.
 вести (*i.*), 152, 172-4, 223-5, 227.
 весь, 67, 68.
 всяма, 113.
 вечерний, 78.
 вечеромъ, 139, 140.
 вечеръ, 47.
 вѣшній, 78.
 вещь, 54.
 вз- = воз- (*cf.* 231).
 взглядывать (*i.*), 219.
 взглянуть (*pf.*), 219.
 вздохнуть (*pf.*), 219.
 вздыхать (*i.*), 219.
 взимать (*i.*), 216, 229.
 взыскать (*pf.*), 211.
 взыскивать (*i.*), 211.
 взять (*pf.*), 153, 216, 228, 229, 231.
 видать (*i.*), 66, 69, 184, 198, 224, 252.
 видень, 77.
 видно, 137.
 видѣть (*i.*), 65, 66, 157, 159, 163, 172, 224, 225.
 вижду, 70, 157, 159.
 винить (*i.*), 159.
 виновать, 71.
 висѣть (*i.*), 160, 219.
 вить (*i.*), 156.
 вишь, 224.
 включительно, 111.
 владѣть (*i.*), 141.
 влеку, 152, 214.
 влечь (*i.*), 152, 214.
 влюбиться, 111, 236.
 вмѣсто, 118, 128.
 вмѣстѣ, 250.
 вмѣлю, 155, 168.
 внизъ, 108.
 внизъ, 108, 134.
 внимать (*i.*), 155, 216.
 внутри, 108, 118, 127.
 виѣ, 119, 127.
 внять (*pf.*), 216.
 во (=въ), 236.
 во-время, 102, 134.
 во время, 102, 134.
 во-все, 113.
 во-вторыхъ, 94.
 вода, 43, 120, 137.
 водить (*i.*), 159, 223, 224, 227.
 воевать (*i.*), 157.
 вожу, 159, 222, 223.
 воз- (prefix), 35, 153, 164, 213, 226, 231.
 возвращеніе, 145.
 воздавать (*i.*), 213.
 воздать (*pf.*), 213.
 воздвигать (*i.*), 221.
 воздвигнуть (*pf.*), 164, 221.
 вѣздухъ, 137.
 возить (*i.*), 159, 222, 224.
 вѣзлѣ, 119, 127.
 возможно, 105, 205.
 возненавидѣть (*pf.*), 226, 231.
 возмись, 194.
 возмѣ, 153, 216, 228.
 вокругъ, 119, 127.
 волей-неволей, 139.
 во-лость, 48.
 волочить (*i.*), 152.
 волочъ (*i.*), 152.
 вонъ, 207, 245.
 [вонъ *N.B.* = stink.]
 воображать (*i.*), 220.
 вообразить (*pf.*), 220.
 вообще, 110.
 во-первыхъ, 94.
 вопить (*i.*), 156.
 вопіять (*i.*), 156.
 вопреки, 119, 131.
 воробѣй, 47.
 вос- (=воз-), 140, 231.
 воспользоваться (*pf.*), 140.
 востокъ, 136, 232.
 во-третьихъ, 94.
 вотъ, 116, 207, 245.
 вотъ — такъ —, 245.
 вотъ-те-разъ, 245.
 во что бы то ни стало, 66.
 вошь, 54.
 вою, 156.
 воюю, 157.
 исполнѣ, 114, 144.
 в-послѣдствіи, 144.
 в-продолженіи, 134.
 в-прѣчемъ, 250.
 врать (*i.*), 66, 154.
 время, 54, 75, 102.
 время отъ времени, 102.
 в-рѣдъ-ли, 117.
 вс- (=вз-), 232.
 всегда, 108.

- всего, 68.
 всего лучшаго ! 68.
 всего мѣнѣе, 114.
 всего хорошаго ! 68.
 всё, 67, 68.
 всё (adverb), 68.
 всё равно, 68.
 всётаки, 115, 181.
 вскрикивать (i.), 219.
 вскрикнуть (pf.), 219.
 вслѣдствіе, 134, 240.
 вставать (i.), 214.
 встать (pf.), 214.
 встрѣтить (pf.), 220.
 встрѣчать (i.), 220.
 всюду, 106.
 всякая всячина, 75.
 всякій, 67, 74.
 втайнѣ, 144.
 втеченіе, 134.
 вчера, 109.
 вчерашній, 78.
 въ (+ acc.), 99, 100, 133, 134.
 въ (+ loc.), 44, 47, 143, 144.
 въ-гору, 134.
 въ-двое, 96.
 въ-двоемъ, 97.
 въ концѣ концовъ, 144.
 въ-пору, 103, 134.
 въ родѣ (+ gen. = like), cf. 75.
 въ состояніи, 196.
 въ то время, какъ, 182.
 въ томъ-то и дѣло, 63, 115.
 въ-трое, 96.
 въ-троёмъ, 97.
 вы, 58, 146.
 вы- (prefix), 213, 232.
 выбрасывать (i.), 218.
 выбросать (pf.), 218.
 выбросить (pf.), 218.
 выдавать (i.), 213.
 выдать (pf.), 213.
 выйти (pf.), 135, 232.
 вымыть (pf.), 212.
 вынашивать (i.), 227.
 вынести (pf.), 227.
 выносить (i.), 227.
 выносить (pf.), 227.
 выпастъ (pf.), 204.
 выпить (pf.), 212.
 выражать (i.), 220.
 выразить (pf.), 220.
 вырасти (pf.), 228.
 вырастить (pf.), 228.
 выращать (i.), 228.
 выслать (pf.), 215.
 высовывать (i.), 219.
 высокій, 84, 86.
 высоко, 105.
 высунуть (pf.), 219.
 высылать (i.), 215.
 высшій, 86.
 выть (i.), 156.
 выходить (i.), 135, 232.
 выше, 84.
 вышеупомянутый, 202.
 выши́на, 140 (cf. 84).
 вью, 32, 156.
 вѣдь, 119, 161.
 вѣкъ, 47, 102, 144.
 вѣрить (i.), 128, 191, 198.
 вѣровать (i.), 128.
 вѣроятно, 250.
 вѣсть, 161.
 вѣсь, 68.
 вѣтеръ, 47.
 вѣшать (i.), 220.
 вѣять (i.), 156.
 вяжу, 152.
 вязать (i.), 152.
 гаснуть (i.), 153.
 гдѣ, 106.
 гдѣ бы то ни было, 107.
 гдѣ (+ dative), 108.
 гдѣ-нибудь, 107.
 гдѣ-то, 107, 111.
 гибнуть (i.), 165.
 гинуть (i.), 165.
 гладить (i.), 159.
 глазъ, 47, 49.
 глодать (i.), 152.
 глубина, 140 (cf. 84, 88).
 глубоко, 105, 201.
 глядѣть (i.), 159, 218, 219.
 глядя (от глядя), 170.
 глянуть (pf.), 218, 219.
 гнать (i.), 159, 223.
 гнести (i.), 154.
 гнить (i.), 156.
 гнуть (i.), 153.
 гнѣздо, 25.
 говаривать (i.), 210.
 говорить (i.), 65, 66, 69, 158, 160, 170, 195, 196, 198, 210, 228, 229.
 годиться (i.), 159, 250. [140].
 годъ, 47, 102, 133, голова, 142.
 го́лосъ, 47.
 голубчикъ, 31.
 гоню, 159, 223.
 гонять (i.), 223.
 гораздо, 112.
 гораздь, 76.

- гордиться (*i.*), 140, 159.
горевать (*i.*), 157.
городъ, 47, 68, 75.
горѣть (*i.*), 160, 201.
горячий, 79, 85, 201.
господá, 48.
Господень, 81.
Господи, 32, 49, 245.
господинъ, 48.
Господь, 32, 49, 81.
госпожа, 56, 80.
гости, 133.
гостинáя, 73.
государыня, 56.
госудáрь, 56.
градъ (= *hail*), 204.
[градъ, *N.B.* also = *гѣроудъ*].
граница, 134, 142.
гребу́, 151.
гремѣть (*i.*), 204.
грести́ (*i.*), 151, 164.
гривенникъ, 103.
гривна, 103.
грози́ть (*i.*), 129.
громъ, 204.
грызть (*i.*), 152.
грѣть (*i.*), 157, 175.
гуля́ть (*i.*), 157.
гурто́мъ, 139.
гусько́мъ, 139.
- да (conjunction), 115, 117, 245.
дава́й(те), 193.
дава́ть (*i.*), 128, 155, 170, 212.
дави́ть (*i.*), 212.
дави́мъ-давно́, 109.
давно́, 63, 109.
да́же, 116.
да и то́лько, 112.
да́й(те), 71, 111, 169, 193.
дале́кій, 84, 86.
- далеко́, 105.
далеко́ не, 113.
да́льний, 86.
да́льнѣйшій, 86.
да́льше, 84.
да́лѣе, 248, 251.
да́ромъ, 250.
да́ть (*pf.*), 128, 161, 166, 173, 212, 213.
даю́, 155, 212.
два, 88, 90, 91, 101.
дверь, 53.
двѣ́гать (*i.*), 218, 221.
двѣ́жу, 221.
двѣ́нуть (*pf.*), 153, 164, 218, 221.
дво́е, 96.
дворе́цъ, 46.
дворь, 144, 145.
дво́кродный, 94, 203, 246.
двугрѣ́венникъ, 103.
двухъ, 90.
двѣ́сти, 89, 93.
де́негъ, 112.
де́нь, 46, 68, 75, 123, 136, 138.
де́ньги, 63, 112, 113, 124, 128.
дерев́ня, 51.
дере́во, 53.
держа́ть (*i.*), 159.
держáться, 121.
деру́, 154.
дѣ́ска́ть, 118.
де́сятокъ, 97.
дешѣ́вле, 85.
дешѣ́вый, 85.
дитя́, 27, 34, 55.
длина́, 140.
для, 128, 200, 251.
днѣ́мъ, 100, 140.
до, 103, 123, 236.
довольно́, 112, 205.
додава́ть (*i.*), 213.
додáть (*pf.*), 213.
- дожда́ться (*pf.*), 215.
дождь, 122, 204.
дожидáться (*i.*), 121, 183, 215.
доказа́ть (*pf.*), 229.
доказыва́ть (*i.*), 229.
дѣ́кторъ, 47, 142.
дѣ́лго, 109.
должно́ быть, 205.
долѣ́й, 245.
дольше́, 84.
дѣ́лѣе, 251.
до́ма, 116, 117, 123.
домѣ́й, 131.
домъ, 47.
доро́га, 43.
дѣ́рого, 21.
доро́гой, 74, 85.
дѣ́роже, 85.
дорожи́ть (*i.*), 140.
дѣ́рожка, 138.
до-свидáнiя, 245.
до сихъ поръ, 64, 103.
доставáть (*i.*), 214.
достáточно, 112, 205.
достáть, 108, 214, 236.
достѣ́инъ, 77, 122.
дѣ́-сы́та, 123.
дѣ́трогива́ться (*i.*), 219.
дѣ́тро́нута́сь (*pf.*), 219.
до тѣ́хъ поръ, 103, 251.
дѣ́чь, 54.
дража́йшій, 88.
дра́ть (*i.*), 154.
дрема́ть (*i.*), 155.
дрожа́ть (*i.*), 159.
дру́гой, 67, 74, 75, 90, 136, 139.
дру́гъ, 48, 56.
дру́гъ дру́га, 67.
дру́жески, 106.

дружокъ, 57.
 друзья, 48.
 дурно, 105.
 духи, 82, 205.
 духъ, 82.
 душа, 50.
 душистый, 82.
 дымъ, 137.
 дышать (i.), 141.
 дѣва, 57.
 дѣвать (i.), 212, 214.
 дѣйствительно, 110.
 дѣлается (i.), 59, 202.
 дѣлать (i.), 69, 151, 155, 169, 178, 195, 202, 209, 211.
 дѣлаться (i.), 141.
 [дѣлить (i.), *N.B.* = *to divide*.]
 дѣло, 63, 64, 144, 251.
 дѣну, 153, 212.
 дѣти, 53, 55.
 дѣть (pf.), 153, 212, 214, 217.
 дѣюжина, 97.
 дядя, 23, 33, 50, 51.
 егѡ, 32, 58, 60, 61, 83, 117.
 едва, 114.
 едва не, 114.
 еѣ, 25, 58, 59, 117.
 еже- (prefix), 100-102.
 ѣжели=если,
 ей, 24, 58, 60.
 ей-Бѡгу, 245.
 еле-еле, 114.
 ему, 58.
 если, 24, 118, 180, 181, 189, 190, 198, 207, 252.
 еслибъ=еслибы, 190.
 есть, 29, 124, 125, 207, 208.

есть-ли, 207.
 ещѣ, 25, 109, 111, 116.
 ещѣ-бы, 117, 245.
 ещѣ не, 109.
 ёю, 60.
 ей, 25, 58-60, 83.
 жажда, 34 (cf. p. 129).
 жаловаться (i.), 129.
 жаль, 130, 133.
 жарко, 105, 130, 208.
 жать (i., = *squeeze*), 153, 175, 215.
 жать (i., = *reap*), 153, 175.
 жгла, 166.
 жгу, 151, 215.
 ждать (i.), 121, 152, 215.
 же (suffix), 60, 62, 64, 66.
 жевать (i.), 156.
 жѣгъ, 166.
 желаніе, 52.
 желать (i.), 65, 121, 194, 252.
 желѣзная дорога, 66, 132.
 женать, 144.
 жениться (i. and pf.), 144, 230.
 жертвовать (i.), 141.
 жечь (i.), 151, 174, 215.
 жжѣнный, 175.
 животное, 73.
 живу, 151.
 живъ, 71.
 жизнь, 135, 208.
 жить (i.), 151.
 жму, 153, 215.
 жну, 153.
 жрать (i.), 154.

жую, 156.
 -жъ (suffix)=же.
 за (+acc.), 69, 70, 75, 102 (= *ago*), 134, 135.
 за (+inst.), 65, 70, 142.
 за (+nom.), 120.
 за- (prefix), 236, 237.
 заболѣвать (i.), 213.
 заболѣть (pf.), 213.
 заботиться (i.), 230.
 забудьте, 193.
 забывать (i.), 193.
 забыть (pf.), 193.
 завидовать (i.), 129, 226.
 зависимый, 200.
 зависѣть (i.), 230.
 завтра, 109.
 завтрашний, 78.
 завѣдывать (i.), 141.
 заглянуть (pf.), 108.
 за-городомъ, 142.
 за-городъ, 134.
 за границей, 142.
 за границу, 67, 134.
 задавать (i.), 213.
 задавить (pf.), 212.
 задавливать (i.), 212.
 задать (pf.), 213.
 задѣвать (i.), 214.
 задѣть (pf.), 214.
 важечъ (pf.), 215.
 зажигать (i.), 215.
 займу, 216.
 зайти (pf.), 199.
 заказъ (pf.), 229.
 заказное, 141.
 заказывать (i.), 229.
 закрыто, 252.
 заместѣ (pf.), 204.
 замокъ, 46.
 [замѡкъ, *N.B.* = *door- or trunk-lock*.]

- замужемъ, 142.
 замужь, 133.
 занести (*pf.*), 204.
 занимать (*i.*), 216.
 занято, 202 (*cf.* 175).
 занять (*pf.*), 175, 216.
 заодно, 135.
 западь, 136.
 запереть (*pf.*), 154, 175.
 заперто, 175, 202.
 запечатлѣть, 25.
 заплатить (*pf.*), 173.
 запрещено, 252.
 запрячь, 25, 151.
 заправлять (*i.*), 212.
 заплѣть (*pf.*), 212.
 зарабатывать (*i.*), 211.
 заработать (*pf.*), 211.
 заранѣе, 251.
 за-руку, 43, 135.
 засмѣяться (*pf.*), 211.
 заснѣть (*pf.*), 221.
 заставить (*i.*), 214.
 застать (*pf.*), 214.
 засыпать (*pf.*), 221.
 насыпать (*i.*), 221.
 за то, 64, 135.
 затѣмъ, 63, 142.
 затѣмъ, чтобы, 66, 142, 251.
 затѣять (*pf.*), 157.
 затѣмъ, 65, 142.
 заяць, 47.
 звать (*i.*), 133, 141, 151, 215.
 звѣзда, 25.
 здорово, 245.
 здѣрово, 250.
 здорѣвъ, 71.
 здравствовать (*i.*), 245.
 здѣсь, 24, 106.
 здѣшний, 78.
 землѣ, 51, 135, 143.
 зима, 133.
 зимній, 78.
 зимой, 139.
 знакъ, 22.
 зная, 55.
 знать (*i.*), 73, 155, 163, 172, 212.
 значить (*i.*), 230.
 зовѣ, 151, 215.
 зрѣть (*i.* = *to ripen*), 157.
 зрѣть (*i.* = *to see*), 157, 199.
 зря, 199.
 зубъ, 125.
 зять, 48.
 и (conjunction), 115 (*cf.* 63, 64, 112, 250).
 и — и —, 64, 116.
 играть (*i.*), 69, 155.
 идѣть, 204.
 иди(те), 168.
 идти = итти.
 идѣ, 30, 70, 150, 152, 222, 223.
 из- (prefix), 237, 238.
 избѣгать (*i.*), 121, 221, 226.
 избѣгать (*pf.*), 221.
 избѣгнуть (*pf.*), 221, 226.
 избѣжать (*pf.*), 221, 226.
 известно, 205.
 издавать (*i.*), 213, 237.
 издатъ (*pf.*), 213, 237.
 изнашивать (*i.*), 227.
 износить (*pf.*), 227.
 изо = изъ.
 изо дня въ день, 123.
 изъ, 119, 123.
 изъ-дому, 47, 124.
 изъ-за, 123.
 изъ-подъ, 123.
 изъѣздить (*pf.*), 228.
 изъѣжать (*i.*), 228.
 или, 116.
 или — или, 116.
 именно, 110.
 ими, 27, 58, 59.
 имѣ, 27, 58, 59.
 имѣние, 30, 51, 52.
 имѣть (*i.*), 124, 157.
 имя, 55.
 иначе, 43, 110.
 иногдѣ, 108.
 иной, 67, 74-76.
 инорѣ, 76.
 инорѣдцы, 76.
 ис- (= из-), 238.
 искать (*i.*), 121, 155, 173.
 искренне, 105 (*cf.* 78).
 испытать (*pf.*), 211.
 испытывать (*i.*), 211.
 исчерпать (*i.*), 219.
 исчезнуть (*pf.*), 164, 219.
 итакъ, 116.
 итогъ, 250.
 итти (*i.*), 150, 152, 222, 223, 225.
 ихъ, 27, 58, 59, 83.
 ищѣ, 155.
 -на (suffix), 245.
 канжый, 67, 74, 75, 101, 102.
 канжеться, 130, 230.
 канжись, 194.
 канжалось, 230.
 канжеться (*i.*), 142, 152, 203.
 канжой, 65, 74-76.
 канжѣ, 76, 249.
 канжой, 65, 74, 75, 139, 143, 249.

- какой-нибудь, 249.
какой-то, 249.
какъ, 35, 69, 109, 182, 189, 251.
какъ — такъ и —, 116, 182.
какъ будто, 69, 118.
какъ бы (= *lest*), 191.
какъ бы не такъ, 245.
какъ бы то ни было, 110.
какъ ни, 181.
какъ-нибудь, 110.
какъ-то, 110, 111.
какъ только, 186, 189.
касаться (*i.*), 121, 122, 203.
кидать (*i.*), 218, 219.
кинуть (*pf.*), 153, 218, 219.
кинуть (*i.*), 153, 165.
кладовая, 73.
кладу, 151, 228.
кляняться (*i.*), 129.
клясть (*i.*), 151, 228, 229.
клевать (*i.*), 157.
ключъ, 46.
ключу, 157.
клянц, 153.
клясть (*i.*), 153, 166.
князь, 48.
ко = къ.
ковать (*i.*), 156.
когда, 32, 108, 182, 191, 252.
когда бы то ни было, 109.
когда-нибудь, 108, 184.
когда-то, 108.
кого, 64, 135.
коё-кто = кой-кто.
коё-что, 71.
кой-какой, 71, 74.
кой-кто, 71.
кой-что = коё-что.
колебать (*i.*), 155.
коли = если.
колоколь, 47.
колѣть (*i.*), 155.
колѣно, 52, 135.
колю, 155.
командовать (*i.*), 141.
кому, 35, 64, 130.
комъ, 64, 144.
конѣцъ, 123, 131, 144.
конечно, 110.
кончать (*i.*), 217.
кончить (*pf.*), 195, 217.
копѣйка, 51, 103, 104.
кость, 53.
котёнокъ, 53, 57.
который, 65, 74, 75.
кошка, 51.
краду, 152.
край, 47.
крайний, 78, 114.
красить (*i.*), 160.
красть (*i.*), 152, 211.
крашу, 160.
крестьянинъ, 48.
крикнуть (*pf.*), 153, 218, 219.
кричать (*i.*), 160, 218, 219.
крѣмъ, 63, 119, 128.
крѣю, 156 (cf. 169).
круглый, 133.
кругомъ, 119, 127.
крыло, 53.
крыть (*i.*), 156, 212.
крѣпнуть (*i.*), 218.
кстати, 131.
кто, 35, 64, 181.
кто — кто — 66.
кто бы ни, 66, 189.
кто бы то ни было, 66.
кто-либо, 70.
кто ни, 188, 189.
кто-нибудь, 70.
кто-то, 70.
куда, 107.
куда (+ dative), 108.
куда бы то ни было, 107.
куда-нибудь, 107.
куда-то, 107.
купаться (*i.*), 175, 202.
купить (*pf.*), 134, 174, 217.
куплю, 70, 174.
курить (*i.*), 160, 200.
кусокъ, 46, 120.
кушанье, 52.
кушать (*i.*), 136, 169.
кую, 156.
къ, 35, 119, 131.
къмъ, 35, 64, 201.
ладить (*i.*), 159.
лажу (лад-), 159.
лажу (лаз-), 159, 223.
лазить (*i.*), 159, 223, 226.
лаять (*i.*), 155.
лба, 46.
лгать (*i.*), 151.
левъ, 46.
легла, 166.
лѣгъ, 166, 171.
лѣдъ, 46.
лѣжа, 171, 199.
лежать (*i.*), 159.
лѣнь, 46.
летать (*i.*), 223, 224.
летѣть (*i.*), 160, 223, 224.

- печу́, 160, 223.
 лечь (*pf.*), 151, 217.
 -ли, 70, 116.
 -ли — или } 117.
 -ли — -ли }
 лижу́, 152.
 лиза́ть (*i.*), 152.
 листь, 48.
 лить (*i.*), 156, 169, 204.
 лицо́мъ къ лицу́, 139.
 лиша́ть (*i.*), 121, 217.
 лиши́ть (*pf.*), 217.
 лобъ, 46.
 лови́ть (*i.*), 158, 228, 229.
 ложиться (*i.*), 217.
 ло́жка, 34.
 ложь, 54.
 лома́ть (*i.*), 211, 223.
 лому́ть (*i.*), 223.
 ло́шадь, 53, 144.
 лугъ, 47.
 луна́, 35.
 лу́чше, 85, 114.
 лу́чий, 79, 87.
 [лъва=ген. левъ].
 льда́, 46.
 льду́, 144.
 [лъна=ген. лёнъ].
 лю́, 156, 204.
 лѣ́вый, 137.
 -лѣ́зъ (*i.*), 226.
 лѣ́зть (*i.*), 152, 223, 226.
 лѣ́съ, 47, 137.
 лѣ́тний, 78.
 лѣ́то, 102, 133, 135.
 лѣ́томъ, 139.
 люби́мый, 172, 200.
 люби́ть (*i.*), 157, 158, 172, 197, 202.
 любова́ться (*i.*), 140, 203.
 лю́бовь, 54.
 любо́й, 71, 74, 76.
 любя́щий, 172, 201.
 лю́ди, 53.
 ля́гте, 169.
 ля́гу, 151.
 лягъ, 169.
 ма́жу, 152.
 ма́зать (*i.*), 152.
 ма́ленький, 74, 85.
 ма́ло, 111, 112.
 ма́ло-по-ма́лу, 110, 132.
 ма́ло того́, что, 123.
 ма́лый, 83, 85.
 ма́льчикъ, 46.
 ма́льчи́шка, 56, 57.
 ма́лѣйший, 88.
 ма́рка, 104.
 ма́тушка, 246.
 ма́ть, 39, 54.
 маха́ть (*i.*), 154, 218.
 махну́ть (*pf.*), 218.
 ма́шу, 154.
 ме́жду, 119, 128, 142, 238.
 ме́жду тѣ́мъ, 142.
 ме́жду тѣ́мъ, какъ, 182, 251.
 ме́лкій, 84.
 ме́ль, 164.
 ме́льче, 84.
 мелю́, 155, 162.
 ме́ньше, 85, 113.
 ме́ньше все́го, 113.
 ме́нший, 79, 86.
 ме́ншой, 86.
 ме́нѣе, 84, 114.
 меня́, 58.
 ме́рзнуть (*i.*), 153.
 ме́сти (*i.*), 154, 164.
 ме́тать (*i.*), 154.
 мету́, 154.
 мечу́, 154.
 ми́ло, 104.
 ми́лости про́симъ, 122.
 ми́мо, 119, 128.
 мину́та, 75, 99.
 мла́дший, 86.
 мно́гие, 79, 80.
 мно́го, 79, 95, 111, 112.
 мно́гое, 80.
 мной, 58, 60, 143.
 мно́ю=мной.
 мну́, 153.
 мнѣ́, 58, 129, 133.
 мнѣ́ние, 131.
 мо́гла, 164.
 могу́, 150, 151.
 мо́гъ, 164.
 мо́жетъ, 150, 151.
 мой, 60-63.
 мо́кнуть (*i.*), 153, 165.
 моли́ться (*i.*), 129, 135, 159.
 мо́лния, 204.
 молоде́ць, 56.
 молодой, 72, 85, 86.
 мо́ложе, 85.
 [мо́лотый, *N.B.*=*to thresh.*]
 мо́лотъ (*i.*), 155, 162, 166.
 мо́лча, 199.
 молча́ть (*i.*), 160.
 мо́ль, 118.
 мо́ре, 51.
 мо́режь, 138.
 мо́розъ, 204.
 мо́сть, 47, 76, 144.
 мо́чь (*i.*), 150, 151, 214.
 мо́ю, 156.
 мсти́ть (*i.*), 129.
 му́жъ, 48 (*cf.* 133, 142).
 му́ка, 43.
 му́ка, 43.
 мураве́й, 47.
 мы, 58, 146.
 мы съ + *inst.*, 115.

- мыть (*i.*), 156, 175, 202, 212.
 мыться (*i.*), 202.
 мѣстами, 139.
 мѣсто, 68, 86.
 мѣсяць, 46, 101.
 мѣхъ, 48.
 мѣшать (*i.*), 129.
 мясное, 73.
 мясо, 120.
 мять (*i.*), 153, 175.

 на (+ асс.), 75, 119, 135, 136.
 на (+ loc.), 44, 47, 75, 119, 144.
 на- (prefix), 238.
 набито, 202.
 навѣрно, 110.
 навѣстить (*pf.*), 220.
 навѣщать (*i.*), 220.
 на-голову, 43.
 на-гору, 136.
 над- (prefix), 239.
 надежда, 117, 238.
 надо, 71, 205, 206, 208.
 надо=надъ.
 надобно=надо.
 надодѣть (*i.*), 214.
 надобѣсть (*pf.*), 112, 214.
 надпись, 239.
 надъ, 119, 129, 142.
 надѣванъ, 25.
 надѣвать (*i.*), 25, 214.
 надѣть (*pf.*), 71, 214, 225.
 надѣяться (*i.*), 136, 156, 203, 238.
 на-единѣ, 144.
 нажить (*pf.*), 175.
 назадъ, 102.
 назвать (*pf.*), 215.
 называть (*i.*), 215.
 называться (*i.*), 141.

 наи- (superlative prefix), 87, 114.
 найдется ли, 207.
 наизусть, 136.
 найму, 216.
 найти (*pf.*), 207, 225, 238.
 наказать (*pf.*), 229.
 наказывать (*i.*), 229.
 наканунѣ, 145.
 наконецъ, 109, 136.
 налѣвливать (*i.*), 229.
 наловить (*pf.*), 229.
 наложенный, 138, 238.
 налѣво, 136.
 нами, 58.
 намъ, 58, 197.
 нанимать (*i.*), 216.
 на-ново, 136.
 на-ночь, 136.
 нанять (*pf.*), 216.
 написать (*pf.*), 70, 179, 209, 211.
 наплевать (*pf.*), 197.
 напоминать (*i.*), 129.
 напомянуть (*pf.*), 129.
 направо, 136.
 напрасно, 110.
 напимѣрь, 248.
 напрокатъ, 242.
 народъ, 45, 238.
 нарочно, 110.
 на-скоро, 136.
 наслаждаться (*i.*), 203, 238.
 наслѣдовать (*i.*), 230.
 насморкъ, 125.
 настоящий, 200.
 насчетъ, 243.
 насъ, 58, 124, 203.
 насѣкомое, 73, 200.
 находить (*i.*), 75, 225, 238.

 начало, 131.
 начать (*pf.*), 153, 175, 215.
 начинать(ся) (*i.*), 206, 215.
 начну, 153, 215.
 нашъ, 61.
 наяву, 144.
 не, 117, 193.
 не- (prefix), 69, 70, 107.
 не + present gerund (=without—ing), 183.
 небеса, 52.
 небо, 52.
 небось (from не бойся), 118.
 не-было, 43, 122.
 не-быль, 43.
 невозможно, 105, 130, 191, 205.
 неволя, 132, 139.
 невѣроятно, 191.
 негдѣ, 107.
 негѣ, 124.
 не-далѣ, 43, 69.
 не до, 123.
 недоставало, 115.
 недостаѣтъ, 205.
 недоумѣвать (*i.*), 230.
 недѣля (=the old name for Sunday, literally: *doing nothing*), 101, 133, 137, 138.
 неѣ=еѣ after a preposition.
 нежели, 83.
 незабѣдка, 193.
 независимый, 200.
 не за что, 70.
 не за чѣмъ, 70.
 нездоровится, 130, 203.
 ней, 58.
 некакъ, 109.
 некогда, 108.

- некого, 69.
 некому, 69.
 некуда, 107.
 нельзя, 130, 205.
 немногие, 79, 80.
 немного, 79, 111, 112, 121.
 немножко, 111, 121.
 нему = ему after къ.
 нёмъ, 58, 60.
 ненавидѣть (*i.*), 226.
 ненаглядный, 238.
 не надо, 206.
 ненасытный, 238.
 необходимый, 239.
 необыкновенно, 111.
 неоцѣнимый, 201.
 не о чёмъ, 70.
 неправильно, 110.
 непремѣнно, 110, 233.
 неприятно, 130, 195.
 перазъ, 95.
 несётъ (*intransitive*), 205.
 несмотрѣя на, 181, 200.
 не совсѣмъ, 114.
 не стало, 205.
 нести (*i.*), 154, 164, 171, 173, 223, 227.
 не съ кѣмъ, 70.
 не такъ (= *wrong*), 110.
 не только, 112.
 не то, 249.
 неужели, 117, 245.
 неумолимый, 201.
 нехорошо, 105, 203.
 нехотя, 199.
 нечаянно, 110.
 нечего, 69, 195.
 ней, 124.
 ни, 66, 69, 107, 110.
 ни — ни —, 111, 114, 116.
 ни въ чёмъ не бывало, 69.
 нигдѣ, 106, 107.
 ниже, 84.
 нижегородскій, 79.
 нижній, 78.
 Нижній Новго-родъ, 78, 79.
 низ- (*prefix*), 35, 233.
 ни за что, 69.
 низкій, 84.
 низшій, 86.
 никакѣй, 69, 74, 75.
 никакъ, 109, 117.
 никогда, 108, 184, 208.
 никого, 69, 117, 197.
 никто, 68.
 никуда, 107, 250.
 нѣми, 37.
 нимъ, 60.
 ни о чёмъ, 69.
 ни разу не, 95.
 нис- = низ-.
 нисколько, 112.
 ни съ кѣмъ, 69.
 ни съ чѣмъ, 69.
 нихъ, 124, 208.
 ничего, 69, 111, 117.
 ничто, 68.
 но, 115.
 нога, 131, 138.
 ножъ, 46.
 номеръ, 75.
 носить (*i.*), 160, 223, 227.
 почевать (*i.*), 156.
 ночью, 156.
 ночь, 54, 245.
 ночью, 140, 204.
 ношѣ, 160, 223.
 ною, 156.
 нравиться (*i.*), 59, 80, 129, 131, 203.
 ну, 66, 245.
 нуждаться (*i.*), 230.
 нужень, 87.
 нужно, 206.
 нынѣ, 250.
 нѣтъ (*i.*), 156.
 нѣкій, 75.
 нѣкогда, 108.
 нѣкоторый, 70, 74, 75, 79.
 нѣкто, 70, 75.
 нѣмецъ, 56.
 нѣсколькихъ, 80.
 нѣсколько, 79, 95, 112.
 нѣту = нѣтъ.
 нѣтъ, 107, 117, 125, 207.
 нѣчто, 70.
 о (+ *acc.*), 119, 136.
 о (+ *loc.*), 44, 47, 69-71, 119, 145.
 о- (*prefix*), 239.
 об- (*prefix*), 239.
 оба, 90, 92.
 обвинить (*pf.*), 173.
 обезпечить (*pf.*), 235.
 обидѣть (*pf.*), 174, 239.
 обижать (*i.*), 239.
 обкрадывать (*i.*), 211.
 облако, 52.
 обмануть (*pf.*), 219.
 обманывать (*i.*), 219.
 [обнимать = *i.* of об-
 нять.]
 обнимѣ, 153.
 обнять (*pf.*), 153.
 обо (= объ = о), 145, 239.
 обокрасть (*pf.*), 211.
 образованный, 84.
 образъ, 48, 75, 139.
 обратить (*pf.*), 174.
 обтерѣть (*pf.*), 215.
 обтирать (*i.*), 215.
 объ = о.
 [объѣдать (*i.*), объ-
 ѣсть (*pf.*), *N.B.* = to

- eat or gnaw round, to corrode, to 'sponge on'.]
- объявить (*pf.*), 218.
- объявлять (*i.*), 218.
- обяснѣніе, 239.
- обяснить (*pf.*), 220.
- обяснять (*i.*), 220.
- обыкновенно, 111.
- Объ, 29.
- ббѣ, 90, 92.
- обѣдать (*i.*), 214 (*N.B.* cf. обѣ-).
- обѣдъ, 214, 239.
- огонь, 47.
- огородъ, 239.
- одинъ, 67, 83, 88-90.
- одинъ и тотъ же, 64.
- одна, 89.
- однажды, 95.
- однако, 115, 181.
- однакоже, 115.
- одни, 90.
- одно, 89, 90.
- однѣ, 90.
- одоженіе, 251.
- одѣвать(ся), (*i.*), 214.
- одѣть(ся) (*pf.*), 175, 202, 214.
- ожидать (*i.*), 215.
- оказаться (*pf.*), 229.
- оказываться (*i.*), 229.
- окно, 52.
- око, 52.
- около, 100, 119, 127.
- окрѣпить (*pf.*), 218.
- она, 58-60, 146.
- они, 58-60, 146.
- оно, 58, 59, 146, 147.
- онъ, 58-60, 146.
- онный, 64.
- онѣ, 58, 59, 146.
- опасаться (*i.*), 121.
- опасно, 191.
- опечатка, 239.
- оптомъ, 139.
- опять, 109.
- осѣнный, 78.
- осень, 55, 133.
- осенью, 139.
- осмотрѣть (*pf.*), 173.
- осмѣивать (*i.*), 211.
- осмѣять (*pf.*), 211.
- особенно, 110.
- особливо = особ-енно.
- оставаться (*i.*), 203, 214.
- оставить (*pf.*), 220.
- оставлять (*i.*), 220.
- остаётся, 206.
- останавливаться (*i.*), 218.
- остановиться (*pf.*), 218.
- остаться (*pf.*), 214.
- от- (prefix), 239.
- отвыкать (*i.*), 219.
- отвыкнуть (*pf.*), 219.
- отвѣтить (*pf.*), 220.
- отвѣчать (*i.*), 220.
- отговаривать (*i.*), 229.
- отговорить (*pf.*), 229.
- отецъ, 46, 49, 60, 120.
- отказать(ся) (*pf.*), 229.
- отказываться (*i.*), 229.
- открыто, 252.
- откуда, 108.
- откуда бы то ни было, 108.
- откуда-нибудь, 108.
- откуда ни возьмись, 194.
- откуда-то, 108.
- отлично, 239.
- отмстить (*pf.*), 174.
- отнять (*pf.*), 126.
- ото (= отъ), 127, 239.
- отобѣдать (*pf.*), 214.
- отсюда, 107.
- оттепель, 204, 239.
- [оттого, что = *because*, cf. p. 65.]
- оттуда, 107.
- отчасти, 250.
- Отче, 49.
- отчего, 65.
- отъ, 60, 119, 126, 127.
- отъ времени до времени, 127.
- отъ-роду, 47, 127.
- охотно, 199.
- очевидно, 250.
- очень, 63, 113.
- очи, 52.
- очки, 52.
- очнуться (*pf.*), 230.
- очутиться (*pf.*), 230.
- ошибаться (*i.*), 220.
- ошибиться (*pf.*), 220 (*N.B.* cf. 151, 166).
- ошибка, 239.
- падать (*i.*), 217, 221.
- падѹ, 151.
- пѣра, 97.
- пароходомъ, 138.
- пастѣ (*i.*), 154.
- пастъ (*pf.*), 151, 217, 221.
- пасѹ, 154.
- пахать (*i.*), 154.
- пахнетъ, 204.
- пахнуть (*i.*), 141.
- пашѹ, 154.
- пѣй(те), 169.
- пекѹ, 152.
- пере- (prefix), 233.
- перебѣгать (*i.*), 226.
- перебѣжать (*pf.*), 226.

- передавать (*i.*), 213.
 передать (*pf.*), 213.
 передний, 78.
 передняя, 78.
 передо = передь.
 передовой, 73.
 передь, 119, 143, 241.
 передь тѣмъ, какъ, 143, 186, 189, 251.
 передѣлать (*pf.*), 209, 211.
 передѣлывать (*i.*), 211.
 перелетать (*i.*), 224.
 перелетѣть (*pf.*), 224.
 перемѣнять (*i.*), 220.
 перемѣнить (*pf.*), 220.
 переодѣвать(*ся*)(*i.*), 214.
 переодѣть(*ся*) (*pf.*), 214.
 пересаживаться(*i.*), 218.
 переставать (*i.*), 214.
 перестать (*pf.*), 195, 204, 214.
 пересѣсть (*pf.*), 218.
 перо, 37, 52.
 песокъ, 46.
 печь (*i.*), 152.
 писать (*i.*), 129, 150, 155, 179, 211.
 письмо, 52, 120.
 пить (*i.*), 129, 156, 228.
 пишу, 150, 155, 179.
 плавать (*i.*), 223, 226.
 плакать (*i.*), 68, 154.
 пламя, 55.
 платить (*i.*), 158, 160.
 платье, 52.
 плачу, 43, 158, 160.
 плачу, 43, 154, 171.
 плавать (*i.*), 157, 197, 218.
 племя, 55.
 плести (*i.*), 154.
 плету, 154.
 плечо, 52.
 плóхо, 105.
 -плывать (*i.*), 226.
 плыву, 151, 223.
 плыть (*i.*), 151, 223, 226.
 плóнуть (*pf.*), 218.
 плюю, 157.
 плясать (*i.*), 155.
 пляшу, 155.
 по (+ acc.), 95, 104, 119, 137.
 по (+ dat.), 95, 104, 119, 131, 132.
 по (+ loc.), 44, 119, 145.
 по- + comparative adjective, 87.
 по- + comparative adverb, 114.
 по- (verbal and nominal prefix), 240.
 по-англійски, 106.
 побить (*pf.*), 212, 229.
 по-бóльше, 113.
 побѣгать (*pf.*), 221, 226.
 побѣжать (*pf.*), 226.
 по-вашему, 106.
 повезті (*pf.*), 224.
 повести (*pf.*), 224, 227.
 пови́димому, 201.
 повиноваться (*i.*), 230.
 повиснуть (*pf.*), 219.
 повлечь (*pf.*), 214.
 повсюду, 106.
 повторить (*pf.*), 220.
 повторять (*i.*), 220.
 повѣрить (*pf.*), 66, 198.
 повѣсить (*pf.*), 220.
 поговорить (*pf.*), 208, 228, 229.
 погóда, 75.
 погода, 199.
 под- (prefix), 241.
 подавать (*i.*), 213.
 подавить (*pf.*), 212.
 подарить (*pf.*), 95, 129.
 подать (*pf.*), 213.
 подвигать (*i.*), 221.
 подвинуть (*pf.*), 221.
 поддаваться (*i.*), 213.
 поддаться (*pf.*), 213.
 поджидать (*i.*), 215.
 подій = пойді.
 подленать (*i.*), 230.
 подлежащее, 200.
 подлѣ, 119, 127.
 подморáживаетъ, 204.
 поднимать (*i.*), 216.
 подниму, 216.
 поднять (*pf.*), 216.
 подо (= подъ), 143, 241.
 подобный, 131.
 подождать (*pf.*), 215.
 подозревать, 241.
 подражать (*i.*), 129, 230.
 подслúшать (*pf.*), 211.
 подслúшивать (*i.*), 211.
 подумать, 252.
 подъ, 119, 143, 241.
 подъ-гору, 137.
 подъ-руку, 137.
 подымать (*i.*), 216.

подымѣ=поднимѣ.
пожалуй(те), 251.
пожалуйста, 120.
пожаръ (pf.), 215.
пожертвовать (pf.), 141.
пожилой, 120.
позаботиться (pf.), 230.
позавидовать (pf.), 226.
позади, 119, 128.
позвать (pf.), 215.
позволить (pf.), 220.
позволять (i.), 220.
позвонить (pf.), 70.
поздний, 78, 85, 105.
поздно, 105.
позднѣе, 85.
позже, 85.
пой, 169.
пойдѣте, 170.
пойдѣмъ, 170.
пойди, 27.
поймать (pf.), 216, 228, 229.
поймаю, 228.
поймѣ, 216, 252.
поискать (pf.), 211.
пойте, 169.
пойти (pf.), 198, 227.
пойтъ (i.), 228.
пока, 118, 182, 250.
показалось, 230.
показать (pf.), 152, 229.
показывать (i.), 229.
по-каковски, 106.
[покаместъ=пока.]
пока не, 186, 189.
покидать (i.), 219.
покинуть (pf.), 219.
по крайней мѣрѣ, 114.
покровительство-
вать (i.), 230.
покрыть (pf.), 175, 212.

[покуда=пока].
покупать (i.), 134, 217, 219.
[пола=skirt of over-
coat.]
полагается, 229.
полагать (i.), 229.
полгода, 101.
полдень, 98.
поле, 62.
полемъ, 138.
полетѣть (pf.), 224.
ползать (i.), 223.
ползти (i.), 152, 223.
ползу, 152, 223.
[полка=shelf.]
[полкъ=regiment.]
полночь, 98.
полный, 77, 85.
полнѣе, 85.
половина, 97.
положимъ, 229.
положить (pf.), 137, 228, 229.
положиться (pf.), 136.
полонъ, 77, 122.
полоть (i.), 155.
полрюмки, 98.
полтина, 103.
полтинникъ, 103.
полтора, 97.
полтора́ста, 98.
полудня, 100.
полночи, 100.
полѹтора, 97.
получать (i.), 155, 220, 240.
получить (pf.), 127, 220, 240.
полфунта, 98.
полчася, 99.
[поль=(1) floor, (2) sex.]
полька, 56.
полю, 155.
полякъ, 56.
по-мѣньше, 113.

помилуй(те), 251.
поминай, 194.
по-минутно, 100.
помнить (i.), 70.
помогать (i.), 214.
по моей части, 132.
по-моему, 106, 131.
по-морю, 131.
помочь (pf.), 190, 214.
по-неволѣ, 132.
по-немножку, 132.
понести (pf.), 225, 227.
понимать (i.), 66, 216, 229.
поносить (pf.), 225, 227.
по-нѣмецки, 106.
понять (pf.), 216, 229.
пообѣдать (pf.), 214.
попадать (i.), 221.
попасть (pf.), 221.
по-полудни, 100.
по-прежнему, 132.
попробовать (pf.), 197.
попросить (pf.), 212.
попытать (pf.), 210.
пора, 103, 130.
поработать (pf.), 211.
порами, 103.
порой, 103.
пороть (i.), 155.
по-русьски, 106.
порю, 155.
по-своему, 106.
по-скорѣе, 109.
послать (pf.), 142, 215, 240.
послѹшать (pf.), 192, 211.
послѣ, 119, 128, 187, 240.
последний, 78, 240.

послѣ-завтра, 109.
 послѣ того, какъ,
 186, 189, 251.
 посмотреть (*pf.*),
 192, 197, 209, 211.
 посреди, 119, 128.
 посредствомъ, 139.
 поставитъ (*pf.*), 115,
 220.
 постро́бить (*pf.*), 211.
 поступать (*i.*), 218,
 219.
 поступитъ (*pf.*),
 133, 218.
 посылать (*i.*), 215,
 240.
 посыпать (*pf.*), 221.
 посѣтить (*pf.*), 160,
 174, 220, 240.
 посѣщать (*i.*), 220,
 240.
 посѣщу, 160.
 потерѣть (*pf.*), 215.
 потерѣть (*pf.*), 173.
 потихоньку, 132.
 потому, 63.
 потому, что, 65, 132.
 181.
 пото́мъ, 63.
 потчевать (*i.*), 156.
 потчую, 156.
 потяну́тъ (*pf.*), 211,
 218.
 по-французски, 106.
 похо́жъ, 78, 84, 136.
 почему, 65, 132.
 по-че́мъ, 104, 145.
 [почива́тъ (*i.*), *N.B.*
 = *to repose*.]
 почита́тъ (*pf.*), 211.
 почти (что), 113.
 поше́лъ, 68, 185,
 204.
 пошла́, 186.
 по́вѣдъ, 139.
 по́вѣжай(те), 169.
 по́вѣсть (*pf.*), 214.
 по́вѣхалъ, 110, 185.

по́вѣхъ (*pf.*), 226,
 227.
 поэтически, 106.
 пою, 156.
 правда, 181.
 пра́вить (*i.*), 141.
 пра́вый, 137.
 пре- (prepositional
 prefix), 233, 234.
 пре- (superlative
 prefix), 88, 234.
 превос- (prefix),
 234.
 пред- (prefix), 241.
 предвѣ́дѣть (*i.*),
 226.
 предло́гъ, 142, 143.
 пре́до=предъ.
 предпочита́тъ (*i.*),
 197, 241.
 представле́нiе, 122.
 предста́вь(те), 245.
 предсто́ить, 206.
 предсто́ять (*i.*), 230.
 пре́дчу́ствовать
 (*i.*), 230.
 предъ=пéредъ.
 пре́жде, 182.
 пре́жде, чѣ́мъ, 186.
 пре́жній, 78.
 преслѣ́довать (*i.*),
 230.
 при, 44, 119, 145,
 242.
 прибѣ́гать (*i.*), 226.
 прибѣ́гнуть (*pf.*),
 226.
 прибѣ́жать (*pf.*),
 226.
 привезти (*pf.*), 224.
 привлека́тъ (*i.*), 214.
 привлéчь (*pf.*), 214.
 приво́зятъ (*i.*), 224.
 приви́кать (*i.*), 219.
 приви́кну́тъ (*pf.*),
 219.
 придава́тъ (*i.*), 213.
 прида́тъ (*pf.*), 213.

приде́тся, 203.
 при́дти=при́йти.
 прижа́тъ (*pf.*), 215.
 прижима́тъ (*i.*), 215.
 призна́ться (*pf.*),
 203.
 приказáтъ (*pf.*),
 191, 229.
 приказыва́тъ (*i.*),
 229.
 прики́дываться (*i.*),
 219.
 прики́нуться (*pf.*),
 219.
 приму́, 153, 216.
 принадле́жать (*i.*),
 230, 239.
 прине́сти (*pf.*), 225,
 227.
 принима́тъ (*i.*), 216,
 242.
 прино́ситъ (*i.*), 225,
 227.
 приня́тъ (*pf.*), 153,
 216, 242.
 приписа́тъ (*pf.*),
 209, 211.
 приписыва́тъ (*i.*),
 211.
 при се́мъ, 64.
 прислуга, 51.
 притворя́ться (*i.*),
 142.
 прито́мъ (or sepa-
 rately), 145.
 прихо́дится, 130,
 203.
 приходи́тъ, 131,
 225, 242.
 приче́мъ (or sepa-
 rately), 145.
 пришё́лъ, 65, 69,
 131.
 пришло́сь, 203.
 при́йти, 225, 242.
 приоб́рѣлъ, 25.
 приоб́рѣсти (*pf.*),
 25, 154.

- приѣздъ, 122, 145.
 приѣзжать (*i.*), 110,
 179, 226, 242.
 приѣхать (*pf.*), 226,
 242.
 про, 119, 137, 242.
 провести (*pf.*), 224.
 проводить (*i.*), 224,
 227.
 проводить (*pf.*), 227.
 провожать (*i.*), 227.
 прова́тывать (*i.*), 135,
 213, 242.
 прода́ть (*pf.*), 135,
 213, 242.
 продо́лжать (*i.*),
 195, 202.
 продо́лжаться (*i.*),
 202.
 прои́звести (*pf.*),
 133.
 пройти, 225, 242.
 прокля́тый, 175,
 202.
 прола́мывать (*i.*),
 211.
 пролома́ть (*pf.*), 211.
 пропада́ть (*i.*), 221.
 пропа́сть (*pf.*), 221.
 пропива́ть (*i.*), 212.
 пропи́ть (*pf.*), 212.
 просвѣ́щенный,
 174.
 проси́ть (*i.*), 121,
 122, 191, 212.
 просну́ться (*pf.*),
 221.
 простере́ть (*pf.*),
 154.
 [простира́ть = *i.* of
 простере́ть.]
 прости́ть (*pf.*),
 217, 245.
 просто́й, 84, 96.
 простру́, 154.
 просту́да, 125, 242.
 простуді́ться (*pf.*),
 203.
 просыпа́ться (*i.*),
 221.
 просьба, 131.
 проті́вь, 119, 128,
 242.
 протяну́ть (*pf.*), 175.
 профе́ссоръ, 47.
 проходи́ть (*i.*), 225,
 242.
 проче́ль, 165.
 проче́сть (*pf.*), 154,
 165, 174, 211.
 прочита́ть (*pf.*), 211.
 прочи́тывать (*i.*),
 211.
 прот́ый, 142, 248.
 прочла́, 165.
 прочту́, 154.
 проше́дший, 201.
 прошлогот́ний, 102.
 прошлы́й, 102, 133,
 201.
 проща́ть (*pf.*) (*i.*),
 217, 245.
 прот́е, 84.
 пряду́, 152.
 прями́й, 83.
 прями́ть (*i.*), 152.
 прятать (*i.*), 154.
 прятчу́, 154.
 пуска́й, 170, 192.
 пуска́ть (*i.*), 217.
 пусти́ть (*pf.*), 160,
 217.
 пусть, 170, 192.
 путь, 54, 121, 139.
 пушчу́, 160.
 пы́тать (*i.*), 210.
 пью́, 156.
 пья́ница, 51.
 пѣ́вецъ, 56, 224.
 пѣ́вица, 56.
 пѣ́сня, 51.
 пѣ́ть (*i.*), 156, 175,
 212.
 пята́къ, 103.
 пятачо́къ, 103.
 пята́лты́нный, 103.
 пѣ́то, 29.
 пѣ́ть, 29, 88, 92, 93,
 102.
 пѣ́тьдеся́тъ, 43, 89,
 92.
 пѣ́тьсо́тъ, 89, 93.
 раба́тывать (*i.*), 211.
 ра́ди, 119, 128.
 ра́доваться (*i.*), 129.
 ра́достный, 76.
 ра́дость, 53, 127.
 радъ, 53, 71, 84, 130.
 раз- (prefix), 35, 234,
 235.
 разви́тіе, 86, 234.
 ра́звѣ́, 116.
 ра́звѣ́ не, 116.
 разгово́ривать (*i.*),
 219, 229.
 раздава́ть (*i.*), 213.
 разда́ть (*pf.*), 213.
 раздѣ́вывать (*i.*),
 214, 234.
 раздѣ́ть (*pf.*),
 214, 234.
 ра́зомъ, 139.
 разрѣ́шать (*i.*), 218.
 разрѣ́шить (*pf.*),
 218.
 расска́зать (*pf.*),
 229.
 рассказыва́ть (*i.*),
 229.
 размат́ривать (*i.*),
 211.
 разсмотре́ть (*pf.*),
 211.
 расстава́ться (*i.*),
 214.
 раста́ться (*pf.*),
 214.
 разу́мъ, 230, 235.
 разу́мѣ́тся (*i.*), 59,
 139, 203, 230.
 разъ, 49, 75, 95, 96,
 134, 136.

- развѣздить (*pf.*), 227.
 развѣзжаться (*i.*), 227.
 развѣживать (*i.*), 227.
 развѣхаться (*pf.*), 227, 235.
 раненный, 173.
 ранить (*i.* and *pf.*), 173, 230.
 ранний, 78, 84, 105.
 рано, 105.
 раньше, 84.
 ранѣе, 251.
 рас- (=раз-), 235.
 раскрывать (*i.*), 212.
 раскрыть (*pf.*), 212.
 распять (*pf.*), 153.
 расти (*i.*), 154, 166, 228.
 ребёнокъ, 53, 55.
 ребята, 53, 55.
 ревѣть (*i.*), 151.
 ржать (*i.*), 152.
 ровно, 111.
 рогъ, 47.
 родина, 132, 145.
 родиться (*pf.*), 142.
 родомъ, 140. [202.
 родъ, 75.
 рождѣніе, 134.
 Рождество (*Christmas*), 123.
 рожь, 54.
 роз- (*prefix*), 235.
 роптать (*i.*), 155.
 рос- (=роз-), 235.
 росла, 166.
 Россія, 50, 76, 133, 138, 226.
 ростъ=расти.
 ростомъ, 137.
 росъ, 166.
 рою, 156.
 рубль, 31, 70, 103, 104, 132, 134.
 ружьё, 52.
 рука, 43, 135, 136, 138.
 руководить (*i.*), 141.
 русскій, 74, 76, 144.
 русско-, 77.
 Русь, 38.
 ручей, 47.
 рыба, 82.
 рыбій, 82.
 рыть (*i.*), 156.
 рѣдкій, 84.
 рѣже, 84.
 рѣжу, 152.
 рѣзать (*i.*), 152.
 рѣка, 138, 140.
 рѣшать (*i.*), 217, 218.
 рѣшить (*pf.*), 217, 218.
 рядомъ, 139.
 садить (*i.*), 173, 223.
 садиться (*i.*), 217, 218.
 садъ, 47.
 сажать (*i.*), 223.
 сажень, 54, 97.
 сажу, 223.
 самецъ, 56.
 самка, 56.
 само собою, 59, 68, 139.
 самъ, 67.
 самъ-другъ, 97.
 самъ-третій, 94.
 самый, 68, 87, 144.
 сани, 53.
 сверкать (*i.*), 204.
 сверху=съ верху.
 сверхъ, 119, 128.
 свобода, 144.
 свободно, 252.
 свой, 60, 61, 106, 144.
 свѣдущій, 200.
 свѣжій, 79, 84, 144.
 свѣтло-, 77.
 свѣтъ, 144.
 сдавать (*i.*), 213.
 сдать (*pf.*), 213.
 сдать (*pf.*), 71, 173, 178.
 себѣ, 59, 131, 137.
 себя, 58, 59, 137, 203.
 сегодня, 64, 109, 122, 140, 147.
 сегодняшний, 78.
 сей, 62, 64, 99.
 сейчасъ, 64, 99, 109.
 село, 24, 39, 51, 52, 80.
 семь, 36, 88.
 семья, 30.
 сестра, 49-51.
 снечь (*pf.*), 215.
 сидя, 170, 199.
 сижу, 159.
 сію минуту, 64, 99, 109.
 сію секунду, 99.
 скажи(те), 129, 251.
 сказать (*pf.*), 152, 197, 228, 229, 252.
 сказуемое, 200.
 сказывать (*i.*), 229.
 скакать (*i.*), 217.
 скверно, 105.
 сквозъ, 119, 137.
 сколько, 95, 112, 126, 130.
 сколько-нибудь, 112.
 скоро, 109.
 скорость, 53.
 скорѣе, 113.
 скосить (*pf.*), 174.
 скочить (*pf.*), 217.
 скребъ, 151.
 скрестіи (*i.*), 151.
 скѣла, 126, 127.
 скучать (*i.*), 145.
 скучать (*pf.*), 71.
 слать (*i.*), 150, 155, 215.
 слишкомъ, 113.

словарь, 77.
 слóвно, 250.
 слóво, 90, 128, 139.
 сломать (*pf.*), 59, 211.
 слуга, 51, 55.
 служба, 144.
 служить (*i.*), 142.
 слýчай, 75, 132.
 слýчайно, 110.
 слýчаться (*i.*), 203.
 слýчиться (*pf.*), 66, 194.
 слýшать (*i.*), 66, 192, 211.
 слыу, 151.
 слыть (*i.*), 142, 151.
 слыхать (*i.*), 69, 198, 224, 225.
 слышать (*i.*), 70, 158, 160, 224, 225.
 слѣдить (*i.*), 240.
 слѣдовательно, 110.
 слѣдовать (*i.*), 206, 240.
 слѣдуетъ, 206.
 слѣдующий, 144, 200, 240.
 смеркается, 203.
 сморкаться (*i.*), 203.
 смотрѣть (*i.*), 160, 209, 211.
 смотря, 200.
 смочь (*pf.*), 196, 214.
 смѣть (*i.*), 157.
 смѣяться (*i.*), 129, 157, 203, 211, 237.
 снару́жи, 108.
 сначала, 109, 126.
 снизу=съ низу.
 снимать (*i.*), 216, 243.
 сниму, 153, 216.
 снятся, 203.
 сно́ва, 109, 126.
 сновать (*i.*), 156.
 сную, 156.
 спѣть, 204.

снять (*pf.*), 153, 216, 243.
 со (=съ), 143, 243.
 соба́ка, 82, 123, 125, 186.
 собирать (*i.*), 229.
 собо́й, 59, 60, 139.
 собо́ю=собо́й.
 собра́ть (*pf.*), 229.
 совать (*i.*), 156, 218, 219.
 со вре́менемъ, 102, 143.
 совѣ́тъ, 68, 114.
 совѣ́тъ не, 113.
 совѣ́товать (*i.*), 156, 169.
 содержи́ть (*i.*), 230.
 содѣ́йствовать (*i.*), 230.
 сожа́лѣть (*i.*), 230.
 создава́ть (*i.*), 213.
 создáть (*pf.*), 213.
 сойт́и (*pf.*), 201, 225.
 сойт́ись (*pf.*), 225.
 солда́тъ, 49, 123, 133.
 со́лнце, 144.
 соловѣ́й, 47.
 сомнѣ́ваться (*i.*), 243.
 со́рокъ, 89, 93.
 сорть, 86.
 состоя́ть (*i.*), 206, 230, 252.
 состоя́ться (*pf.*), 206, 230.
 состо́дь, 48, 130.
 со́бня, 97.
 со́хнуть (*i.*), 153, 165.
 сочу́вствовать (*i.*), 230.
 спать (*i.*), 158, 159 (cf. 221).
 спит́ся, 130, 203.
 сплю́шь, 114.
 сплю, 158, 159 (cf. 221).

споко́енъ, 77.
 спо́лнá, 114.
 спосо́бный, 76.
 спосо́бъ, 139.
 спою, 157.
 спра́шивать (*i.*), 71, 212.
 спроси́ть (*pf.*), 70, 212.
 спрошу́, 70.
 спѣ́тъ (*i.*=*ripen*), 157.
 спѣ́ть (*pf.* = *sing*), 157, 212.
 сразу, 95, 126.
 среда, 100.
 сре́дй, 128.
 сре́дне-, 79.
 сре́дний, 78.
 -става́ть (*i.*), 155, 214.
 ста́вить (*i.*), 220.
 стака́нъ, 120.
 ста́ло-бы́ть, 195, 205.
 стано́вится (*i.*), 141, 203, 217, 218.
 ста́ну, 153, 187.
 ста́рше, 85.
 ста́рший, 86.
 ста́рый, 85.
 ста́рѣть (*i.*), 157.
 ста́ть (*pf.*), 153, 187, 214, 217, 218.
 ста́тья, 50.
 стелю́, 155 (cf. 240).
 сте́пень, 75, 86.
 стере́гу, 151.
 стере́чь (*i.*), 151.
 сти́ль, 132, 248.
 стлáть (*i.*), 155.
 сто, 49, 89, 93.
 сто́ить (*i.*), 112, 121, 122, 160, 190, 230.
 столова́я, 73.
 столъ, 45, 134-136, 142.
 сто́лько, 112.

столѣтіе, 102.
 стонать (*i.*), 153.
 сторона, 137.
 стоя, 170, 199.
 стоять (*i.*), 160.
 странно, 110.
 страсть, 53.
 стрѣмя, 55.
 стригу, 151.
 стричь (*i.*), 151, 174.
 строить (*i.*), 211.
 стрельбой, 138.
 стуль, 48.
 ступать (*i.*), 217, 218.
 ступить (*pf.*), 217, 218.
 стыннуть (*i.*), 153, 165.
 стягивать (*i.*), 211.
 стянуть (*pf.*), 211.
 сударыня, 118.
 сударь, 118.
 судно, 52.
 судьба, 51.
 судья, 50, 51, 55.
 сумасшедший, 201.
 сумѣть (*pf.*), 195, 196.
 сунуть (*pf.*), 218, 219.
 сѹтки, 99.
 суть, 161, 208.
 сухимъ путѣмъ,
 сую, 156. [138.
 сходить (*i.*), 225.
 сходить (*pf.*), 225-227.
 сходиться (*i.*), 225.
 считать (*i.*), 243.
 считаться (*i.*), 142.
 съ (+acc.), 119, 137.
 съ (+gen.), 119, 126.
 съ (+inst.), 60, 69-71, 119, 143.
 -съ (suffix of politeness), 118.
 съ верху, 47.

съ виду, 47.
 съ низу, 47.
 съ тѣмъ, чтобы, 251.
 съ тѣхъ поръ, 103.
 съ т. п., какъ, 251.
 съѣдать (*i.*), 214.
 съѣздить (*pf.*), 226, 227.
 съѣсть (*pf.*), 214.
 сыграть (*pf.*), 71.
 сызнова, 126.
 сыновья, 48.
 сынъ, 48.
 сыпать (*i.*), 155, 221.
 сыплю, 155, 168, 221.
 сыть, 83, 123.
 -сь (reflexive pronoun), 59, 175, 176.
 сѣверъ, 136.
 сѣдло, 25.
 сѣдой, 73.
 сѣку, 152.
 сѣмя, 38, 55.
 сѣрый, 77.
 сѣсть (*pf.*), 152, 165, 217, 218.
 сѣчь (*i.*), 152.
 сѣять (*i.*), 157.
 сюда, 107.
 -ся (reflexive pronoun), 59, 175, 176.
 сяду, 134, 152.
 сядь(те), 168.
 -таки, 115, 181.
 также, 116.
 таковой, 64, 74.
 таковъ, 249.
 такой, 63, 64, 74, 75.
 такой же, 64, 74, 75.
 такой-то, 144, 249.
 такъ (=in that case), 198.
 такъ, 65, 109, 111, 250.
 такъ и, 115, 250.
 такъ и быть, 195.

такъ и сякъ, 111.
 такъ какъ, 181, 248.
 такъ себѣ, 59, 131.
 такъ-то, 111, 250.
 такъ что, 182.
 тамошній, 78.
 тамъ, 63, 106.
 тамъ и сякъ, 107.
 танцовать (*i.*), 156, 240.
 таять (*i.*), 155.
 твой, 60, 61.
 тебѣ, 58.
 тебя, 58.
 теку-, 152.
 темно, 43, 105.
 темнѣть (*i.*), 206.
 теперешній, 78.
 теперь, 108, 111.
 тепло, 105, 208.
 терѣть (*i.*), 154, 164, 175, 215.
 терпѣть (*i.*), 159.
 [терять, *N.B.* = *i.* of потерять.]
 течь (*i.*), 152, 164.
 ткать (*i.*), 152.
 то (=in that case), 180, 181, 194.
 то — то —, 188.
 -то (suffix of emphasis), 60, 62, 63, 111.
 -то (suffix of uncertainty), 70, 107, 110.
 -то (suffix to infinitive), 198.
 тобой, 58, 60.
 тобою = тобой.
 тогда, 108.
 тогдашній, 78.
 того и, 194.
 тоже, 64, 116.
 то и дѣло, 64.
 толку, 152.
 толочь (*i.*), 152.
 Толстой, 73.

толстый, 73, 84.
 только, 112.
 тому назад, 102.
 тонуть (*i.*), 153.
 топтать (*i.*), 155.
 торопиться (*i.*), 159.
 то-то, 63.
 тотъ, 62-64.
 тотъ же, 64.
 тотъ же самый, 68.
 тотъ-часъ (огъ тотъ-
 часъ), 109.
 точка, 26.
 точно, 111.
 точъ-въ-точъ, 250.
 трепетать (*i.*), 155.
 треть, 98.
 третьяго дня, 82,
 109.
 три, 88, 91, 101.
 триста, 89, 93.
 трогать (*i.*), 218,
 219.
 трое, 97.
 тронуть (*pf.*), 153,
 164, 218, 219.
 тру, 154, 215.
 трясти (*i.*), 25, 154.
 Тургеневъ, 81, 250.
 ты, 58, 146.
 тысяча, 89, 93.
 тьма, 39.
 т(ь)фу, 245.
 тѣ, 62.
 тѣло, 38.
 тѣмъ, 140.
 тяжёлый, 85.
 тяжкій, 77.
 тянуть (*i.*), 153,
 211, 218.
 у, 119, 124-126, 243,
 244.
 у (=from), 126.
 убивать (*i.*), 212,
 229.
 убить (*pf.*), 212,
 229.

убійца, 51.
 убедить (*pf.*), 220.
 убеждать (*i.*), 220.
 увидать (*pf.*), 225.
 увидѣвши, 199.
 увидѣть (*pf.*), 111,
 225.
 увидя, 199.
 увѣ, 245.
 угодно, 130, 244.
 уголь, 47.
 уголь, 47.
 ударить (*pf.*), 220,
 228, 229.
 ударять (*i.*), 220,
 229.
 удивленіе, 131.
 удивляться (*i.*), 129.
 удобно, 244.
 удовольствіе, 143.
 ужалить (*pf.*), 173.
 уже, 84, 109.
 уже, 84.
 уже не, 109, 249.
 уже нѣтъ, 109.
 ужъ (=уже), 195.
 узнавать (*i.*), 155,
 212, 213.
 узнать (*pf.*), 71,
 212, 213.
 уйті (*pf.*), 227.
 указать (*pf.*), 229.
 указъ, 35.
 указывать (*i.*), 229.
 укладывать(ся) (*i.*),
 229.
 ѹлица, 73, 131.
 уложить(ся) (*pf.*),
 229.
 улыбаться (*i.*), 203.
 у меня есть, 112,
 124.
 умереть (*pf.*), 154,
 172, 215.
 умирать (*i.*), 215.
 умница, 56, 126.
 умру, 154, 215.
 умъ, 235.

умываться (*i.*), 212.
 умыться (*pf.*), 212.
 умѣть (*i.*), 66, 157.
 унаследовать (*pf.*),
 230.
 употребить (*pf.*),
 220.
 употреблять (*i.*),
 220.
 управлять (*i.*), 141.
 услыхать (*pf.*), 225,
 226.
 услышать (*pf.*), 225,
 226.
 успѣвать (*i.*), 196.
 успѣть (*pf.*), 196.
 уставать (*i.*), 155,
 213.
 устать (*pf.*), 213.
 устраивать (*i.*), 211.
 устроить (*pf.*), 110,
 111, 211.
 ѹтренній, 78.
 ѹтромъ, 139, 140.
 ухаживать (*i.*), 227.
 ѹхо, 52.
 уходить (*i.*), 227.
 уходить (*pf.*), 227.
 ученикъ, 56.
 ученица, 56.
 учёный, 173.
 училище, 52.
 учитель, 47, 56.
 учительница, 56.
 учить (*i.*), 129, 158,
 160, 173.
 учиться (*i.*), 129,
 160.
 ѹши, 52.
 ушибить (*pf.*), 151,
 166.
 ѹзжать (*i.*), 226.
 ѹхатъ (*pf.*), 66, 226.
 формировать (*i.*),
 156.
 фунтъ, 47, 97, 121.
 футъ, 49, 140.

хватаетъ, 205.
 хватать (*i.*), 217.
 хватить, 205.
 хватить (*pf.*), 217.
 хлопъ, 246.
 хлопъ, 48, 120.
 ходить (*i.*), 68, 159,
 223, 225, 227, 252.
 хожу, 159, 222, 223.
 хозяйева, 48.
 хозяйинъ, 48.
 холодно, 105, 191,
 208.
 хорошенький, 88.
 хорошенько, 110,
 189.
 хороший, 79, 105.
 хорошó, 78, 105,
 197, 204.
 хотъ, 181, 194.
 хотъ куда, 108.
 хотѣль, 166, 196.
 хотѣль-бы, 167.
 хотѣть (*i.*), 154,
 160, 161, 249.
 хотя, 118, 181, 194,
 199.
 хохотать (*i.*), 154.
 хочется, 129, 203.
 хочú, 154, 161, 196.
 христианинъ, 48.
 Христóсъ, 49.
 худой, 85.
 худшій, 86.
 худъ, 85.
 хуже, 85, 114.

царіца (or госуда-
 рыня), 50, 81.
 царь (*N.B.* the
 reigning sovereign
 is usually referred
 to as *государь*,
q.v.), 45.
 цвѣль, 25.
 цвѣсти (*i.*), 25, 154.
 цвѣта, 48.
 цвѣтокъ, 48.

цвѣту, 154.
 цвѣтъ, 48.
 цвѣты, 48, 83.
 центръ, 68.
 цѣрковь, 54.
 цѣликомъ, 139.
 цѣлковый, 103.
 цѣлый, 99, 133.
 цѣль, 143.
 цѣна, 86, 130, 132.
 цѣпъ, 37.
 цѣпь, 37.

чай, 47, 120.
 Чайковскій, 74.
 часто, 208.
 часть, 53, 86, 139.
 часть, 75, 98-100,
 144.
 часы, 97, 98.
 чего, 64.
 чей, 62, 65.
 человѣкъ, 49, 53,
 56, 82.
 человѣчий, 82.
 чему, 64, 132.
 чѣмъ, 64, 145.
 черезчуръ, 113.
 черезъ, 99, 102,
 119, 137, 138.
 чѣртъ, 48.
 чесать (*i.*), 154.
 чѣтверо, 94, 96.
 чѣтверть, 98.
 чѣтыре, 88, 91.
 чѣтыреста, 89, 93.
 чѣшется, 154, 203.
 число, 75, 101.
 чйсто, 40.
 читать (*i.*), 155, 171,
 172, 211.
 чрезвычайно, 111.
 чрезъ=черезъ.
 что (conjunction),
 65, 180, 186, 188.
 что (introducing
 question), 67, 116.

что (pronoun), 63,
 187, 197.
 чтобы=чтобы.
 чтобы, 66, 118, 182,
 190, 191, 249, 251.
 чтобы! (introduc-
 ing wish), 66.
 чтобы не, 118, 191.
 что бы ни, 66, 190.
 что же, 66, 197.
 чтожъ, 66.
 что-ли, 116.
 что-либо, 70.
 что ни, 188.
 что-нибудь, 70.
 что-то, 70.
 чувствовать (*i.*), 69,
 203.
 чудеса, 40, 52.
 чудо, 40, 52.
 чужой, 73, 74, 194.
 чуть, 114, 186.
 чуть было не, 183.
 чуть-чуть, 114.
 чуть-чуть не, 114.
 чуять (*i.*), 156.
 чѣ, чѣи, чѣя, 65.
 чѣмъ, 64, 140.
 чѣмъ (=than), 83.

шагомъ, 138, 197.
 шагъ, 75.
 шедши, 171.
 шедшій, 172.
 шѣль, 166, 171, 172.
 шепнуть (*pf.*), 153,
 218.
 шептатъ (*i.*), 154,
 218.
 шея, 50.
 ширина, 140 (cf. 84).
 шить (*i.*), 156, 169.
 шла, 166.
 шлю, 150, 155, 215.
 шмыгъ, 246.
 шумѣть (*i.*), 159.
 шью, 156.

щ-, 24, 40.	ѣсть (<i>i.</i>), 161, 169, 172, 214.	югъ, 136.
ѣдѣ, 23.	ѣхать (<i>i.</i>), 138, 139, 161, 169, 223, 226, 227.	юноша, 51.
ѣдимъ, 161.	ѣшь, 161, 169.	я, 58, 146.
ѣду, 23, 133, 162, 223, 226.	экипажъ, 46.	яблоко, 52, 132.
ѣздить (<i>i.</i>), 223, 226, 227, 232.	эрмитажъ, 20.	явиться (<i>pf.</i>), 217, 218.
-ѣзжать, 169, 226, 227, 232.	этакой, 64, 74.	являться (<i>i.</i>), 217, 218.
-ѣзживать, 227, 232.	это, 206.	яйцо, 52.
ѣзжу, 35, 223, 226.	этотъ, 20, 62-64.	яко-бы, 118.
ѣмъ, 23, 161.		ѣтѣ, 18, 41.

SUBJECT-INDEX

- abbreviations (Russian)—сокращёния, 248.
 accent (stress, emphasis) = ударёние.
 accusative—винительный падежъ, 99, 100, 132-138.
 addressing letters, 15, 16.
 adjectival suffixes, 82, 83.
 adjectives—именá прилагательныя, 71-88.
 adverbs—нарѣчія, 104-114.
 adverbs of degree and manner—нарѣчія образности качественной, 109-114, 250.
 adverbs of place—н. мѣста, 106-108, 250.
 adverbs of quantity—н. образности количественной, 111-114, 250.
 adverbs of time—н. времени, 108, 109, 250.
 affection (terminations of)—и.¹ с.¹ ласкательныя, 58, 83.
 age (expression of)—возрастъ, 102, 130, 134.
 alphabet—азбука, 12-14.
 anomalous verbs, 228-230.
 attribute=сказуемое.
- attributive adjectives, 76, 77.
 attributive comparative, 86.
 augmentative nouns—и.¹ с.¹ увеличительныя, 58.
 be (*to*)—быть, 106, 206.
 cards (names of)—карты, 97.
 case=падежъ.
 Christian names—именá, 20, 27, 41, 51, 80, 81.
 coins (names of)—монеты, 103.
 collective numerals—и.² ч.² собирательныя, 96.
 comparative adjectives, 83-87, 121.
 comparative adverbs, 114, 251.
 comparative degree—сравнительная степенъ, *v.* above.
 compound imperfective verbs formed by change of accent, 221.
 conditional—условное (or concessive) наклонёние, 167, 189, 197.
 conjunctions—союзы, 115, 118, 180, 186, 188, 190.

¹ = именá существительныя.² = именá числительныя.

- date (the)—число, 101, 121.
 dative—дательный падежъ, 108, 128-132.
 days of the week (the)—дни недели, 100, 132, 134.
 definitive pronouns—опредѣлительныя м.¹, 67, 68.
 demonstrative pronouns—указательныя м.¹, 62-64, 249.
 depreciation (terminations of)—и. с. унижительныя, 58.
 diminutive nouns—и. с. уменьшительныя, 56, 57, 83.
 dual (remains of the)—двойственное число, 47, 52, 91.
 family names—фамилин, 25, 73, 74, 80, 81, 249.
 feminine nouns—именá женскаго рода, 49-51, 53, 54, 56, 57.
 food and drink—пища и питье, 120, 129.
 fractions—дроби, 97, 98.
 future—будущее время, 167, 186-189, 200, 252.
 genitive — родительный падежъ, 47, 51, 52, 83, 91, 93, 98, 99, 101, 120-128.
 gerunds—дѣяпричастія, 170, 171, 199, 200.
 have (to), 124, 157.
 imperative — повелительное наклонение, 168, 169, 192-194, 251.
 imperfective compound verbs, 219, 220.
 imperfective verbs—глаголы несовершеннаго вида, 176 ff., 209 ff.
 impersonal verbs, 129, 204-206.
 indeclinable nouns, 249.
 indeclinable participles, *v. gerunds*.
 indefinite pronouns—неопредѣлennыя м.¹, 68-71, 249.
 infinitive — неопредѣленное наклонение or инфинитивъ, 170, 195-198, 245, 252.
 instrumental — творительный падежъ, 138-143, 202.
 interjections—междометія, 245.
 interrogative pronouns—вопросительныя м.¹, 64-67.
 irregular verbs, 161, 162, 165, 166, 169.
 locative — предложный падежъ, 47, 143-145.
 masculine nouns—именá мужскаго рода, 45-49, 56, 57.
 measures—мѣры, 140, 247.
 money—деньги, 91, 94, 103, 104.
 months (names of the) — мѣсяцы, 101, 131.
 names (personal)—именá личныя, 51, 73, 74, 80, 81.
 nationalities—народности, 48, 56, 74, 76, 144.
 negations — отрицанія, 117, 122, 207.
 neuter nouns—именá среднего рода, 51-55.
 nominal suffixes, 56-58.
 nominative — именительный падежъ, 90, 91, 120.
 notes (money)—бумажки, 104.
 nouns—именá существительныя, 44-58.
 numbers (the), 88, 89.
 numerals—именá числительныя, 88-104.

¹ = мѣстоименія.

object=дополнѣніе.
one (French *on*, German *man*),
252.

participles—причѣстія, 172-
175, 200-202, 251.

passive—страдательный за-
логъ, 202-204.

past—прошедшее время, 162-
166, 182-186, 201.

patronymics — отчества, 57,
80, 81.

perfective simple verbs, 217-
219.

perfective verbs—глаголы со-
вершеннаго вида, 176 ff.,
209 ff.

personal names, *v.* names.

personal pronouns — личные
мѣстоимѣнія, 58, 60, 146.

plural=множественное число.

possessive adjectives—и.¹ и.¹
притяжательныя, 80, 249.

possessive pronouns—притя-
жательныя м.², 60, 61.

predicate=сказуемое.

predicative comparative, 83-
85.

predicative instrumental —
творительный предикатив-
ный, 141, 142.

prepositional prefixes—пред-
логи-приставки, 231-244.

prepositions—предлоги, 118-
145.

present — настоящее время,
147-162, 179-182.

price—цѣна, 104, 112, 130,
132, 134, 145.

pronouns—мѣстоимѣнія, 58-
71.

questions—вопросы, 116, 117,
197, 207.

reflexive pronoun—возвратное
мѣстоимѣніе, 58, 59.

reflexive verbs—возвратный
залогъ, 175, 176, 202, 203.

relationships—родство, 246.

relative pronouns—относите-
льныя мѣстоимѣнія, 64-67.

seasons—времена года, 130,
139.

simple imperfective verbs with
two forms, 221-228.

singular=единственное число.

stamps—марки, 104.

subject=подлежащее.

subordinate sentences—прида-
точные предложѣнія, 180,
186, 188-191, 198, 251.

subordinative conjunctions,
118, 180, 186, 188, 251.

substantial suffixes, *v.* no-
minal.

substantives, *v.* nouns.

superlative adjectives, 87, 88,
234.

superlative adverbs, 113, 114.

superlative degree=превосход-
ная стѣпень.

surnames, *v.* family names.

terminations=окончанія.

terminations of adjectives, 82,
83.

terminations of substantives,
55-58.

time of day—часть, 75, 98-100,
134, 139, 144.

times of the year, *v.* seasons.

towns (names of)—городѣ, 21,
29, 33, 127, 249.

verbs—глаголы, 146-230.

vocative (remains of the)—
звательный падежъ, 49.

weather—погода, 75, 204.

weights—вѣсы, 97, 98, 247.

wishes—желанія, 66, 68, 121,
170, 192, 193, 245.

¹ = имена прилагательныя.

² = мѣстоимѣнія.

PRINTED IN ENGLAND
AT THE OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD RUSSIAN PLAIN TEXTS

NEW SERIES UNDER THE GENERAL EDITORSHIP OF
NEVILL FORBES

Crown 8vo, limp cloth, 1s. net each unless otherwise stated

LEO TOLSTÓY. *A Prisoner of the Caucasus*: edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 64. Also with introduction, notes, and vocabulary, by E. G. UNDERWOOD and NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 128+xxvi. 2s. 6d. net. *TWENTY-THREE TALES BY TOLSTOY* (containing *A Prisoner of the Caucasus*), translated by L. and A. MAUDE. *World's Classics*. From 1s. 3d. net.

TURGÉNEV. *Pegasus, Biryúk, Forest and Steppe*: edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD and NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 56.

PÚSHKIN. *The Queen of Spades*: edited by E. G. UNDERWOOD. Pp. 64.

GÓGOL. *An Old-World Country-House*: edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 64.

DOSTOÉVSKI. *A Christmas-Tree and a Wedding, An Honest Thief*: edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 64.

SALTYKÓV. *Pilgrims and Wayfarers, Bygone Times* (from the *Provincial Sketches*): edited by NEVILL FORBES. Pp. 80. 1s. 3d. net.

In preparation

GONCHARÓV. *Men-servants of Other Days*: edited by NEVILL FORBES.

GRIGORÓVICH. *Bores*: edited by IVY WILLIAMS.

KOROLÉNKO. *In the Night, Easter Eve*: edited by NEVILL FORBES.

GÁRSHIN. *What never happened, The Meeting, The Signal, Four Days*: edited by I. WILLIAMS.

AKSÁKOV. *The Little Red Flower*: edited by NEVILL FORBES.

GLEB ÚSPÉNSKI. *Short Stories*: edited by NEVILL FORBES.

Editions of the above will also be issued with introductions, notes, and vocabularies.

[Jan. 1918.]

BOOKS BY NEVILL FORBES

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR. Second Edition, revised and enlarged, with indexes. 6s. net.

FIRST RUSSIAN BOOK. Second edition. A Practical Manual of Russian Declensions. The case-endings and vocabularies, with phonetic transcription and easy phrases. 2s. 6d. net.

SECOND RUSSIAN BOOK. A Practical Manual of Russian Verbs. The most important verbs with full phonetic transcription, and numerous examples of their use. 3s. 6d. net.

THIRD RUSSIAN BOOK. Extracts from Aksákov, Grigoróvich, Hérzen, and Saltykóv, edited with full foot-notes and complete vocabulary. 2s. 6d. net.

FOURTH RUSSIAN BOOK. Russian and English Exercises, &c. Specially designed for use with the above volumes, including examples of Russian correspondence. *In the press.*

THE BALKANS. A History of Bulgaria, Serbia, Greece, Rumania, Turkey. By NEVILL FORBES, A. J. TOYNBEE, D. MITRANY, D. G. HOGARTH. With three maps. 5s. net.

RUSSIA: A History down to Modern Times. By C. RAYMOND BEAZLEY, NEVILL FORBES, and G. A. BIRKETT. Crown 8vo. *In the press.*

THREE LECTURES. Paper covers, 1s. net each: The Slavonic Languages, Polish Literature, Tolstoi.

THE SOUTHERN SLAVS. In the Oxford Pamphlets Series. 4d. net.

A READER BY PERCY DEARMER

A FIRST RUSSIAN READER from L. N. TOLSTOY. Compiled, with English notes and a vocabulary, by P. DEARMER and A. TANANEVICH. Crown 8vo, cloth, pp. 80. 1s. 6d. net.

[Jan. 1918.]

Call No. 491.7

F63R

Accession No. 9762

Title Russian Grammar.

Author Forbes, Nevill, M.A. Ph.D.

BORROWER'S
NO.

DATE
LOANED

BORROWER'S
NO.

DATE
LOANED

FOR CONSULTATION
ONLY